

# WEBSTER'S NEW WORLD WORLD™

## SPANISH GRAMMAR HANDBOOK

*Your definitive guide to Spanish grammar*

*Concise explanations of difficult Spanish grammar rules*

*Charts that show how to conjugate any Spanish verb*

*Appendix of common Spanish vocabulary words, arranged thematically*

GAIL STEIN

WE DEFINE YOUR WORLD®

# WEBSTER'S NEW WORLD<sup>®</sup>

## SPANISH GRAMMAR HANDBOOK

*1st Edition*

by Gail Stein



Wiley Publishing, Inc.



**WEBSTER'S  
NEW WORLD<sup>®</sup>**

**SPANISH GRAMMAR  
HANDBOOK**



# WEBSTER'S NEW WORLD<sup>®</sup>

## SPANISH GRAMMAR HANDBOOK

*1st Edition*

by Gail Stein



Wiley Publishing, Inc.

Webster's New World® Spanish Grammar Handbook

Copyright © 2005 by Wiley, Hoboken, NJ

Published by Wiley, Hoboken, NJ

Published simultaneously in Canada

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning, or otherwise, except as permitted under Sections 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without either the prior written permission of the Publisher, or authorization through payment of the appropriate per-copy fee to the Copyright Clearance Center, 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, 978-750-8400, fax 978-646-8600, or on the web at [www.copyright.com](http://www.copyright.com). Requests to the Publisher for permission should be addressed to the Legal Department, Wiley Publishing, Inc., 10475 Crosspoint Blvd., Indianapolis, IN 46256, 317-572-3447, fax 317-572-4355 or online at [www.wiley.com/go/permissions](http://www.wiley.com/go/permissions).

The publisher and the author make no representations or warranties with respect to the accuracy or completeness of the contents of this work and specifically disclaim all warranties, including without limitation warranties of fitness for a particular purpose. No warranty may be created or extended by sales or promotional materials. The advice and strategies contained herein may not be suitable for every situation. This work is sold with the understanding that the publisher is not engaged in rendering legal, accounting, or other professional services. If professional assistance is required, the services of a competent professional person should be sought. Neither the publisher nor the author shall be liable for damages arising herefrom. The fact that an organization or Website is referred to in this work as a citation and/or a potential source of further information does not mean that the author or the publisher endorses the information the organization or Website may provide or recommendations it may make. Further, readers should be aware that Internet Websites listed in this work may have changed or disappeared between when this work was written and when it is read.

**Trademarks:** Wiley, the Wiley Publishing logo, Webster's New World, the Webster's New World logo, and all related trademarks, logos, and trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of John Wiley & Sons, Inc. and/or its affiliates. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners. Wiley Publishing, Inc. is not associated with any product or vendor mentioned in this book.

For general information on our other products and services or to obtain technical support, please contact our Customer Care Department within the U.S. at 800-762-2974, outside the U.S. at 317-572-3993, or fax 317-572-4002.

Wiley also publishes its books in a variety of electronic formats. Some content that appears in print may not be available in electronic books. For more information about Wiley products, please visit our web site at [www.wiley.com](http://www.wiley.com).

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data is available from the publisher upon request.

ISBN-13: 978-0-7645-7897-7

ISBN-10: 0-7645-7897-9

Manufactured in the United States of America

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

## **ACKNOWLEDGMENTS**

---

A million thanks to Roxane Cerda, my acquisitions editor, who was so instrumental in getting this book off the ground; to Kitty Jarrett, my production editor, whose excellent editing skills and suggestions made this book possible; to Paulette Waiser, whose technical expertise and input were invaluable; and to Christina Stambaugh, Kristie Rees, Linda Quigley, and all the other people at Wiley & Sons, for their patience and expertise.

## **DEDICATION**

---

This book is dedicated to my husband, Douglas, for his love, support, and patience; to my son Eric, for his technical help; to my son Michael and his fiancée, Katherine Benson-Piscopo, for their encouragement; and to my parents, Sara and Jack Bernstein, for always being there for me.





# TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

<b>Introduction</b> .....	<b>1</b>
<b>Part I: Everyday Necessities</b> .....	<b>3</b>
Numbers .....	3
<i>Cardinal Numbers</i> .....	3
<i>Ordinal Numbers</i> .....	7
<i>Fractions</i> .....	9
<i>Multiples</i> .....	10
Dates and More .....	11
<i>Days</i> .....	11
<i>Months</i> .....	12
<i>Dates</i> .....	12
The Weather .....	14
<i>Weather Conditions</i> .....	14
<i>Temperature</i> .....	15
<i>The Seasons</i> .....	16
Time .....	16
<i>Time-Related Vocabulary</i> .....	18
<b>Part II: Markers, Nouns, Possession, and Personal Pronouns</b> .....	<b>21</b>
Markers .....	21
<i>Definite Articles</i> .....	21
<i>Indefinite Articles</i> .....	27
<i>Demonstrative Adjectives</i> .....	28
<i>Demonstrative Pronouns</i> .....	29
Nouns .....	30
<i>Gender</i> .....	30
<i>Number</i> .....	35
Possession .....	37
<i>Using the Preposition De</i> .....	37
<i>Possessive Adjectives</i> .....	38
<i>Possessive Pronouns</i> .....	40
Personal Pronouns .....	41
<i>Subject Pronouns</i> .....	42
<i>Prepositional Pronouns</i> .....	43
<i>Object Pronouns</i> .....	44

<b>Part III: Simple Tenses</b> . . . . .	<b>51</b>
The Present Tense . . . . .	51
<i>The Present Tense of Regular Verbs</i> . . . . .	51
<i>The Present Tense of Reflexive Verbs</i> . . . . .	52
<i>The Present Tense of Spelling-Change Verbs</i> . . . . .	53
<i>The Present Tense of Stem-Changing Verbs</i> . . . . .	56
<i>The Present Tense of Irregular Verbs</i> . . . . .	63
<i>Using the Present Tense</i> . . . . .	64
<i>Distinctions Between Verbs</i> . . . . .	65
The Preterit . . . . .	67
<i>The Preterit of Regular Verbs</i> . . . . .	67
<i>The Preterit of Spelling-Change Verbs</i> . . . . .	68
<i>-car, -gar, and -zar Verbs</i> . . . . .	68
<i>The Preterit of Stem-Changing Verbs</i> . . . . .	71
<i>The Preterit of Irregular Verbs</i> . . . . .	73
<i>Using the Preterit</i> . . . . .	75
The Imperfect . . . . .	75
<i>The Imperfect of Regular Verbs</i> . . . . .	75
<i>The Imperfect of Irregular Verbs</i> . . . . .	76
<i>Using the Imperfect</i> . . . . .	76
<i>The Preterit and the Imperfect Compared</i> . . . . .	77
The Future Tense . . . . .	81
<i>The Future Tense of Regular Verbs</i> . . . . .	81
<i>The Future of Irregular Verbs</i> . . . . .	82
<i>Using the Future Tense</i> . . . . .	83
 <b>Part IV: Simple Moods</b> . . . . .	 <b>85</b>
Mood . . . . .	85
The Conditional . . . . .	86
<i>The Conditional of Regular Verbs</i> . . . . .	86
<i>The Conditional of Irregular Verbs</i> . . . . .	86
<i>Using the Conditional</i> . . . . .	88
The Present Subjunctive . . . . .	89
<i>The Present Subjunctive of Regular Verbs</i> . . . . .	89
<i>The Present Subjunctive of Spelling-Change Verbs</i> . . . . .	90
<i>The Present Subjunctive of Verbs with Stem Changes</i> . . . . .	92
<i>The Present Subjunctive of Irregular Verbs</i> . . . . .	93
<i>Using the Present Subjunctive</i> . . . . .	94
<i>Avoiding the Subjunctive</i> . . . . .	103
The Imperfect Subjunctive . . . . .	104
<i>The Imperfect Subjunctive of All Verbs</i> . . . . .	104
<i>Using the Imperfect Subjunctive</i> . . . . .	106

<b>Part V: Gerunds and Progressive Tenses . . . . .</b>	<b>109</b>
Gerunds . . . . .	109
<i>Forming the Gerund of Regular Verbs . . . . .</i>	<i>109</i>
<i>Forming the Gerund of Stem-Changing and Irregular Verbs . . . . .</i>	<i>110</i>
Progressive Tenses . . . . .	112
<i>The Present Progressive . . . . .</i>	<i>112</i>
<i>The Past Progressive . . . . .</i>	<i>113</i>
<i>The Future Progressive . . . . .</i>	<i>114</i>
<i>The Conditional Progressive . . . . .</i>	<i>114</i>
<i>Pronouns and Gerunds . . . . .</i>	<i>115</i>
 <b>Part VI: Compound Tenses . . . . .</b>	 <b>117</b>
Simple vs. Compound Tenses . . . . .	117
The Past Participle . . . . .	118
<i>Past Participles of Regular Verbs . . . . .</i>	<i>118</i>
<i>Irregular Past Participles . . . . .</i>	<i>119</i>
<i>Using the Past Participle . . . . .</i>	<i>120</i>
The Present Perfect . . . . .	120
<i>Forming the Present Perfect . . . . .</i>	<i>121</i>
<i>Using the Present Perfect . . . . .</i>	<i>121</i>
The Preterit Perfect . . . . .	121
<i>Forming the Preterit Perfect . . . . .</i>	<i>122</i>
<i>Using the Preterit Perfect . . . . .</i>	<i>122</i>
The Pluperfect . . . . .	123
<i>Forming the Pluperfect . . . . .</i>	<i>123</i>
<i>Using the Pluperfect . . . . .</i>	<i>124</i>
The Future Perfect . . . . .	124
<i>Forming the Future Perfect . . . . .</i>	<i>125</i>
<i>Using the Future Perfect . . . . .</i>	<i>125</i>
 <b>Part VII: Compound Moods . . . . .</b>	 <b>127</b>
The Conditional Perfect . . . . .	127
<i>Forming the Conditional Perfect . . . . .</i>	<i>127</i>
<i>Using the Conditional Perfect . . . . .</i>	<i>128</i>
The Present Perfect Subjunctive . . . . .	128
<i>Forming the Present Perfect Subjunctive . . . . .</i>	<i>129</i>
<i>Using the Present Perfect Subjunctive . . . . .</i>	<i>129</i>
The Pluperfect Subjunctive . . . . .	130
<i>Forming the Pluperfect Subjunctive . . . . .</i>	<i>130</i>
<i>Using the Pluperfect Subjunctive . . . . .</i>	<i>131</i>
Sequence of Tenses in the Subjunctive . . . . .	131
Conditional Sentences . . . . .	132
<i>Real Conditions . . . . .</i>	<i>132</i>
<i>Contrary-to-Fact Conditions . . . . .</i>	<i>133</i>

<b>Part VIII: The Imperative</b> . . . . .	<b>135</b>
Formal Commands . . . . .	135
<i>The Imperative of Regular Verbs</i> . . . . .	135
<i>The Imperative of Spelling-Change Verbs</i> . . . . .	136
<i>The Imperative of Stem-Changing Verbs</i> . . . . .	137
<i>The Imperative of Irregular Verbs</i> . . . . .	138
Informal Commands . . . . .	139
<i>Informal Tú Commands</i> . . . . .	139
<i>Informal Vosotros Commands</i> . . . . .	145
Indirect Commands . . . . .	150
<i>Object Pronouns with Commands</i> . . . . .	150
<b>Part IX: Infinitives</b> . . . . .	<b>153</b>
Using Infinitives . . . . .	153
<i>Infinitives as Nouns</i> . . . . .	153
<i>Infinitives as Adjectives</i> . . . . .	160
Derivations from Infinitives . . . . .	160
<i>Nouns Derived from Infinitives</i> . . . . .	160
<i>Adjectives Derived from Infinitives</i> . . . . .	164
The Perfect Infinitive . . . . .	165
<b>Part X: Prepositions and Conjunctions</b> . . . . .	<b>167</b>
Prepositions . . . . .	167
<i>Common Prepositions</i> . . . . .	167
<i>Uses of Certain Prepositions</i> . . . . .	169
<i>Common Expressions with Prepositions</i> . . . . .	176
Conjunctions . . . . .	178
<i>Coordinating Conjunctions</i> . . . . .	178
<i>Subordinating Conjunctions</i> . . . . .	179
<i>Conjunctive Expressions</i> . . . . .	182
<b>Part XI: Interrogatives and Exclamations</b> . . . . .	<b>183</b>
Interrogatives . . . . .	183
<i>Yes/No Questions</i> . . . . .	183
<i>Information Questions</i> . . . . .	184
<i>Using Hay</i> . . . . .	189
How to Answer Questions . . . . .	189
<i>Answering Yes/No Questions</i> . . . . .	189
<i>Answering Information Questions</i> . . . . .	190
Exclamations . . . . .	191

<b>Part XII: Negatives, Indefinites, and Relative Pronouns . . . . .</b>	<b>193</b>
Negatives . . . . .	193
<i>Negative Words</i> . . . . .	193
<i>Using Negatives</i> . . . . .	194
<i>Negative Expressions</i> . . . . .	195
<i>Negative Prefixes</i> . . . . .	196
Indefinites and Their Negatives. . . . .	197
<i>Indefinite Pronouns</i> . . . . .	197
<i>Indefinite Adjectives</i> . . . . .	198
<i>Indefinite Adverbs</i> . . . . .	199
<i>Negative Conjunctions</i> . . . . .	200
Relative Pronouns . . . . .	201
Que. . . . .	202
Quien/Quienes. . . . .	203
El (Los, La, Las) Cual(es)/Que . . . . .	204
Lo Que . . . . .	205
Lo Cual . . . . .	205
<i>The Relative Adjective Cuyo</i> . . . . .	206
 <b>Part XIII: Reflexive Verbs . . . . .</b>	 <b>207</b>
Reflexive and Non-reflexive Verbs. . . . .	207
Common Reflexive Verbs. . . . .	208
Reflexive Pronouns . . . . .	211
<i>Positioning of Reflexive Pronouns</i> . . . . .	212
Uses of Reflexive Verbs . . . . .	214
<i>Verbs with Different Reflexive and Non-reflexive Meanings</i> . . . . .	214
<i>Verbs Used Reflexively in Spanish and Non-reflexively in English</i> . . . . .	215
<i>Reciprocal Actions</i> . . . . .	217
<i>Passive Actions</i> . . . . .	217
Idioms with Reflexive Verbs . . . . .	217
 <b>Part XIV: Adjectives, Adverbs, and Comparisons . . . . .</b>	 <b>219</b>
Adjectives . . . . .	219
<i>Gender of Adjectives</i> . . . . .	219
<i>Plurals of Adjectives</i> . . . . .	225
<i>Positioning of Adjectives</i> . . . . .	227
<i>Adjectives Whose Meaning Changes</i> . . . . .	229
<i>Shortened Forms of Adjectives</i> . . . . .	229
Adverbs . . . . .	231
<i>Formation of Adverbs</i> . . . . .	231
<i>Adverbial Phrases</i> . . . . .	232
<i>Adverbs Not Formed from Adjectives</i> . . . . .	232
<i>Adjectives vs. Adverbs</i> . . . . .	236
<i>Positioning of Adverbs</i> . . . . .	237

Comparisons. . . . .	237
<i>Comparisons of Equality</i> . . . . .	238
<i>Comparisons of Inequality</i> . . . . .	238
<i>Expressing “Than” in Comparative Sentences</i> . . . . .	238
The Superlative . . . . .	239
<i>The Relative Superlative</i> . . . . .	239
<i>The Absolute Superlative</i> . . . . .	240
<i>Irregular Comparatives and Superlatives</i> . . . . .	241
<b>Part XV: The Passive Voice . . . . .</b>	<b>243</b>
The Passive Voice Defined . . . . .	243
The Passive Voice with <i>Ser</i> . . . . .	243
<i>The Passive Voice in Simple Tenses and Moods</i> . . . . .	244
<i>The Passive Voice in Compound Tenses and Moods</i> . . . . .	245
Substitute Constructions for the Passive . . . . .	246
<b>Glossary . . . . .</b>	<b>249</b>
<b>Appendix A: Verb Charts . . . . .</b>	<b>257</b>
Regular Verbs . . . . .	258
Spelling-Change Verbs . . . . .	261
Stem-Changing Verbs . . . . .	287
Irregular Verbs . . . . .	316
<b>Appendix B: Spanish Vocabulary . . . . .</b>	<b>339</b>
<b>Index . . . . .</b>	<b>365</b>

# INTRODUCTION

As our society becomes increasingly multicultural, learning a foreign language becomes more and more of a necessity for all of us. *Webster's New World Spanish Grammar Handbook* is a valuable resource for those who wish to acquire proficiency in a widely spoken language whose popularity is ever-increasing. This book is for people from all walks of life: students, tourists, and businesspeople who want to be able to effectively and confidently communicate ideas, thoughts, and feelings in Spanish.

*Webster's New World Spanish Grammar Handbook* is an essential, comprehensive guide that is completely user friendly and was designed to carefully and clearly present all the topics and tools necessary for a complete understanding and mastery of Spanish grammar. The book is divided as follows:

- The 15 parts present all the essential elements of Spanish grammar.
- Appendix A presents verbs charts that illustrate the conjugations of regular, stem-changing, spelling-change, and irregular verbs.
- Appendix B presents thematic vocabulary that will facilitate communication.
- The Glossary lists and defines grammatical terms.

*Webster's New World Spanish Grammar Handbook* is organized in a thoughtful, logical manner, proceeding from the simpler elements to the more complex structural explanations and rules of Spanish grammar. Words, phrases, and expressions that are used on a daily basis in a wide variety of situations are presented at the very beginning. These are followed, part by part, in sequential order, by the elements needed to construct coherent sentences from start to finish: nouns and pronouns; simple verb tenses and moods; progressive tenses; compound tenses and moods; commands; verb infinitives; prepositions and conjunctions; interrogatives and exclamations; negatives, indefinites, and relative pronouns; reflexive verbs; adjectives, adverbs, and comparisons; and the passive voice. All topics are explored in depth, and all explanations are followed by clear, concise examples that illustrate each and every rule. More detailed grammatical points are highlighted in sidebars throughout the text. Exceptions to rules, irregularities, and rules unique to Spanish are noted, explored, discussed at length, and exemplified. Each part of the book is broken down into small, easily manageable divisions and subdivisions that will allow you to work as slowly or as quickly as you like. You can use *Webster's New World Spanish Grammar Handbook* to develop and perfect your communicative skills at a comfortable pace, one that will permit you to use the Spanish language to its best advantage.

It is absolutely essential to make use of the appendices included in *Webster's New World Spanish Grammar Handbook*. Appendix A presents a simple-to-read, comprehensive list of verb charts that will enable you to use regular, stem-changing, spelling-change,



and irregular verbs with the utmost confidence and ease. Arranged by infinitives, each chart identifies the Spanish infinitive, its English meaning(s), the gerund, the past participle, and the imperative forms. Reflexive verbs, with their accompanying reflexive pronouns, are also fully illustrated. Each verb is shown in its simple and compound tenses in both the indicative and subjunctive moods.

Appendix B presents a mini-dictionary of thematic vocabulary charts that provide you with a large selection of words you can use in conjunction with the rules of grammar so that you can form creative, personalized sentences, thoughts, and ideas. These high-frequency, everyday topics include the family, the house, animals and insects, foods, quantities, parts of the body, places in town, the classroom, subjects and activities, professions, leisure time, clothing, materials, colors, jewelry, travel and transportation, car parts, countries, the continents, and weather.

Finally, the Glossary presented at the end of the book defines all the grammatical terms you'll need to know to successfully learn the material in this book.

*Webster's New World Spanish Grammar Handbook* explains and illustrates all that is necessary for you to successfully master the Spanish language. The rest is up to you. If you make a commitment to learn and practice a small amount each day, if you study on a regular basis, and if you persevere without getting discouraged or distracted, you will learn Spanish in a relatively short period of time. Take the time, make the effort, and before long, you'll be proficient enough to chat in both social and business situations. You can do it all with *Webster's New World Spanish Grammar Handbook*.

# **EVERYDAY NECESSITIES**

## **Numbers**

---

We use two different types of numbers on a daily basis: cardinal and ordinal numbers. Numbers are vitally important to everyday communication because they have so many applications. It is, therefore, essential to commit both sets of numbers to memory.

### **Writing Numbers**

Numbers are written slightly differently in the Spanish-speaking world than in the English-speaking world: Put a small hook on the top of the number 1 so that it almost looks like a 7. To differentiate between a 1 and a 7, put a line through the 7, so that it looks like this: 7.

### **CARDINAL NUMBERS**

Cardinal numbers are used for counting—1, 2, 3, 4, and so on—and we use them throughout the day, every day of our lives, to communicate prices, dates, times, ages, and personal and professional statistics. The following table lists the Spanish cardinal numbers:

<b>Spanish</b>	<b>Cardinal Numeral</b>
<i>cero</i>	0
<i>uno</i>	1
<i>dos</i>	2
<i>tres</i>	3
<i>cuatro</i>	4
<i>cinco</i>	5
<i>seis</i>	6
<i>siete</i>	7
<i>ocho</i>	8
<i>nueve</i>	9
<i>diez</i>	10
<i>once</i>	11
<i>doce</i>	12
<i>trece</i>	13
<i>catorce</i>	14
<i>quince</i>	15
<i>dieciséis (diez y seis)</i>	16
<i>diecisiete (diez y siete)</i>	17
<i>dieciocho (diez y ocho)</i>	18
<i>diecinueve (diez y nueve)</i>	19
<i>veinte</i>	20
<i>veintiuno (veinte y uno)</i>	21
<i>veintidós (veinte y dos)</i>	22
<i>veintitrés (veinte y tres)</i>	23
<i>veinticuatro (veinte y cuatro)</i>	24
<i>veinticinco (veinte y cinco)</i>	25
<i>veintiséis (veinte y seis)</i>	26
<i>veintisiete (veinte y siete)</i>	27
<i>veintiocho (veinte y ocho)</i>	28

<b>Spanish</b>	<b>Cardinal Numeral</b>
<i>veintinueve (veinte y nueve)</i>	29
<i>treinta</i>	30
<i>cuarenta</i>	40
<i>cincuenta</i>	50
<i>sesenta</i>	60
<i>setenta</i>	70
<i>ochenta</i>	80
<i>noventa</i>	90
<i>ciento (cien)</i>	100
<i>ciento uno</i>	101
<i>doscientos</i>	200
<i>quinientos</i>	500
<i>mil</i>	1.000
<i>dos mil</i>	2.000
<i>cien mil</i>	100.000
<i>un millón</i>	1.000.000
<i>dos millones</i>	2.000.000
<i>mil millones</i>	1.000.000.000
<i>dos mil millones</i>	2.000.000.000

## Punctuating Numerals

In numerals and decimals, Spanish generally uses periods where English uses commas and vice versa:

<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>
5.000	5,000
0,80	.80 or 0.80
\$24,95	\$24.95

Spanish cardinal numbers follow these rules:

- *Uno* is used when counting. Use *Un* to express “one,” “a,” or “an” before a masculine noun and use *una* before a feminine noun:

<i>uno, dos, tres . . .</i>	one, two, three . . .
<i>un hombre y una mujer</i>	a man and a woman
<i>treinta y un días</i>	thirty-one days
<i>veintiuna semanas</i>	twenty-one weeks

- *Uno* may also be used in the sense of a neuter pronoun:

*Es uno de mis libros favoritos.* It is one of my favorite books

- Use the conjunction *y* (“and”) only for numbers between 16 and 99. *Y* is not used between a number over 100 and the number that follows:

<i>sesenta y siete</i>	sixty-seven
<i>trescientos noventa y nueve</i>	three hundred ninety-nine
<i>quinientos cuarenta y cinco</i>	five hundred forty-five

**But:**

<i>ciento ochenta y seis</i>	one hundred eighty-six
------------------------------	------------------------

- The numbers 16 through 19 and 21 through 29 are generally written as one word. Put an accent on the last syllable for the numbers 16, 22, 23, and 26:

<i>dieciséis</i>	16
<i>veintidós</i>	22
<i>veintitrés</i>	23
<i>veintiséis</i>	26

**But:**

<i>diecisiete</i>	17
<i>veinticuatro</i>	24

- When used before a masculine noun, *veintiún* has an accent on the last syllable:

<i>veintiún años</i>	twenty-one years
----------------------	------------------

**But:**

<i>veintiuna semanas</i>	twenty-one weeks
--------------------------	------------------

- In compounds of *ciento* (for example, *doscientos*, *trescientos*), there must be agreement with feminine and masculine nouns:

<i>quinientos kilogramos</i>	five hundred kilograms
<i>quinientas libras</i>	five hundred pounds

- Before nouns and before the numbers *mil* and *millones*, the *cien* form is used in place of *ciento*. *Ciento* is used before all other numbers:

<i>cien pájaros</i>	one hundred birds
<i>cien mil flores</i>	one hundred thousand flowers
<i>cien millones de estrellas</i>	one hundred million stars
<i>doscientos pájaros</i>	two hundred birds
<i>quinientos mil flores</i>	five hundred thousand flowers
<i>novecientos millones de estrellas</i>	nine hundred million stars

- *Un* is used before *millón* but not before *cien(to)* or *mil*. When *millón* is followed by a noun, *de* is used between *millón* and the noun:

<i>cien segundos</i>	one hundred seconds
<i>ciento cuarenta minutos</i>	one hundred forty minutes
<i>mil horas</i>	one thousand hours
<i>un millón de personas</i>	one million people

- Common arithmetic functions require the following words:

<i>y</i>	plus (+)
<i>menos</i>	minus (-)
<i>por</i>	times (×)
<i>dividido por</i>	divided by (÷)
<i>son</i>	equals (=)

### Examples:

<i>Cuatro y diez son catorce</i>	Four plus ten equals fourteen.
<i>Quince menos cinco son diez.</i>	Fifteen minus five equals ten.
<i>Veinte por tres son sesenta.</i>	Twenty times three equals sixty.
<i>Doce dividido por tres son cuatro.</i>	Twelve divided by three equals four.

## ORDINAL NUMBERS

Ordinal numbers are used to express numbers in a series:

Spanish	Ordinal Number
<i>primero</i>	first
<i>segundo</i>	second
<i>tercero</i>	third
<i>cuarto</i>	fourth
<i>quinto</i>	fifth

(continues)

**(continued)**

<b>Spanish</b>	<b>Ordinal Number</b>
<i>sexto</i>	sixth
<i>séptimo</i>	seventh
<i>octavo</i>	eighth
<i>noveno</i>	ninth
<i>décimo</i>	tenth

Spanish ordinal numbers follow these rules:

- Ordinal numbers are used only through tenth. After that, cardinal numbers are used:

<i>el séptimo día</i>	the seventh day
<i>su aniversario veintiuno</i>	her twenty-first anniversary

- Ordinal numbers are masculine or feminine according to the nouns they modify. Change the final *o* of the masculine form to an *a* to arrive at the feminine form:

<i>su segundo apartamento</i>	her second apartment
<i>su segunda casa</i>	her second house

- The final *o* is dropped from *primero* and *tercero* before a masculine singular noun:

<i>el primer piso</i>	the first floor
<i>el tercer ascensor</i>	the third elevator

**But:**

<i>el siglo tercero</i>	the third century
-------------------------	-------------------

- The abbreviations for ordinal numbers take this form:

<b>Ordinal Number</b>	<b>Abbreviation</b>	<b>Ordinal Number</b>	<b>Abbreviation</b>
<b>Masc. (Fem.)</b>			
<i>primero(a)</i>	<i>1<sup>o(a)</sup></i>	<i>primer</i>	<i>1er</i>
<i>segundo(a)</i>	<i>2<sup>o(a)</sup></i>		
<i>tercero(a)</i>	<i>3<sup>o(a)</sup></i>	<i>tercer</i>	<i>3er</i>
<i>cuarto(a)</i>	<i>4<sup>o(a)</sup></i>		
<i>décimo(a)</i>	<i>10<sup>o(a)</sup></i>		

- Cardinal numbers replacing ordinal numbers are always masculine because it is presumed that *número* precedes the number:

*la semana cuarenta y uno*                      the forty-first week

- *Primero* is the only ordinal number used in dates. In all other cases, the cardinal number is used:

*el primero de enero*                              January 1st  
*el treinta y uno de octubre*                      October 31st

- Cardinal numbers precede ordinal numbers:

*las tres primeras respuestas*                      the first three answers

## FRACTIONS

With the exception of one half and one third, the numerator of a fraction uses a cardinal number and the denominator uses an ordinal number, through tenths:

Spanish Fraction	Alternative Expression of Fraction	Numeric Fraction
<i>medio(a)</i>	<i>la mitad de</i>	$\frac{1}{2}$
<i>un tercio</i>	<i>la tercera parte de</i>	$\frac{1}{3}$
<i>un cuarto</i>	<i>la cuarta parte de</i>	$\frac{1}{4}$
<i>dos tercios</i>	<i>las dos terceras partes de</i>	$\frac{2}{3}$
<i>tres cuartos</i>	<i>las tres cuartas partes de</i>	$\frac{3}{4}$
<i>cuatro quintos</i>	<i>las cuatro quintas partes de</i>	$\frac{4}{5}$
<i>un sexto</i>	<i>la sexta parte de</i>	$\frac{1}{6}$
<i>un séptimo</i>	<i>la séptima parte de</i>	$\frac{1}{7}$
<i>un octavo</i>	<i>la octava parte de</i>	$\frac{1}{8}$
<i>un noveno</i>	<i>la novena parte de</i>	$\frac{1}{9}$
<i>un décimo</i>	<i>la décima parte de</i>	$\frac{1}{10}$

After tenths, *-avo* is added to the cardinal number to form the fraction:

Spanish Fraction	Alternative Expression of Fraction	Numeric Fraction
<i>un doceavo</i>	<i>la doceava parte de</i>	$\frac{1}{12}$
<i>un quinceavo</i>	<i>la quinceava parte de</i>	$\frac{1}{15}$
<i>un veinteavo</i>	<i>la veinteava parte de</i>	$\frac{1}{20}$
<i>un treintavo</i>	<i>la treintava parte de</i>	$\frac{1}{30}$



Fractions follow these rules:

- The adjective *medio* (“half”) becomes *media* before a feminine noun. The noun *la mitad (de)* expresses “half” of something:

<i>un medio paquete</i>	half a package
<i>una media taza</i>	half a cup
<i>la mitad del postre</i>	half of the dessert
<i>la mitad del sándwich</i>	half of the sandwich

- Fractions are masculine nouns. A fraction is placed either before or after a noun, depending on where it makes logical sense and sounds best:

<i>tres y tres cuartos libras</i>	3¾ pounds
<i>una onza y dos tercios</i>	1½ ounces

- When a quantity is divided, the fraction may be expressed with the feminine noun *parte*, except if a unit of measure is used:

<i>un octavo (una octava parte) de la torta</i>	an eighth of the pie
<i>un octavo de una cucharadita</i>	an eighth of a teaspoon

## MULTIPLES

Multiples, which express the number of times of an event takes place, use the cardinal number followed by the feminine singular noun *vez* (*veces* in the plural):

<i>una vez</i>	once
<i>dos veces</i>	twice
<i>cinco veces</i>	five times

### Example:

<i>Él había olvidado mi cumpleaños tres veces.</i>	He had forgotten my birthday three times.
--	--

The multiples *solo (sola)*, *doble*, *triple*, and so on may be used as adjectives, as nouns, or as adverbs:

<i>Reservó una habitación doble.</i>	He reserved a double room.
<i>Yo perdí el triple de lo que Ud. perdió.</i>	I lost three times as much as you did.
<i>Comimos doble.</i>	We ate twice as much.
<i>No había una sola persona en la calle.</i>	Not one person was in the street.

# Dates and More

---

Expressing dates in Spanish requires knowledge of the names of the days of the week and the months of the year and a good command of cardinal numbers.

## DAYS

When a person asks “¿Qué día es hoy?” he or she is asking for the day of the week. The appropriate answer begins with “Hoy es . . .” (“Today is . . .”) followed by the day:

Spanish	English
<i>lunes</i>	Monday
<i>martes</i>	Tuesday
<i>miércoles</i>	Wednesday
<i>jueves</i>	Thursday
<i>viernes</i>	Friday
<i>sábado</i>	Saturday
<i>domingo</i>	Sunday

### Using Lowercase

The Spanish days of the week and months of the year are not capitalized unless they begin a sentence. The Spanish calendar starts with Monday. Use the masculine, singular definite article *el* + singular day of the week to express “on” a particular day:

*Vamos al centro el sábado.*      We’re going to the city on Saturday.

Use the masculine, plural definite article *los* + plural day of the week to express “on” when speaking about the day in a general sense:

*Vamos al centro los sábados.*      We go to the city on Saturdays.

## MONTHS

The months are easy to learn because they closely resemble the names of the months in English:

Spanish	English
<i>enero</i>	January
<i>febrero</i>	February
<i>marzo</i>	March
<i>abril</i>	April
<i>mayo</i>	May
<i>junio</i>	June
<i>julio</i>	July
<i>agosto</i>	August
<i>septiembre or setiembre</i>	September
<i>octubre</i>	October
<i>noviembre</i>	November
<i>diciembre</i>	December

The preposition *en* expresses “in” with the name of a month:

*Hace mucho frío en diciembre.*

It’s very cold in December.

## DATES

When someone asks “¿Cuál es la fecha de hoy?” or “¿A cuántos estamos?” he or she is asking for the date. Use the following formula to give an appropriate reply:

*Es (Estamos a) day + (el) + cardinal number (except for primero) + de + month + de + year*

### Example:

*Es (Estamos a) lunes (el) nueve de mayo de dos mil seis.*

It is Monday, May 9, 2006.

The following rules pertain to dates:

- Use *Es* or *Estamos a* (“It is”) + date before the date.

- Use *primero* only for the first of the month. For all other days, use cardinal numbers:

*el primero de mayo*

May 1st

*el veintiuno de marzo*

March 21st

- Use *el* to express “on” a specific date:

*Te telefono el seis de febrero.*

I’ll call you (on) February 6th.

## Expressing Dates

Whereas in English dates are generally expressed in hundreds, in Spanish years are expressed in thousands and hundreds:

Spanish	English	Date
<i>mil novecientos cuarenta y siete</i>	nineteen hundred forty-seven	1947

Dates are written with the day before the month:

Spanish	English	Date
<i>el 11 de julio de 2006</i>	11/7/06	July 7, 2006

## Words and Expressions Pertaining to Dates

The following words and expressions will help you effectively communicate information about the date so that you can make appointments and plans:

Spanish	English
<i>un día</i>	a day
<i>una semana</i>	a week
<i>un mes</i>	a month
<i>un año</i>	a year
<i>de hoy en una semana</i>	a week from today
<i>hace</i>	ago
<i>pasado mañana</i>	day after tomorrow
<i>anteayer</i>	day before yesterday
<i>durante</i>	during
<i>la víspera</i>	eve

(continues)

**(continued)**

<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>desde</i>	from
<i>en</i>	in
<i>último(a)</i>	last (in a series)
<i>pasado(a)</i>	last (most recent)
<i>próximo(a)</i>	next
<i>por</i>	per
<i>hoy</i>	today
<i>mañana</i>	tomorrow
<i>mañana por la tarde</i>	tomorrow afternoon
<i>mañana por la mañana</i>	tomorrow morning
<i>mañana por la noche</i>	tomorrow night
<i>de mañana en dos semanas</i>	two weeks from tomorrow
<i>hasta</i>	until
<i>ayer</i>	yesterday

## The Weather

---

If you haven't looked out the window and are curious about the weather conditions for the day, you might ask someone "*¿Qué tiempo hace?*" ("What's the weather?").

### WEATHER CONDITIONS

If you are listening to *el pronóstico* (the forecast), you will find the following weather expressions useful in helping you decide how to plan your day and what to wear so that you are comfortable:

<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>Hace mal tiempo.</i>	It's bad weather.
<i>Hay nubes./ Está nublado.</i>	It's cloudy.
<i>Hace frío.</i>	It's cold.
<i>Hace fresco.</i>	It's cool.

Spanish	English
<i>Hay niebla (neblina).</i>	It's foggy.
<i>Hace calor.</i>	It's hot.
<i>Hay humedad.</i>	It's humid.
<i>Hay relámpagos.</i>	There's lightning.
<i>Hace buen tiempo.</i>	It's nice weather.
<i>Está cubierto.</i>	It's overcast.
<i>Hay lluvias torrenciales.</i>	It's pouring.
<i>Hay un aguacero.</i>	It's pouring.
<i>Llueve./ Está lloviendo.</i>	It's raining.
<i>Está lluvioso.</i>	It's showery.
<i>Está lloviznando.</i>	It's drizzling.
<i>Nieva./ Está nevando.</i>	It's snowing.
<i>Hace sol.</i>	It's sunny.
<i>Está soleado.</i>	It's sunny.
<i>Truena.</i>	It's thundering.
<i>Hace viento.</i>	It's windy.
<i>Hay lloviznas.</i>	There are showers.
<i>Hay granizo.</i>	There's hail.

## TEMPERATURE

If you would like to know the temperature, you would ask, “¿Cuál es la temperatura?” An appropriate response would contain a cardinal number followed by the word *grados* (“degrees”). A more formal answer would be “*Hay una temperatura de* (cardinal number) *grados.*” If the weather is frigid, you use *menos* (“minus”) to indicate that the temperature has dipped below zero:

<i>veinte grados</i>	20°
<i>un grado</i>	1°
<i>menos dos grados</i>	-2°

## How to Tell the Temperature

Most Spanish-speaking countries use the Celsius scale (degrees centigrade) to tell the temperature. To convert Fahrenheit to Celsius, subtract 32 from the Fahrenheit temperature and multiply the number that remains by  $\frac{5}{9}$ . To convert Celsius to Fahrenheit, multiply the degrees Celsius by  $\frac{9}{5}$  and add 32 to that number. Zero degrees Celsius is equivalent to 32° Fahrenheit. For example, 20° Celsius is equivalent to 68° Fahrenheit, and 100° Celsius is equivalent to 212° Fahrenheit.

## THE SEASONS

If you would like to inquire about a season, use the preposition *en* (“in”) + the definite article before the name of the season:

*el invierno*

*la primavera*

*el verano*

*el otoño*

winter

spring

summer

autumn, fall

### Example:

*Viajé en la primavera.*

I traveled in the spring.

## South of the Border

It is essential to pay careful attention to the season and weather conditions in the varying Spanish-speaking countries because south of the Equator, the seasons are opposite from those in the United States and Spain. Sunbirds would go to Argentina in the winter and to Spain in the summer.

## Time

If you want to know the time, you ask, “¿*Qué hora es?*” To express the time, you use *Es la una* to say “it’s one o’clock” or *Son las* + a cardinal number to express “it is” before a plural number:

*Son las once.*

It’s eleven o’clock.

If you hear the question “¿A qué hora . . . ?” the speaker wants to know at what time a certain event or activity takes place. An appropriate answer begins with *a* + the definite article + a cardinal number:

<i>a la una</i>	at one o'clock
<i>a las nueve</i>	at nine o'clock

The following table lists some times in Spanish:

<b>Spanish</b>	<b>Time</b>
<i>la una</i>	1:00
<i>las dos y cinco</i>	2:05
<i>las tres y diez</i>	3:10
<i>las cuatro y cuarto</i>	4:15
<i>las cinco y veinte</i>	5:20
<i>las seis y veinticinco</i>	6:25
<i>las siete y media</i>	7:30
<i>las ocho menos veinticinco</i>	7:35
<i>las nueve menos veinte</i>	8:40
<i>las diez menos cuarto</i>	9:45
<i>las once menos diez</i>	10:50
<i>las doce menos cinco</i>	11:55
<i>el mediodía</i>	noon
<i>la medianoche</i>	midnight

Note the following about telling time in Spanish:

- To express the time after the hour (before half past), use *y* and the number of minutes:

*Son las diez y veinte.*                      It's 10:20.

- After half past, use the number of the next hour + *menos* + the number of minutes to express time before the next hour:

*Es la una menos diez.*                      It's 12:50.

- Time before the hour may also be expressed by *Faltar* + minutes + *para* + the next hour:

*Falta un minuto para la medianoche.*    It's 11:59.

*Faltan cinco minutos para las cinco.*    It's 4:55.



- Time may also be expressed by giving the hour and the number of minutes following it:

*Son las seis y cuarenta y cinco.*      It's 6:45.

- *Medio* ("half") is used as an adjective and, therefore, becomes *media* to agree with *hora* ("hour"). *Cuarto* ("quarter") is used as a noun and shows no agreement:

*Son las ocho y media.*      It's 8:30.

*Son las ocho y cuarto.*      It's 8:15.

- *De la madrugada* expresses a.m. in the early morning hours and *de la mañana* expresses a.m. in the later morning hours:

*Son las tres de la madrugada.*      It's 3 a.m.

*Son las nueve de la mañana.*      It's 9 a.m.

## The 24-Hour Clock

The Spanish-speaking world commonly uses the 24-hour clock for schedules and timetables. Midnight is the equivalent of the 0 hour. Numbers are expressed in their entirety:

<i>0 h 10</i>	<i>cero horas diez</i>	12:10 a.m.
<i>17 horas</i>	<i>diecisiete horas</i>	5:00 p.m.
<i>23 h 45</i>	<i>veintitrés horas cuarenta y cinco</i>	11:45 p.m.
<i>20 h 35</i>	<i>veinte horas treinta y cinco</i>	8:35 p.m.

## TIME-RELATED VOCABULARY

When you speak about time, use the following words and expressions to express yourself in a precise manner:

Spanish	English
<i>un segundo</i>	a second
<i>un minuto</i>	a minute
<i>un cuarto de hora</i>	a quarter of an hour
<i>una media hora</i>	a half hour

<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>una hora</i>	an hour
<i>por la madrugada, por la mañana</i>	in the morning
<i>por la tarde</i>	in the afternoon
<i>por la noche</i>	in the evening
<i>¿a qué hora?</i>	at what time?
<i>a las siete en punto</i>	at exactly 7:00
<i>a eso de la una</i>	at about 1:00
<i>en una hora</i>	in an hour
<i>dentro de un rato</i>	in a while
<i>a menudo</i>	often
<i>hasta las tres</i>	until 3:00
<i>antes de las once</i>	before 11:00
<i>después de las cinco</i>	after 5:00
<i>en punto</i>	sharp
<i>¿desde qué hora?</i>	since what time?
<i>desde las nueve</i>	since 9:00
<i>hace dos horas</i>	two hours ago
<i>por hora</i>	per hour
<i>temprano</i>	early
<i>tarde</i>	late (in time)
<i>de retraso</i>	late (in arriving)
<i>a tiempo</i>	on time
<i>hace (time) que</i>	ago



# MARKERS, NOUNS, POSSESSION, AND PERSONAL PRONOUNS

## Markers

---

A *marker* is usually an article or adjective that helps identify the gender (masculine or feminine) and number (singular or plural) of the noun that follows it. The most common markers in Spanish are

- Definite articles
- Indefinite articles
- Demonstrative adjectives

## DEFINITE ARTICLES

A *definite article* indicates the specific person, place, thing, or idea in question. It precedes the noun it modifies and agrees with it in number and gender. Although “the” is easily expressed in English, Spanish requires four different words so that nouns are properly marked, as shown in the following table:

### Definite Articles

	Masculine	Feminine
Singular	<i>el muchacho</i> (“the boy”)	<i>la muchacha</i> (“the girl”)
Plural	<i>los muchachos</i> (“the boys”)	<i>las muchachas</i> (“the girls”)

## Gender and Number

Most Spanish nouns that end in *-o* are masculine in gender, while those that end in *-a* are usually feminine:

*El niño y la niña están jugando al tenis.* The boy and the girl are playing tennis.

There are, however, exceptions to this rule, as explained shortly.

Most Spanish plural nouns end in *-s* or *-es*:

*Los hombres y las mujeres hablan español.* The men and the women speak Spanish.

## Using Definite Articles

Many rules govern the use of definite articles. A definite article is used before the following:

- Nouns in a general or abstract sense:

*Me gusta el chocolate.*

I like chocolate.

*La riqueza no es tan importante.*

Wealth isn't that important.

- The cardinal number in a date:

*Es el doce de agosto.*

It's August 12th.

- A cardinal number used to express time:

*Es la una.*

It's one o'clock.

*Son las tres y media.*

It's 3:30.

- Expressions of time:

*El mes pasado fui a Puerto Rico.*

Last month I went to Puerto Rico.

*No miro la televisión por la noche.*

I don't watch television at night.

- The names of seasons, except after the preposition *en* ("in"), when its use is optional:

*Voy a España en (la) primavera.*

I'm going to Spain in the spring.

- The name of a day of the week, except after the verb *ser* ("to be") when giving the day of the week:

*No voy a trabajar el viernes.*

I'm not going to work on Friday.

*No voy a trabajar los viernes.*

I'm not going to work on Fridays.

*Hoy es viernes.*

Today is Friday.

- A weight or measure to express “a,” “an,” or “per”:

<i>Las frutas cuestan tres dólares la libra.</i>	The fruits cost three dollars per pound.
<i>Las rosas cuestan treinta dólares la docena.</i>	The roses cost \$30 a dozen.

- Names of languages, except directly after *hablar*, *en*, and *de*:

<i>El español es una lengua importante.</i>	Spanish is an important language.
<i>Hablo español con mis amigos.</i>	I speak Spanish with my friends.
<i>El libro está escrito en español.</i>	The book is written in Spanish.
<i>Mi madre es profesora de español.</i>	My mother is a Spanish teacher.

## Current Usage

In current colloquial Spanish, the definite article is often omitted after the following verbs:

<i>aprender</i>	to learn
<i>enseñar</i>	to teach
<i>escribir</i>	to write
<i>estudiar</i>	to study
<i>leer</i>	to read
<i>saber</i>	to know

### Example:

<i>Los alumnos aprenden (el) español.</i>	The students study Spanish.
---	-----------------------------

The definite article may be used before the name of a language after the verb *hablar* when it is modified:

<i>Hablamos bien (el) español.</i>	We speak Spanish well.
------------------------------------	------------------------

- Geographical names of rivers, mountains, and oceans; geographical names that are modified by adjectives; the names of some countries, states, and cities; the names of continents.

## Geographical Names with Definite Articles

There are no hard-and-fast rules to help determine which geographical locations should be preceded by definite articles. In fact, current, colloquial usage often permits the omission of the definite article. The names that most commonly use the definite article are

<i>los Alpes</i>	the Alps
<i>los Andes</i>	the Andes
<i>la América Central</i>	Central America
<i>la América del Norte</i>	North America
<i>la América del Sur</i>	South America
<i>la Argentina</i>	Argentina
<i>el Atlántico</i>	the Atlantic
<i>el Brasil</i>	Brazil
<i>el Canadá</i>	Canada
<i>el Cairo</i>	Cairo
<i>la China</i>	China
<i>el Ebro</i>	Ebro
<i>el Ecuador</i>	Ecuador
<i>el Escorial</i>	Escorial
<i>los Estados Unidos</i>	the United States
<i>la Florida</i>	Florida
<i>el Guadalquivir</i>	Guadalquivir
<i>la Habana</i>	Havana
<i>el Japón</i>	Japan
<i>el Mediterráneo</i>	the Mediterranean
<i>el Orinoco</i>	the Orinoco
<i>el Pacífico</i>	the Pacific
<i>el Paraguay</i>	Paraguay
<i>el Perú</i>	Peru
<i>la República Dominicana</i>	the Dominican Republic
<i>el Salvador</i>	El Salvador
<i>el Uruguay</i>	Uruguay

### Examples:

<i>El Amazonas es un río.</i>	The Amazon is a river.
<i>Nací en (los) Estados Unidos.</i>	I was born in the United States.

- Titles, except when addressing a person directly:

<i>La señora Nuñez no está aquí.</i>	Mrs. Nuñez isn't here.
<i>"Buenas tardes, Señora Nuñez."</i>	"Good afternoon, Mrs. Nuñez."

However, the definite article is omitted before *don (doña)* and *Santo (San, Santa)*:

<i>No veo a Doña Luisa.</i>	I don't see Doña Luisa.
-----------------------------	-------------------------

- Parts of the body or wearing apparel when the possessor is clear:

<i>Se lava los dientes.</i>	She brushes her teeth.
<i>Ponga el abrigo.</i>	Put on your coat.

- Infinitives used as nouns (the definite article is optional when the infinitive serves as the subject of the sentence):

<i>(El) Mentir es un pecado.</i>	Lying is a sin.
----------------------------------	-----------------

- Last names:

<i>Los López no están aquí.</i>	The Lopezes aren't here.
---------------------------------	--------------------------

- The names of boats and ships:

<i>La Niña era un barco.</i>	The <i>Niña</i> was a boat.
------------------------------	-----------------------------

## Exclamations

The definite article can be used in exclamations:

<i>¡Qué calor hace!</i>	How hot it is!
<i>¡El calor que hace es insoportable!</i>	It is unbearably hot!

## Omitting Definite Articles

A definite article is omitted before the following:

- Nouns in apposition (two nouns, one next to the other, that explain each other) unless they are modified or refer to a family or business relationship:

<i>Bolívar, libertador de Colombia, era un gran hombre.</i>	Bolívar, the liberator of Colombia, was a great man.
<i>Marta, la hermana de Luz, es muy bonita.</i>	Marta, Luz's sister, is very pretty.
<i>Juan Soto, el jefe de Paco, trabaja mucho.</i>	Juan Soto, Paco's boss, works a lot.



- Numerals used in a ruler's title:

*Carlos Quinto reinó en  
el siglo XVI.*

Carlos V reigned during the 16th  
century.

## Contractions

The prepositions *a* (“to”) and *de* (“of,” “from,” or “about”) contract with the definite article *el* to become *al* and *del*, respectively, except when the definite article is part of a title or name:

*Voy al cine.*

I'm going to the movies.

*Sale del teatro.*

He is leaving the theater.

*Nunca fui a la República Dominicana.* I never went to the Dominican Republic.

*Sin embargo, fuimos a Japón.*

However, we went to Japan.

## The Neuter Article, *Lo*

The neuter indefinite article, *lo*, has no plural form. It is used before the following:

- A masculine or feminine adjective used as a noun to express a quality or an abstract idea:

*¿Piensas lo mismo que yo?  
Lo peligroso le encanta.*

Do you think the same as I do?  
He loves dangerous things.

- A masculine or feminine adjective or an adverb + *que* to express “how”:

*¿Ves lo bella que es?  
No creo lo rápido que hable.*

Do you see how beautiful she is?  
I don't believe how fast he speaks.

## Expressing “How”

The neuter indefinite article, *lo*, when preceded by the preposition *a*, means “in the manner of” or “like”:

*Él comía a lo bestia.*

He was eating like an animal.

## INDEFINITE ARTICLES

An *indefinite article* indicates “a,” “an,” or “one” person, place, thing, or idea that is not specifically identified. It precedes the noun it modifies and agrees with it in number and gender. Although “a,” “an,” and “one” are easily expressed in English, Spanish requires four different words so that nouns are properly marked, as shown in the following table:

### Indefinite Articles

	Masculine	Feminine
<b>Singular</b>	<i>un muchacho</i> (“a boy”)	<i>una muchacha</i> (“a girl”)
<b>Plural</b>	<i>unos muchachos</i> (“some boys”)	<i>unas muchachas</i> (“some girls”)

#### Examples:

*Necesito una pluma.*

I need a pen.

*Unos alumnos están ausentes.*

Some students are absent.

## Omitting Indefinite Articles

The indefinite article is omitted in the following cases:

- Before nouns in apposition, except when they are preceded by an adjective:

*Cervantes, autor español, escribió  
Don Quijote.*

Cervantes, a Spanish author, wrote  
*Don Quijote*.

*Cervantes, un gran autor  
español, escribió Don Quijote.*

Cervantes, a great Spanish  
author, wrote *Don Quijote*.

- Before an unmodified noun (a noun with no adjective to describe it) that expresses a group or a class (occupation, nationality, religion, political, and so on). When the noun is modified, the indefinite article is used:

*Su abogado es colombiano.*

His lawyer is Colombian.

*Su abogado es un colombiano  
famoso.*

His lawyer is a famous Colombian.

- After certain words that usually take the indefinite article in English:

*Necesito otro cuchillo.*

I need another knife.

*En cierta ocasión, vino temprano.*

On one occasion he arrived early.

*Nunca dije tal cosa.*

I never said such a thing.

*¡Que coche tan grande!*

What a big car!

*Cien muchachos cantaban.*

One hundred boys were singing.

*Mil personas se reían.*

One thousand people were laughing.

## Masculine Articles with Feminine Nouns

Masculine definite and indefinite articles are used before feminine nouns that begin with stressed *a* or *ha*:

*El agua está fría.*

The water is cold.

*Tengo un hambre de lobo.*

I am ravenously hungry.

## DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES

*Demonstrative adjectives* agree in number and gender with the nouns they modify. They are used to express “this,” “that,” “these,” and “those,” and they mark the noun according to its distance from the speaker, as shown in the following table:

### Demonstrative Adjectives

	Masculine	Feminine	English	Distance
<b>Singular</b>	<i>este</i>	<i>esta</i>	this	near or directly concerned with the speaker
<b>Plural</b>	<i>estos</i>	<i>estas</i>	these	
<b>Singular</b>	<i>ese</i>	<i>esa</i>	that	not particularly near to or directly concerned with the speaker
<b>Plural</b>	<i>esos</i>	<i>esas</i>	those	
<b>Singular</b>	<i>aquel</i>	<i>aquella</i>	that	far from and not directly concerned with the speaker
<b>Plural</b>	<i>aquellos</i>	<i>aquellas</i>	those	

### Examples:

*Este libro es muy interesante.*

This book is very interesting.

*Esos coches son deportivos.*

Those cars are sporty.

*Aquella ciudad es grande.*

That city is big.

Note the following about demonstrative adjectives:

- They are used before each noun in a series:

*Este muchacho y esa muchacha  
son de Cuba.*

This boy and that girl are  
from Cuba.

- They convey a pejorative meaning when they are used after the noun they modify:

*Las muchachas esas no hacen  
nada por nadie.*

Those girls do nothing for anyone.

- They may be clarified with adverbs that reinforce the location of the noun:

<i>Este libro aquí es interesante.</i>	This book (here) is interesting.
<i>Quiero leer esos periódicos ahí.</i>	I want to read those newspapers (there, but not too far).
<i>¿Vives en aquella casa allá?</i>	Do you live in that house (there, rather far)?

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

A *demonstrative pronoun* replaces a demonstrative adjective and its noun and is used to make the language flow more naturally in conversation and in writing. Demonstrative pronouns are differentiated from demonstrative adjectives by an accent (although current usage allows for no accent in cases where there is no ambiguity), as shown in the following table:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	English	Distance
<b>Singular</b>	<i>éste</i>	<i>ésta</i>	<i>esto</i>	this (one)	near to or directly concerned with the speaker
<b>Plural</b>	<i>éstos</i>	<i>éstas</i>		these (ones)	
<b>Singular</b>	<i>ése</i>	<i>ésa</i>	<i>eso</i>	that (one)	not particularly near to or directly concerned with the speaker
<b>Plural</b>	<i>esos</i>	<i>esas</i>		those (ones)	
<b>Singular</b>	<i>aquél</i>	<i>aquella</i>	<i>aquello</i>	that (one)	far from and not directly concerned with the speaker
<b>Plural</b>	<i>aquéllos</i>	<i>aquellas</i>		those (ones)	

### Examples:

<i>Necesito este papel y esos.</i>	I need this paper and those.
<i>Estos coches y aquél son muy caros.</i>	These cars and that one are very expensive.

Note the following about demonstrative pronouns:

- *Éste, éstos, ésta, and éstas* express “the former,” whereas *aquél, aquéllos, aquella, and aquellas* express “the latter”:

<i>Luz y Ana son gemelas. Ésta es rubia y aquella es morena.</i>	Luz and Ana are twins. The former (Luz) has brown hair, and the latter (Ana) is blond.
--	--

- The neuter pronouns *esto, eso, and aquello* refer to ideas or concepts rather than to nouns:

<i>Ella está enferma. Esto me preocupa.</i>	She is sick. That worries me.
<i>¿Qué es eso?</i>	What is that?
<i>Aquello no tiene importancia.</i>	That isn't important.

## Special Demonstrative Pronouns

In relative clauses, the special demonstrative pronouns *el*, *los*, *la*, *las*, and *lo* are used in place of the pronouns *éste*, *ése*, *aqué!*, and so on when they are followed by *de* or *que*:

*Yo tomo el tren de las ocho y ella  
toma el de las nueve.*

I take the eight o'clock train and she  
takes the nine o'clock.

*No comprendo lo que me dijiste.*

I don't understand what you said to me.

## Nouns

A *noun* refers to a person, a place, a thing, an idea, or a quality. Unlike in English, every Spanish noun has a gender (masculine or feminine) and a number (singular or plural), which can usually, but not always, be determined by the noun's ending.

### GENDER

Nouns are generally classified as masculine or feminine according to their endings or according to certain thematic groups to which they belong.

### Masculine Nouns

Most Spanish nouns that end in *-o* are masculine (except for *la mano* ["the hand"] and *la radio* ["the radio"]) and are preceded by masculine, singular markers:

*el niño*

the boy

*un niño*

a boy

*este (ese, aquel) niño*

this (that) boy

Nouns that end in *-aje* are masculine, singular:

*el coraje*

courage

*el fuselaje*

fuselage

*el garaje*

garage

*el pasaje*

passage

*el personaje*

character

*el traje*

suit (clothing)

Nouns that end in *-ma* or *-eta* and are derived from Greek are masculine, singular:

*el clima*

the climate

*el drama*

the drama

*el idioma*

the language

<i>el poema</i>	the poem
<i>el problema</i>	the problem
<i>el programa</i>	the program
<i>el sistema</i>	the system
<i>el telegrama</i>	the telegram
<i>el tema</i>	the theme
<i>el atleta</i>	the athlete
<i>el cometa</i>	the comet
<i>el planeta</i>	the planet
<i>el poeta</i>	the poet

Nouns that belong to the following thematic groups are masculine:

- Numbers:

<i>el cinco</i>	five
<i>el millón</i>	million

- Names of days of the week:

<i>el lunes</i>	Monday
<i>el martes</i>	Tuesday

- Names of months:

<i>el enero</i>	January
<i>el febrero</i>	February

- Compass points:

<i>el norte</i>	north
<i>el este</i>	east
<i>el sur</i>	south
<i>el oeste</i>	west

- Names of trees:

<i>el manzano</i>	apple tree
<i>el peral</i>	pear tree

- Names of rivers, lakes, mountains, straits, and seas:

<i>el Guadalquivir</i>	the Guadalquivir
<i>el Caribe</i>	the Caribbean Sea

- Names of musical notes:

<i>el do</i>	do
<i>el la</i>	la

- Compound nouns:

<i>el abrelatas</i>	can opener
<i>el parabrisas</i>	windshield

## Feminine Nouns

Most Spanish nouns that end in *-a* are feminine (except for *el mapa* [“the map”] and those of Greek derivation that end in *-ma*, and *-eta*, listed earlier) and are preceded by feminine, singular markers:

<i>la niña</i>	the girl
<i>una niña</i>	a girl
<i>esta (esa, aquella) niña</i>	this (that) girl

Nouns that end in *-ad*, *-ie*, *-ción*, *-sión*, *-ud*, and *-umbre* are generally feminine, singular:

## Feminine Endings

<b>-ad</b>	<b>-ie</b>	<b>-ción</b>	<b>-sión</b>	<b>-ud</b>	<b>-umbre</b>
<i>la amistad</i> friendship	<i>la serie</i> series	<i>la sensación</i> sensation	<i>la tensión</i> tension	<i>la salud</i> health	<i>la legumbre</i> vegetable
<i>la verdad</i> truth	<i>la especie</i> species	<i>la nación</i> nation	<i>la comisión</i> commission	<i>la virtud</i> virtue	<i>la costumbre</i> custom
<i>la felicidad</i> happiness	<i>la planicie</i> plain	<i>la revolución</i> revolution	<i>la misión</i> mission	<i>la aptitud</i> aptitude	<i>la certidumbre</i> certainty
<i>la caridad</i> charity	<i>la superficie</i> area	<i>la lección</i> lesson	<i>la posesión</i> possession	<i>la juventud</i> youth	<i>la muchedumbre</i> crowd

Two common nouns are always feminine, despite the gender of the person being described:

<i>la persona</i>	the person
<i>la víctima</i>	the victim

## Examples:

<i>Juan es una persona muy simpática.</i>	Juan is a very nice person.
<i>Julio fue la víctima.</i>	Julio was the victim.

One common noun is always masculine, despite the gender of the person being described:

*el bebé*

the baby

**Example:**

*Marta es un bebé.*

Martha is a baby.

## Special Cases

Some masculine nouns that refer to people and that end in *-or*, *-és*, or *-n* add *-a* to form the feminine equivalent. If the masculine noun has an accented final syllable, the accent is dropped for the feminine:

Masculine	Feminine	English
<i>el profesor</i>	<i>la profesora</i>	the teacher
<i>el francés</i>	<i>la francesa</i>	the French person
<i>el alemán</i>	<i>la alemana</i>	the German person

## The Same Noun for Both Genders

Some nouns are identical in both their masculine and feminine forms but change marker to indicate the gender:

Masculine	Feminine	English
<i>el artista</i>	<i>la artista</i>	the artist
<i>el astronauta</i>	<i>la astronauta</i>	the astronaut
<i>el ciclista</i>	<i>la ciclista</i>	the cyclist
<i>el dentista</i>	<i>la dentista</i>	the dentist
<i>el estudiante</i>	<i>la estudiante</i>	the student
<i>el joven</i>	<i>la joven</i>	the youth
<i>el mártir</i>	<i>la mártir</i>	the martyr
<i>el periodista</i>	<i>la periodista</i>	the journalist
<i>el telefonista</i>	<i>la telefonista</i>	the operator
<i>el testigo</i>	<i>la testigo</i>	the witness
<i>el violinista</i>	<i>la violinista</i>	the violinist



## Distinct Masculine and Feminine Forms

Some nouns have different masculine and feminine forms:

<b>Masculine</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Feminine</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>el actor</i>	the actor	<i>la actriz</i>	the actress
<i>el caballo</i>	the horse	<i>la yegua</i>	the mare
<i>el duque</i>	the duke	<i>la duquesa</i>	the duchess
<i>el emperador</i>	the emperor	<i>la emperatriz</i>	the empress
<i>el gallo</i>	the chicken	<i>la gallina</i>	the hen
<i>el héroe</i>	the hero	<i>la heroína</i>	the heroine
<i>el hombre</i>	the man	<i>la mujer</i>	the woman
<i>el marido</i>	the husband	<i>la esposa</i>	the wife
<i>el poeta</i>	the poet	<i>la poetisa</i>	the poet
<i>el príncipe</i>	the prince	<i>la princesa</i>	the princess
<i>el rey</i>	the king	<i>la reina</i>	the queen
<i>el yerno</i>	the son-in-law	<i>la nuera</i>	the daughter-in-law

## Changes in Meaning

Some nouns have a different meaning, depending on their gender:

<b>Masculine</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Feminine</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>el capital</i>	the capital (money)	<i>la capital</i>	the capital (of a state or country)
<i>el cura</i>	the priest	<i>la cura</i>	the cure
<i>el frente</i>	the front	<i>la frente</i>	the forehead
<i>el guía</i>	the male guide	<i>la guía</i>	the female guide, the guidebook
<i>el orden</i>	the order (succession)	<i>la orden</i>	the order (command)
<i>el papa</i>	the pope	<i>la papa</i>	the potato
<i>el policía</i>	the police officer	<i>la policía</i>	the police force, the police woman

### Examples:

*El papa comía la papa.  
El guía leía la guía.*

The pope was eating the potato.  
The guide was reading the guidebook.

## The Animal Kingdom

Some nouns that refer to animals, fish, reptiles, insects, and birds use the same marker and noun for animals of both sexes:

<i>la cigüeña</i>	stork
<i>el mosquito</i>	mosquito
<i>la jirafa</i>	giraffe
<i>la hiena</i>	hyena
<i>el cóndor</i>	condor
<i>el murciélago</i>	bat
<i>la ballena</i>	whale
<i>la ardilla</i>	squirrel
<i>la serpiente</i>	snake
<i>la víbora</i>	viper
<i>la avispa</i>	wasp
<i>el rinoceronte</i>	rhinoceros
<i>la oruga</i>	caterpillar
<i>el tiburón</i>	shark

## NUMBER

In Spanish, just like in English, when you want to refer to more than one noun, that noun and its markers must be made plural.

To form the plural of a noun that ends in a vowel, add -s:

<b>Singular</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Plural</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>el muchacho</i>	the boy	<i>los muchachos</i>	the boys
<i>la muchacha</i>	the girl	<i>las muchachas</i>	the girls
<i>un muchacho</i>	a boy	<i>unos muchachos</i>	some boys
<i>una muchacha</i>	a girl	<i>unas muchachas</i>	some girls
<i>este muchacho</i>	this boy	<i>estos muchachos</i>	those boys
<i>esa muchacha</i>	that girl	<i>esas muchachas</i>	those girls
<i>aquel muchacho</i>	that boy	<i>aquellos muchachos</i>	those boys

To form the plural of a noun that ends in a consonant, an accented vowel, or *y*, add *-es*:

<b>Singular</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Plural</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>el papel</i>	the paper	<i>los papeles</i>	the papers
<i>un vendedor</i>	a salesman	<i>unos vendedores</i>	some salesmen
<i>este rubí</i>	this ruby	<i>estos rubíes</i>	these rubies
<i>esa ley</i>	that law	<i>esas leyes</i>	those laws
<i>aquel rey</i>	that king	<i>aquellos reyes</i>	those kings

## Exceptions to the Number Rules

The following exceptions to the rules occur in Spanish:

- For some nouns that end in an accented vowel, add *-s* to form the plural:

<b>Singular</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Plural</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>el café</i>	the café	<i>los cafés</i>	the cafés
<i>la mamá</i>	the mother	<i>las mamás</i>	the mothers
<i>el papá</i>	the father	<i>los papás</i>	the fathers
<i>el sofá</i>	the sofa	<i>los sofás</i>	the sofas

- For nouns that end in *-z*, change *-z* to *-c* before adding the *-es* plural ending:

<b>Singular</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Plural</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>el pez</i>	the fish	<i>los peces</i>	the fish
<i>esa luz</i>	that light	<i>esas luces</i>	those lights

- For some nouns that end in *-n* or *-s*, add or delete an accent mark to maintain the original stress and the proper pronunciation of the word:

<b>Singular</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Plural</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>el joven</i>	the youth	<i>los jóvenes</i>	the youths
<i>el examen</i>	the test	<i>los exámenes</i>	the tests
<i>el alemán</i>	the German	<i>los alemanes</i>	the Germans
<i>el limón</i>	the lemon	<i>los limones</i>	the lemons
<i>el inglés</i>	the Englishman	<i>los ingleses</i>	the Englishmen

- Nouns that end in an unstressed *-s* remain invariable in the plural, whereas those that end in a stressed *-s* (generally words of one syllable) require *-es* to form the plural:

<b>Singular</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Plural</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>el jueves</i>	Thursday	<i>los jueves</i>	Thursdays
<i>la crisis</i>	the crisis	<i>las crisis</i>	the crises
<i>el mes</i>	the month	<i>los meses</i>	the months

- Compound nouns are invariable (that is, they do not change) in the plural:

<b>Singular</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Plural</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>el rascacielos</i>	the skyscraper	<i>los rascacielos</i>	the skyscrapers
<i>el portamonedas</i>	the purse	<i>los portamonedas</i>	the purses

- Some nouns are always plural:

<i>las vacaciones</i>	vacation
<i>las matemáticas</i>	mathematics
<i>las gafas</i>	eyeglasses

## Mixed Plurals

When you are referring to two nouns of different sexes of people, the masculine plural form of the noun is used:

<i>el hijo</i>	the son
<i>la hija</i>	the daughter
<i>los hijos</i>	the children
<i>el señor Cruz</i>	Mr. Cruz
<i>la señora Cruz</i>	Mrs. Cruz
<i>los señores Cruz</i>	the Cruzes

# Possession

*Possession* shows that a noun belongs to someone or something. In English, we show possession by adding *-s* or *'s* after the noun that refers to the possessor. Because apostrophes are not used in Spanish, possession is shown by using the preposition *de*, by using possessive adjectives, or by using possessive pronouns.

## USING THE PREPOSITION *DE*

The preposition *de* (“of”) expresses possession and relationship. Whereas in English the name of the possessor comes first and is followed by the item possessed or the relationship, in Spanish the word order is reversed, with *de* joining the noun

possessed with the possessor. In a sentence that contains more than one noun, it is unnecessary to repeat *de* before each noun, although *de* + the definite article is used before each noun. Note that *de* (“of”) contracts with *el* (“the”) to become *del* (“of the”):

*El coche de Roberto es grande.*  
*La madre de Ana es bonita.*  
*Los hijos de Mario e Isabel son inteligentes.*  
*Es la casa de la abuela de Juan y del tío de Javier.*

Robert’s car is big.  
 Ann’s mother is pretty.  
 Mario and Isabel’s children are smart.  
 It’s Juan’s grandmother’s and Javier’s uncle’s house.

To ask “whose,” use *¿De quién es?* for a singular response or *¿De quiénes son?* for a plural response. The verb agrees with the item possessed:

*¿De quién es esa bicicleta?*  
*Es la bicicleta de María.*  
*¿De quién son aquellos libros?*  
*Son los libros de Paco.*  
*¿De quiénes es ese barco?*  
*Es el barco de los Gómez.*  
*¿De quiénes son estos coches?*  
*Son los coches de los Blancos.*

Whose bicycle is that?  
 It’s Maria’s bicycle.  
 Whose books are those?  
 They are Paco’s books.  
 Whose boat is that?  
 It’s the Gómezes’ boat.  
 Whose cars are these?  
 They are the Blancoses’ cars.

## Avoiding Repetition

To avoid unnecessary repetition in a sentence, the noun in possession may be replaced by its corresponding definite article, according to gender and number, and the word *de*:

*Mi profesora y la de mi hermano son de España.*

My teacher and my brother’s (teacher) are from Spain.

*Su hijo y los de Carlota estudian mucho.*

Your son and Carlota’s (sons) study a lot.

## POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

A *possessive adjective* agrees in number and gender with the noun it modifies (the noun possessed) and not with the possessor. Spanish possessive adjectives have short and long forms.

## Short Forms

The short form of a Spanish possessive adjective is used only before each noun that it modifies. The following are the short forms of possessive adjectives:

### Short Forms of Spanish Possessive Adjectives

Before Masculine Nouns		Before Feminine Nouns		English
Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural	
<i>mi</i>	<i>mis</i>	<i>mi</i>	<i>mis</i>	my
<i>tu</i>	<i>tus</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>tus</i>	your (informal)
<i>su</i>	<i>sus</i>	<i>su</i>	<i>sus</i>	his, her, your (formal), its
<i>nuestro</i>	<i>nuestros</i>	<i>nuestra</i>	<i>nuestras</i>	our
<i>vuestro</i>	<i>vuestros</i>	<i>vuestra</i>	<i>vuestras</i>	your (informal)
<i>su</i>	<i>sus</i>	<i>su</i>	<i>sus</i>	their, your (formal)

#### Examples:

*Su madre y mi padre son primos.* Her mother and my father are cousins.  
*Nuestras amigas van al campo.* Our friends are going to the country.

As mentioned previously, with parts of the body and with clothing, when the possessor is clear, the definite article replaces the possessive adjective but retains its meaning:

*Él se quitó el sombrero.* He took off his hat.

## Long Forms

The long form of a Spanish possessive adjective is used only after each noun that it modifies. The following are the long forms of possessive adjectives:

### Long Forms of Spanish Possessive Adjectives

After Masculine Nouns		After Feminine Nouns		English
Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural	
<i>mío</i>	<i>míos</i>	<i>mía</i>	<i>mías</i>	my
<i>tuyo</i>	<i>tuyos</i>	<i>tuya</i>	<i>tuyas</i>	your (informal)
<i>suyo</i>	<i>suyos</i>	<i>suya</i>	<i>suyas</i>	his, her, your (formal), its

(continues)

## Long Forms of Spanish Possessive Adjectives (*continued*)

After Masculine Nouns		After Feminine Nouns		English
Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural	
<i>nuestro</i>	<i>nuestros</i>	<i>nuestra</i>	<i>nuestras</i>	our
<i>vuestro</i>	<i>vuestros</i>	<i>vuestra</i>	<i>vuestras</i>	your (informal)
<i>suyo</i>	<i>suyos</i>	<i>suya</i>	<i>suyas</i>	their, your (formal)

### Examples:

*Olvidé el libro mío.*

I forgot my book.

*Unas amigas nuestras vienen.*

Some of our friends are coming.

### Avoiding Ambiguity

Because *su* and *sus* and *suyo* and *suyos* have several different meanings, their intended meanings can be clarified by replacing the possessive adjective with the definite article that correctly marks the noun + *de* + the pronoun that corresponds to the desired meaning (*él*, *ella*, or *Ud.*):

*Yo tengo su pluma.*

I have his (her, your) pen.

*Yo tengo la pluma de él (ella, Ud.)*

I have his (her, your) pen.

*La madre suya es abogada.*

His (Her, Your) mother is a lawyer.

*La madre de él (ella, Ud.) es abogada.*

His (Her, Your) mother is a lawyer.

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

A *possessive pronoun* replaces a possessive adjective and its accompanying noun. Like possessive adjectives, a possessive pronoun agrees in number and gender with the noun being possessed and not with the possessor. A possessive pronoun is composed of two parts: the definite article that corresponds in number and gender with the noun being possessed and the long form of the possessive adjective, as shown in the following table:

## Possessive Pronouns

Replace Masculine Nouns		Replace Feminine Nouns		English
Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural	
<i>el mío</i>	<i>los míos</i>	<i>la mía</i>	<i>las mías</i>	mine
<i>el tuyo</i>	<i>los tuyos</i>	<i>la tuya</i>	<i>las tuyas</i>	yours (informal)
<i>el suyo</i>	<i>los suyos</i>	<i>la suya</i>	<i>las suyas</i>	his/hers/yours (formal)
<i>el nuestro</i>	<i>los nuestros</i>	<i>la nuestra</i>	<i>las nuestras</i>	ours
<i>el vuestro</i>	<i>los vuestros</i>	<i>la vuestra</i>	<i>las vuestras</i>	yours (informal)
<i>el suyo</i>	<i>los suyos</i>	<i>la suya</i>	<i>las suyas</i>	theirs/yours (formal)

### Examples:

*Tu madre es profesora y la mía es doctora.*

Your mother is a teacher, and mine is a doctor.

*Tu perro es pequeño. Los nuestros son grandes.*

Your dog is small. Ours are big.

The definite article is generally omitted after the verb *ser*:

*Este paraguas es tuyo.*

This umbrella is yours.

### Being Clear

For purposes of clarification, after the noun, *el suyo* (*la suya*, *los suyos*, *las suyas*) can be replaced by the corresponding definite article + the preposition *de*, + *Ud.* (*Uds.*, *él*, *ella*, *ellas*):

*Olvidé mi libro y el suyo.*

I forgot my book and yours (his, hers)

*Olvidé mi libro y el de Ud. (él, ella).*

I forgot my book and yours (his, hers)

## Personal Pronouns

*Personal pronouns* include subject pronouns, prepositional pronouns, and direct and indirect object pronouns. [*Reflexive pronouns, which serve as either direct or indirect object pronouns, are discussed in Part XIII.*]



## SUBJECT PRONOUNS

A *subject pronoun* replaces a noun that performs the action of the verb. Spanish subject pronouns are not as widely used as their English counterparts (except for *Ud.* and *Uds.*) because Spanish verb endings indicate the subject. You use Spanish subject pronouns when you want to be polite, to emphasize the subject, or to be clear as to whom the subject is. Like English subject pronouns, a Spanish subject pronoun has a person and a number, as shown in the following table:

	Singular		Plural	
	Spanish	English	Spanish	English
<b>1st Person</b>	<i>yo</i>	I	<i>nosotros (nosotras)</i>	we
<b>2nd Person</b>	<i>tú</i>	you	<i>vosotros (vosotras)</i>	you
<b>3rd Person</b>	<i>usted (Ud.)</i>	you	<i>ustedes (Uds.)</i>	you
	<i>él</i>	he	<i>ellos</i>	they
	<i>ella</i>	she	<i>ellas</i>	they

### Examples:

<i>Ella no prestaba atención mientras Ud. hablaba.</i>	She wasn't paying attention while you were speaking.
<i>No diga nada. Ella tiene que explicar el problema.</i>	Don't say anything. She has to explain the problem.
<i>¡Pase Ud.!</i>	Come in!

Spanish subject pronouns are not capitalized (except for the *Ud.* and *Uds.* abbreviations) unless they begin a sentence.

It is important to know the following about Spanish subject pronouns:

- **tú and Ud.:** *Tú* addresses one friend, relative, child, or pet and is the informal singular form of “you.” *Ud.* shows respect to an older person, to a stranger, or to someone you do not know well. *Ud.* is the formal singular form of “you”:

<i>¿Dónde trabajas tú?</i>	Where do you work?
<i>¿Dónde trabaja Ud.?</i>	Where do you live?

- **vosotros (vosotras) and Uds.:** *Vosotros* and *vosotras* are used primarily in Spain (and only rarely in Latin America) to address more than one friend, relative, child, or pet and are the informal plural forms of “you.” *Vosotros* is used when speaking to a group of males or to a combined group of males and females. *Vosotras* is used only when speaking to a group of females. *Uds.* is used throughout the Spanish-speaking world to show respect to more than one older person or when speaking to strangers or people you do not know well.

*Uds.* is the formal plural form of “you” and replaces *vosotros* (*vosotras*) in Latin America. Note, however, that the *vosotros* form is widely used in Argentina:

<i>¿Dónde trabajáis vosotros?</i>	Where do you work?
<i>¿Dónde trabajan Uds.?</i>	Where do you work?

- **Él and ella:** *Él* (“he,” “it”) and *ella* (“she,” “it”) may refer to a person or to a thing:

<i>El niño entra.</i>	The boy enters.
<i>El frío entra.</i>	The cold enters.
<i>Él entra.</i>	He (It) enters.
<i>La niña es grande.</i>	The girl is big.
<i>La falda es grande.</i>	The skirt is big.
<i>Ella es grande.</i>	She (It) is big.

- **Ellos and ellas:** *Ellos* refers to more than one male or to a combined group of males and females, regardless of the number of each sex present. *Ellas* refers only to a group of females:

<i>Juan y Luís hablan. Ellos hablan.</i>	Juan and Luís speak. They speak.
<i>Ana y Luz hablan. Ellas hablan.</i>	Ann and Luz speak. They speak.
<i>Juan y Luz hablan. Ellos hablan.</i>	Juan and Luz speak. They speak.

- **Nosotros and nosotras:** *Nosotros* refers to more than one male or a combined group of males and females, regardless of the number of each sex present. *Nosotras* refers only to a group of females:

<i>Nosotros (Nosotras) estudiamos.</i>	We study.
--	-----------

## It

The English pronoun *it* is not expressed in Spanish; however, it can be inferred from the sentence:

<i>¿Qué es? Es un reloj.</i>	What is it? It's a watch.
<i>¿De dónde está? Es de España.</i>	Where is it from? It's from Spain.

## PREPOSITIONAL PRONOUNS

A *prepositional pronoun* follows a preposition as its object. [A list of common prepositions can be found in the section *Common Prepositions in Part X.*] The following pronouns are used after prepositions:

## Prepositional Pronouns

Subject	Prepositional Pronoun	English
<i>yo</i>	<i>mí</i>	I, me
<i>tú</i>	<i>ti</i>	you (informal)
<i>él</i>	<i>él (sí)</i>	he, him, (himself)
<i>ella</i>	<i>ella (sí)</i>	she, her, (herself)
<i>Ud.</i>	<i>Ud.(sí)</i>	you, (yourself) (formal)
<i>nosotros</i>	<i>nosotros</i>	we, us
<i>vosotros</i>	<i>vosotros</i>	you (informal)
<i>ellos</i>	<i>ellos</i>	they, them
<i>ellas</i>	<i>ellas</i>	they, them
<i>Uds</i>	<i>Uds</i>	you (formal, plural)

### Examples:

*¿Vives cerca de mí?* Do you live near me?  
*Este regalo es para ti.* This gift is for you.

The prepositional pronouns *mí* and *ti* and the reflexive prepositional pronoun *sí* combine with the preposition *con*, respectively, to form *conmigo* (“with me”), *contigo* (“with you”), and *consigo* (“with him [her, you]”):

*¿Vas a la fiesta conmigo?* Are you going to the party with me?  
*Por supuesto voy contigo.* Of course, I’m going with you.  
*Siempre lleva una tarjeta de crédito consigo.* He always takes a credit card with him.

The prepositional pronoun phrase *para sí* is used reflexively in the singular and in the plural to express “himself,” “herself,” “yourself,” “themselves,” and “yourselves”:

*Hacen todo para sí.* They do everything for themselves.

The neuter pronoun, *ello*, refers to a general idea:

*Sueño en ello.* I dream about it.

## OBJECT PRONOUNS

*Object pronouns* are replacement words that are used to avoid unnecessary, continuous repetition of the direct or indirect object noun. They allow for a more colloquial, free-flowing, conversational tone when speaking or writing. When using these pronouns, make sure that the conjugated verb agrees with the subject, and not with the object.

## Direct Object Pronouns

A *direct object* is a noun or pronoun that tells what or whom the subject is acting on; it may refer to people, places, things, or ideas. Direct objects ordinarily receive or are in some way affected by the action of the verb. Direct object nouns may be replaced by the pronouns shown in the following table:

### Direct Object Pronouns

Singular Pronoun	English	Plural Pronoun	English
<i>me</i>	me	<i>nos</i>	us
<i>te</i>	you (informal)	<i>os</i> (preferred in Spain)	you (familiar)
<i>le</i> (preferred in Spain for "him," "you")	him, you (formal)	<i>los</i>	them, you
<i>lo</i> (preferred in Latin America for "him," "you")	him, you (formal), it	<i>los</i>	them, you
<i>la</i>	her, it, you (formal)	<i>las</i>	them, you

### Examples:

<i>Nosotros preparamos la cena.</i>	We prepare the dinner.
<i>Nosotros la preparamos.</i>	We prepare it.
<i>Yo no veo a Roberto.</i>	I don't see Robert.
<i>Yo no le veo.</i>	I don't see him. (in Spain)
<i>Yo no lo veo.</i>	I don't see him. (in Latin America)

## Verbs That Require Direct Objects

The following verbs require direct objects in Spanish, even though they require indirect objects in English:

<i>buscar</i>	to look for
<i>escuchar</i>	to listen to
<i>esperar</i>	to wait for, to hope for
<i>llamar</i>	to call
<i>pagar</i>	to pay for (something)
<i>mirar</i>	to look at, to watch

### Examples:

<i>Yo lo llama frecuentemente.</i>	I call him frequently.
<i>¿Las faldas? ¿Cuánto las pagaste?</i>	The skirts? How much did you pay for them?

## The Personal A

The personal *a* has no English equivalent and is used only before a direct object noun to indicate that the direct object noun refers to a person (or persons), a pet, an indefinite person, or an unmodified geographic name (although this usage is becoming obsolete). The personal *a* is not used with the verb *tener* (to have):

<i>¿Invitaste a Jorge y a su hermana?</i>	Did you invite George and his sister?
<i>Adora a su perro.</i>	She adores her dog.
<i>¿Hablas a alguien?</i>	Are you speaking to someone?
<i>Quiero ver a Madrid.</i>	I want to see Madrid.
<i>Tengo un hermano.</i>	I have a brother.

## Indirect Object Pronouns

An *indirect object* is a noun or pronoun that tells “to whom” or “for whom” the subject is doing something; it refers only to people or pets. Indirect object nouns or pronouns are indirectly affected by the action of the verb. In English, indirect object nouns may be replaced by indirect object pronouns. In Spanish, however, the indirect object pronoun is used even when the noun is mentioned. The preposition *a* (*al*, *a los*, *a las*) is usually an indicator that an indirect object is called for. It is important to distinguish between the prepositional *a* (meaning “to” or “for”) and the personal *a* (which has no meaning in English). Generally, you use *a él*, *a ella*, and *a Ud.* immediately after the verb to clarify to whom you are referring. In certain cases, to maintain a complete thought, these tags may come at the end of the thought.

Note that *me*, *te*, *nos*, and *os* serve as both direct and indirect object pronouns. Spanish indirect object pronouns are shown in the following table:

### Indirect Object Pronouns

Singular Pronoun	English	Plural Pronoun	English
<i>me</i>	to me	<i>nos</i>	to us
<i>te</i>	to you (informal)	<i>os</i>	to you (informal)
<i>le</i>	to him, to her, to you, to it	<i>les</i>	to them, to you

### Examples:

<i>Leo el libro a mis hijas.</i>	I read the book to my daughters.
<i>Les leo el libro.</i>	I read the book to them.
<i>Le escribo.</i>	I write to him (her, you).
<i>Le escribo una carta a él (a ella, a Ud.).</i>	I write a letter to him (her, you).
<i>Él nos compra regalos a nosotros.</i>	He buys gifts for us.

## Verbs That Require Indirect Objects

The following verbs require indirect objects in Spanish (because “to” or “for” is implied), regardless of the object used in English:

<i>aconsejar</i>	to advise
<i>contar</i>	to relate, to tell
<i>contestar</i>	to answer
<i>dar</i>	to give
<i>decir</i>	to say, to tell
<i>devolver</i>	to return
<i>enviar</i>	to send
<i>escribir</i>	to write
<i>explicar</i>	to explain
<i>mandar</i>	to send
<i>ofrecer</i>	to offer
<i>pagar</i>	to pay ([to] someone)
<i>pedir</i>	to ask
<i>perdonar*</i>	to forgive
<i>preguntar</i>	to ask
<i>prestar</i>	to lend
<i>prohibir</i>	to forbid
<i>prometer</i>	to promise
<i>recordar*</i>	to remind
<i>regalar</i>	to give a gift
<i>telefonar</i>	to phone

\*These verbs take an indirect object only when a direct object is also present in the sentence.

### Examples:

<i>Digo la verdad a mis amigos.</i>	I tell my friends the truth.
<i>Les digo la verdad.</i>	I tell them the truth.
<i>La recuerdo.</i>	I remember her.
<i>Le recuerdo mi número de teléfono.</i>	I remind her of my phone number.

## ***Gustar* and Similar Verbs**

*Gustar* (“to please,” “to be pleasing to”) and a few other Spanish verbs use indirect objects to express the subjects of their English counterparts. The following table lists the most common of those verbs:

<b>Verb</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>aburrir</i>	to bore
<i>agradar</i>	to please, to be pleased with
<i>bastar</i>	to be enough
<i>caer bien</i>	to like
<i>convenir</i>	to be suitable, to be convenient
<i>disgustar</i>	to upset, to displease
<i>doler</i>	to be painful
<i>encantar</i>	to adore
<i>entusiasmar</i>	to enthuse, to love
<i>faltar</i>	to lack, to need
<i>fascinar</i>	to fascinate
<i>fastidiar</i>	to annoy, to bother
<i>hacer daño</i>	to harm
<i>importar</i>	to be important
<i>interesar</i>	to interest
<i>molestar</i>	to bother
<i>parecer</i>	to seem
<i>quedar</i>	to remain to someone, to have left
<i>resultar</i>	to result
<i>sentar bien</i>	to appreciate
<i>sentar mal</i>	to upset
<i>sobrar</i>	to be left over
<i>sorprender</i>	to surprise
<i>tocar</i>	to be one's turn

To use these verbs, follow these rules:

- The Spanish indirect object is the subject of the English sentence:

<i>Me gustan los perros.</i>	I like dogs.
<i>Le interesan los coches.</i>	Cars interest him.

- The third person singular of the verb is used with one or more infinitives:

<i>No nos aburre jugar al tenis.</i>	Playing tennis doesn't bore us.
<i>Me encanta cocinar y leer.</i>	I adore cooking and reading.

- The indirect object pronoun may be preceded by the preposition *a* + the indirect object noun or the prepositional pronoun that corresponds to the indirect object pronoun for stress or clarification:

<i>A Elena le toca poner la mesa.</i>	It's Elena's turn to set the table.
<i>A mí me faltan cien dólares.</i>	I need one hundred dollars.
<i>Les place trabajar con Ud.</i>	They are pleased to work with you.

## The Neuter Pronoun, *Lo*

The neuter pronoun, *lo*, refers to an idea or a concept and can substitute for an adjective, an adjectival phrase, a prepositional phrase, or a subordinate clause:

<i>Ella es inteligente, ¿no? Sí, lo es.</i>	She's intelligent, right? Yes, she is.
<i>¿Sabes a qué hora van a llegar?</i>	Do you know what time they are
<i>No lo sé.</i>	going to arrive? No, I don't.

## Positioning of Object Pronouns

Direct and indirect object pronouns are normally placed before the verb:

<i>Yo lo quiero.</i>	I want it.
<i>Él no me habló.</i>	He didn't speak to me.

In a construction that uses a gerund or an infinitive, the direct or indirect object may precede the verb that is conjugated, or it may follow and be attached to the infinitive or the gerund. When the pronoun is attached to the gerund, you add an accent to the stressed vowel by counting back three vowels from the end of the word:

<i>Lo quiero escuchar.</i> or <i>Quiero escucharlo.</i>	I want to listen to it.
<i>Les estoy escribiendo.</i> or	I'm writing to them.
<i>Estoy escribiéndoles.</i>	

An object pronoun is placed after an affirmative command and attached to it. In a negative command, however, an object pronoun precedes the verb. In an affirmative command, when the pronoun is attached to the imperative form, you generally add an accent to the stressed vowel by counting back three vowels from the end of the word:



*Léala.*  
*No la lea.*

Read it.  
Don't read it.

## Double Object Pronouns

A sentence may contain both a direct object pronoun and an indirect object pronoun. When this occurs, the indirect object pronoun (which refers to a person or pet) precedes the direct object pronoun (which generally refers to a thing):

*Él me la dió.*  
*Yo te lo diré.*

He gave it to me.  
I will tell it to you.

When there are two third person object pronouns in a sentence, the indirect object pronouns *le* and *les* change to *se* before the direct object pronouns *lo*, *la*, *los*, and *las*. To avoid ambiguity, the phrases *a Ud.* (*Uds.*), *a él* (*ellos*), and *a ella* (*ellas*) may be used to clarify the meaning of *se*:

*Yo se los ofrece a él (ella, Ud.).*  
*Ella se la explica a ellos (ellas, Uds.).*

I offer them to him (her, you).  
She explains it to them (you).

The rules for the positioning of single object pronouns (with respect to infinitives, gerunds, commands, and the like) apply for double object pronouns as well. When two pronouns are added to the end of an infinitive, you generally count back three vowels and add an accent. When two pronouns are added to a gerund or an affirmative command, you generally, but not always, count back four vowels and add an accent:

*¿Me lo va a enviar?* or  
*¿Va Ud. a enviármelo?*  
*Él nos la está contando.*  
or *Él está contándonosla.*

Are you going to send it to me?

He is telling it to us.

### But:

*No se lo traiga.* or *Tráigaselo.*

(Don't) Bring it to him (her, you).

# **SIMPLE TENSES**

## **The Present Tense**

---

The word *tense* derives from the Latin word meaning “time” and refers to changes in the form of a verb to indicate when the action takes place. The *present tense*, as shall be pointed out later, not only refers to present time events but to customary actions and to happenings that will take place in the future.

### **THE PRESENT TENSE OF REGULAR VERBS**

The present tense of regular Spanish verbs expresses what the subject does now. There are three main families of regular verbs: those whose infinitives end in *-ar*, *-er*, and *-ir*. All regular verbs that fall within a specific family follow the same rules of conjugation.

#### **Conjugation**

*Conjugation* refers to the act of dropping the infinitive ending and adding an ending that appropriately indicates tense (past, present, or future), voice (active or passive), or mood (indicative, conditional, subjunctive, imperative, or infinitive) and number (singular or plural) and person (first, second, or third).

To conjugate regular verbs in the present tense in Spanish, drop the infinitive ending and add the endings shown in bold in the following table:

## Regular Verb Conjugations

Subject	-ar Verbs <i>hablar</i> (“to speak”)	-er Verbs <i>comer</i> (“to eat”)	-ir Verbs <i>vivir</i> (“to live”)
<i>yo</i>	<i>hablo</i>	<i>como</i>	<i>vivo</i>
<i>tú</i>	<i>hablas</i>	<i>comes</i>	<i>vives</i>
<i>él, ella, Ud.</i>	<i>habla</i>	<i>come</i>	<i>vive</i>
<i>nosotros</i>	<i>hablamos</i>	<i>comemos</i>	<i>vivimos</i>
<i>vosotros</i>	<i>habláis</i>	<i>coméis</i>	<i>vivís</i>
<i>ellos, ellas, Uds.</i>	<i>hablan</i>	<i>comen</i>	<i>viven</i>

### Examples:

*Ellos hablan rápidamente.*  
*No como frutas.*  
*¿Vives en Acapulco.*

They speak quickly.  
 I don't eat fruit.  
 Do you live in Acapulco?

## THE PRESENT TENSE OF REFLEXIVE VERBS

An *-se* attached to the infinitive of a verb indicates that the verb is reflexive—in other words, the subject is performing the action upon itself (for example, *lavarse* [“to wash oneself”]). The difference between a regular verb and a regular reflexive verb is that a reflexive verb is conjugated in all tenses with a reflexive pronoun that serves as its direct or indirect object. Each subject pronoun has its own distinct reflexive pronoun, as shown in the following table:

### Conjugating Reflexive Verbs

Reflexive Infinitive	Meaning	Subject	Reflexive Pronoun	Conjugated Verb
<i>bañarse</i>	to bathe oneself	<i>yo</i>	<i>me</i>	<i>baño</i>
<i>lavarse</i>	to wash oneself	<i>tú</i>	<i>te</i>	<i>lavas</i>
<i>levantarse</i>	to get up	<i>él (ella, Ud.)</i>	<i>se</i>	<i>levanta</i>
<i>llamarse</i>	to be named	<i>nosotros</i>	<i>nos</i>	<i>llamamos</i>
<i>maquillarse</i>	to apply makeup	<i>vosotros</i>	<i>os</i>	<i>maquilláis</i>
<i>peinarse</i>	to comb one's hair	<i>ellos (ellas, Uds.)</i>	<i>se</i>	<i>peinan</i>

**Examples:***Ella se baña por la mañana.*

She bathes in the morning.

*Mis hijos se levantan tarde.*

My children get up late.

In a construction that uses a gerund or an infinitive, the reflexive pronoun may precede the verb that is conjugated, or it may follow and be attached to the infinitive or the gerund. When the reflexive pronoun is attached to the gerund, you add an accent to the stressed vowel by counting back three vowels from the end of the word:

*Me voy a preparar.* or *Voy a prepararme.* I'm going to prepare myself.*Se está duchando.* or *Está duchándose.* I'm writing to them.

A reflexive pronoun is placed after an affirmative command and attached to it. With a negative command, however, the object pronoun precedes the verb. With an affirmative command, when the pronoun is attached to the imperative form, you add an accent to the stressed vowel by counting back three vowels from the end of the word:

*Cepílese los dientes.*

Brush your teeth.

*No se enoje.*

Don't get angry.

**Verbs That Go Either Way**

Some verbs may be reflexive or non-reflexive, depending on whom the subject is acting upon:

*Nosotros nos despertamos.*

We wake (ourselves) up. (reflexive)

*Nosotros despertamos a los niños.*

We wake the children. (non-reflexive)

*Ella se mira en el espejo.*

She looks at herself in the mirror. (reflexive)

*Ella mira la televisión.*

She looks at the television. (non-reflexive)

**THE PRESENT TENSE OF SPELLING-CHANGE VERBS**

A spelling change is necessary in the *yo* form of the present tense of some Spanish regular verbs in order to preserve the original sound of the verb after the *-o* ending has been added. The required changes are listed in the following table:

## Verbs with Spelling Changes in the Present Tense

Infinitive Ending	Change	Verb	Present Tense
vowel + <i>cer</i>	<i>c</i> → <i>zc</i>	<i>conocer</i> (“to know”)	<i>yo conozco</i>
vowel + <i>cir</i>	<i>c</i> → <i>zc</i>	<i>conducir</i> (“to drive”)	<i>yo conduzco</i>
consonant + <i>cer</i>	<i>c</i> → <i>z</i>	<i>ejercer</i> (“to exercise”)	<i>yo ejerzo</i>
consonant + <i>cir</i>	<i>c</i> → <i>z</i>	<i>esparcir</i> (“to spread out”)	<i>yo esparzo</i>
<i>-ger</i>	<i>g</i> → <i>j</i>	<i>escoger</i> (“to choose”)	<i>yo escojo</i>
<i>-gir</i>	<i>g</i> → <i>j</i>	<i>dirigir</i> (“to direct”)	<i>yo dirijo</i>
<i>-guir</i>	<i>gu</i> → <i>g</i>	<i>distinguir</i> (“to distinguish”)	<i>yo distingo</i>

### Examples:

*Yo no conozco a su hermana.*

I don't know your sister.

*Siempre escojo bien a mis amigos.*

I always choose my friends well.

Other high-frequency verbs with spelling changes include those listed in the following tables:

### Vowel + *cer/cir*

Spanish	English
<i>aparecer</i>	to appear
<i>crecer</i>	to grow
<i>establecer</i>	to establish
<i>merecer</i>	to deserve, to merit
<i>nacer</i>	to be born
<i>obedecer</i>	to obey
<i>obscurer</i>	to darken
<i>ofrecer</i>	to offer
<i>parecer</i>	to seem
<i>producir</i>	to produce
<i>reconocer</i>	to recognize
<i>reducir</i>	to reduce
<i>reproducir</i>	to reproduce
<i>traducir</i>	to translate

**Examples:**

*Yo ofrezco un regalo a mi amiga.  
Yo no lo reconozco.*

I give a gift to my friend.  
I don't recognize him.

**Consonant + *cer/cir***

Spanish	English
<i>convencer</i>	to convince
<i>fruncir</i>	to frown
<i>vencer</i>	to conquer
<i>zurcir</i>	to mend

**Examples:**

*Siempre venzo a mis enemigos.  
Lo convenzo que tengo razón.*

I always conquer my enemies.  
I convince him that I am right.

**-ger Verbs**

Spanish	English
<i>coger</i>	to seize
<i>proteger</i>	to protect
<i>recoger</i>	to gather, to pick up

**Examples:**

*Yo recojo el libro del suelo.  
Yo la protejo de sus enemigos.*

I pick up the book from the floor.  
I protect her from her enemies.

**-gir Verbs**

Spanish	English
<i>afligir</i>	to afflict
<i>exigir</i>	to demand
<i>infligir</i>	to inflict
<i>surgir</i>	to appear

**Examples:**

*Yo no exijo nada de ti.*  
*Yo me aflijo.*

I don't demand anything of you.  
 I get upset.

An example of a *-guir* verb is *extinguir* ("to extinguish"):

*Yo extingo el fuego.*

I put out the fire.

## THE PRESENT TENSE OF STEM-CHANGING VERBS

Some verbs require an internal change in the stem vowel of the *yo*, *tú*, *él* (*ella*, *Ud.*), and *ellos* (*ellas*, *Uds.*) forms of the present tense. The *nosotros* and *vosotros* forms are conjugated without the change, as shown in the following table:

### Stem Changes

Ending	Change	Verb	Present
-ar	<i>e</i> → <i>ie</i>	<i>cerrar</i> ("to close")	<i>yo cierro</i> <i>nosotros cerramos</i>
-ar	<i>o</i> → <i>ue</i>	<i>recordar</i> ("to remember")	<i>yo recuerdo</i> <i>nosotros recordamos</i>
-ar	<i>u</i> → <i>ue</i>	<i>jugar</i> ("to play")	<i>yo juego</i> <i>nosotros jugamos</i>
-er	<i>e</i> → <i>ie</i>	<i>querer</i> ("to wish," "to want")	<i>yo quiero</i> <i>nosotros queremos</i>
-er	<i>o</i> → <i>ue</i>	<i>poder</i> ("to be able")	<i>yo puedo</i> <i>nosotros podemos</i>
-ir	<i>e</i> → <i>i</i>	<i>pedir</i> ("to ask")	<i>yo pido</i> <i>nosotros pedimos</i>
-ir	<i>e</i> → <i>ie</i>	<i>mentir</i> ("to lie")	<i>yo miento</i> <i>nosotros mentimos</i>
-ir	<i>o</i> → <i>ue</i>	<i>dormir</i> (to sleep)	<i>yo duermo</i> <i>nosotros dormimos</i>
some -iar	<i>i</i> → <i>í</i>	<i>enviar</i> ("to send")	<i>yo envío</i> <i>nosotros enviamos</i>
some -uar	<i>u</i> → <i>ú</i>	<i>continuar</i> ("to continue")	<i>yo continúo</i> <i>nosotros continuamos</i>
-uir (not -guir)	add <i>y</i> after <i>u</i>	<i>construir</i> ("to construct")	<i>yo construyo</i> <i>nosotros construimos</i>

**Examples:**

*Nosotros cerramos las puertas, y ellos cierran las ventanas.*

We shut the doors, and they shut the windows.

*Ella duerme hasta las ocho, y nosotros dormimos hasta las nueve.*

She sleeps until eight o'clock, and we sleep until nine.

Other high-frequency verbs that require internal spelling changes include those listed in the following tables:

**-ar: e→ie Verbs**

Spanish	English
<i>atravesar</i>	to go through
<i>comenzar</i>	to begin
<i>despertar</i>	to wake up
<i>empezar</i>	to begin
<i>encerrar</i>	to lock up, to enclose
<i>enterrar</i>	to bury
<i>helar</i>	to freeze
<i>negar</i>	to deny
<i>nevar</i>	to snow
<i>pensar</i>	to think
<i>plegar</i>	to fold
<i>quebrar</i>	to break, to smash
<i>recomendar</i>	to recommend
<i>sentar</i>	to seat
<i>sosegar</i>	to calm
<i>temblar</i>	to tremble
<i>tentar</i>	to touch, to try

**Examples:**

*Yo me despierto temprano.*

I wake up early.

*Ella piensa que él es guapo.*

She thinks he's handsome.

*Ellos recomiendan ese restaurante.*

They recommend that restaurant.



**-ar: o→ue Verbs**

Spanish	English
<i>acordar</i>	to agree
<i>acostar</i>	to put to bed
<i>almorzar</i>	to eat lunch
<i>aprobar</i>	to approve
<i>colgar</i>	to hang up
<i>contar</i>	to tell
<i>costar</i>	to cost
<i>encontrar</i>	to meet
<i>forzar</i>	to force
<i>mostrar</i>	to show
<i>probar</i>	to try (on)
<i>sonar</i>	to ring
<i>soñar</i>	to dream
<i>tronar</i>	to thunder

**Examples:**

*Ellos se acuestan tarde.*

They go (put themselves) to bed late.

*Esos zapatos cuestan mucho.*

Those shoes cost a lot.

*Truena.*

It's thundering.

An example of a *-gar* verb that is like *jugar* is *enjugar* (“to dry” or “to wipe away”):

*Yo me enjuego las lágrimas.*

I dry my tears. *or* I wipe away my tears.

**-er: e→ie Verbs**

Spanish	English
<i>defender</i>	to defend
<i>descender</i>	to descend
<i>encender</i>	to incite, to light
<i>entender</i>	to understand
<i>perder</i>	to lose

**Examples:**

*¿Entiendes el problema?  
¿Por qué pierde la paciencia?*

Do you understand the problem?  
Why is he losing patience?

**-er: o → ue Verbs**

Spanish	English
<i>doler</i>	to hurt
<i>envolver</i>	to wrap up
<i>llover</i>	to rain
<i>morder</i>	to bite
<i>mover</i>	to move
<i>resolver</i>	to resolve
<i>revolver</i>	to revolve
<i>soler</i>	to usually do something
<i>volver</i>	to return

**Examples:**

*Me duelen los pies.  
Ella se muerde las uñas.  
Suele pasar por mi casa.*

My feet hurt.  
She bites her nails.  
He usually comes by my house.

**-ir: e → ie Verbs**

Spanish	English
<i>advertir</i>	to warn
<i>consentir</i>	to allow
<i>convertir</i>	to convert
<i>divertir</i>	to amuse
<i>herir</i>	to wound
<i>preferir</i>	to prefer
<i>referir</i>	to refer
<i>sentir</i>	to feel, to regret
<i>sugerir</i>	to suggest

**Examples:**

*Ella prefiere quedarse en casa.*  
*Los niños se divierten mucho.*  
*Lo siento.*

She prefers to stay home.  
 The children have a good time.  
 I'm sorry.

An example of an *-ir* verb that has the change *o*→*ue* is *morir* (“to die”):

*El soldado no muere.*

The soldier isn't dying.

***-ir: e*→*i* Verbs**

Spanish	English
<i>competir</i>	to compete
<i>despedir</i>	to say goodbye to
<i>expedir</i>	to send
<i>gemir</i>	to moan
<i>medir</i>	to measure
<i>repetir</i>	to repeat
<i>servir</i>	to serve
<i>vestir</i>	to clothe, to dress

**Examples:**

*Ellos se visten elegantemente.*  
*¿Qué mides?*  
*El profesor repite las reglas.*

They dress elegantly.  
 What are you measuring?  
 The teacher repeats the rules.

***-iar* Verbs Like *Enviar***

Spanish	English
<i>confiar</i>	to trust
<i>criar</i>	to rear, to raise
<i>desviar</i>	to divert
<i>espiar</i>	to spy
<i>esquiar</i>	to ski

Spanish	English
<i>fiar</i>	to trust
<i>fotografiar</i>	to photograph
<i>guiar</i>	to guide
<i>rociar</i>	to spray, to sprinkle
<i>vaciar</i>	to empty
<i>variar</i>	to vary

**Examples:**

*Yo no esquío bien.*

*Él no se fíe de ese hombre.*

*Ellos fotografían la ciudad.*

I don't ski well.

He doesn't trust that man.

They photograph the city.

**-uar Verbs Like *Continuar***

Spanish	English
<i>acentuar</i>	to accentuate
<i>actuar</i>	to act
<i>efectuar</i>	to carry out
<i>evaluar</i>	to evaluate
<i>habituar</i>	to accustom someone to
<i>perpetuar</i>	to perpetuate
<i>situar</i>	to situate
<i>valuar</i>	to value

**Examples:**

*Ellos no actúan.*

*Yo evaluó los datos.*

*Ella se habitúa a la vida campestre.*

They don't act.

I evaluate the data.

She becomes accustomed to country life.

**-uir Verbs Like *Construir***

Spanish	English
<i>concluir</i>	to conclude
<i>contribuir</i>	to contribute
<i>destruir</i>	to destroy
<i>disminuir</i>	to diminish
<i>distribuir</i>	to distribute
<i>excluir</i>	to exclude
<i>huir</i>	to flee
<i>incluir</i>	to include
<i>influir</i>	to influence
<i>instituir</i>	to institute
<i>instruir</i>	to instruct
<i>obstruir</i>	to obstruct
<i>sustituir</i>	to substitute

**Examples:**

*¿Qué distribuyen?*

*Él huye a los Estados Unidos.*

*Ud. no influye en mi decisión.*

What are they distributing?

He is fleeing to the United States.

You don't influence my decision.

**Verbs with Spelling and Stem Changes**

The following verbs have both spelling and stem changes in their present tense forms and must be conjugated accordingly:

Verb	English	Conjugation
<i>colegir</i>	to collect	<b>colijo, coliges, colige, colegimos, colegís, coligen</b>
<i>corregir</i>	to correct	<b>corrijo, corriges, corrige, corregimos, corregís, corrigen</b>
<i>elegir</i>	to elect	<b>elijo, eliges, elige, elegimos, elegís, eligen</b>
<i>conseguir</i>	to get	<b>consigo, consigues, consigues, conseguimos, conseguís, consiguen</b>
<i>seguir</i>	to follow	<b>sigo, sigues, sigue, seguimos, seguís, siguen</b>

## THE PRESENT TENSE OF IRREGULAR VERBS

Irregular verbs follow no specific rules of conjugation. In Spanish, some verbs are irregular only in the first person singular (*yo*) form of the present tense:

Verb	English	<i>yo</i> Form of Present Tense
<i>caber</i>	to fit	<b><i>quepo</i></b>
<i>caer</i>	to fall	<b><i>caigo</i></b>
<i>dar</i>	to give	<b><i>doy</i></b>
<i>hacer</i>	to make, to do	<b><i>hago</i></b>
<i>poner</i>	to put	<b><i>pongo</i></b>
<i>saber</i>	to know a fact, to know how to	<b><i>sé</i></b>
<i>salir</i>	to go out	<b><i>salgo</i></b>
<i>traer</i>	to bring	<b><i>traigo</i></b>
<i>valer</i>	to be worth	<b><i>valgo</i></b>
<i>ver</i>	to see	<b><i>veo</i></b>

### Examples:

*Doy un paseo por el parque.*  
*No veo nada.*

I go for a walk in the park.  
I don't see anything.

Some verbs are irregular in the *yo*, *tú*, *él* (*ella*, *Ud.*), and *ellos* (*ellas*, *Uds.*) forms but not in the *nosotros* or *vosotros* forms:

Verb	English	Conjugation
<i>decir</i>	to tell	<b><i>digo, dices, dice, decimos, decís, dicen</i></b>
<i>estar</i>	to be	<b><i>estoy, estás, está, estamos, estáis, están</i></b>
<i>oler</i>	to smell	<b><i>huelo, hueles, huele, olemos, oléis, huelen</i></b>
<i>tener</i>	to have	<b><i>tengo, tienes, tiene, tenemos, tenéis, tienen</i></b>
<i>venir</i>	to come	<b><i>vengo, vienes, viene, venimos, venís, vienen</i></b>

### Examples:

*Siempre digo la verdad.*  
*¿A qué hora vienes?*

I always tell the truth.  
At what time are you coming?

Some verbs are irregular in most or all forms:

Verb	English	Conjugation
<i>haber</i> (auxiliary)	to have	<i>he, has, ha, hemos habéis, han</i>
<i>ir</i>	to go	<i>voy, vas, va, vamos, vais, van</i>
<i>oír</i>	to hear	<i>oigo, oyes, oye, oímos, oís, oyen</i>
<i>reír</i>	to laugh	<i>río, ríes, ríe, reímos, reís, rien</i>
<i>ser</i>	to be	<i>soy, eres, es, somos sois, son</i>

### Examples:

*Vamos a España en el verano.*  
*Yo soy americana.*

We are going to Spain in the summer.  
I am American.

## USING THE PRESENT TENSE

The present tense is used in the following instances:

- To express an action happening now:

<i>Nosotros estudiamos el español.</i>	We are studying Spanish.
<i>No trabajo los sábados.</i>	I don't work on Saturdays.
<i>Ellos van al centro.</i>	They go (are going) to the city.

- To express a habit or custom:

<i>Siempre haces lo necesario.</i>	You always do what is necessary.
<i>Bailan mucho.</i>	They dance a lot.

- To replace the future when asking for instructions:

<i>¿Lo repito más despacio?</i>	Shall I repeat it more slowly?
<i>¿Lo hacemos otra vez?</i>	Shall we do it again?

- To replace the future when expressing an action that will take place in the near future:

<i>Te telefono esta noche.</i>	I'll call you tonight.
<i>Nos vemos pronto.</i>	We'll see each other soon.

- To indicate an action that started in the past and is continuing in the present by using the verb *hacer*:

<i>¿Cuántos años hace que estudias el español? Hace un año.</i>	How long have you been studying Spanish? It's been a year.
---	--

- To express “there is,” “there are,” “is there?” and “are there?” with the verb *haber*:

*¿Qué hay en su bolsillo?*  
*No hay nada.*

What’s in your pocket?  
There’s nothing.

- To show obligation with *haber + de*:

*Hemos de lavar el coche.*

We have to wash the car.

- To express an impersonal obligation with *haber + que*:

*Hay que estudiar para salir bien.*

You have to study to succeed. *or*  
One must study to succeed.

- To show what the subject is accustomed to doing by using the verb *soler*:

*Yo suelo cenar a las siete.*

I’m accustomed to eating dinner at seven.

## DISTINCTIONS BETWEEN VERBS

In English one single verb may have many connotations, whereas Spanish may require using different verbs to get the different meanings. The following groups of Spanish verbs have the same English meanings but different connotations:

- **conocer and saber:** These verbs both mean “to know.” *Conocer* is used when the words “to be acquainted with” can be substituted for “to know.” Use *conocer* to express being acquainted with a person, a place, a thing, or an idea:

*Yo conozco al señor Rueda.*  
*¿Conoces la España?*

I know Mr. Rueda.  
Do you know (Are you acquainted with) Spain?

*Conocemos ese libro.*  
*Ella conoce el poema.*

We know that book.  
She knows (is acquainted with) the poem.

*Saber* is used when the subject knows how to do something or knows a fact:

*Yo no sé su dirección.*  
*Él sabe bien cocinar.*  
*Ella sabe el poema.*

I don’t know your address.  
He knows how to cook well.  
He knows the poem (by heart).

- **deber and tener que:** *Deber* is used to express a moral obligation, whereas *tener que* is used to express what has to be done:

*Los alumnos deben estudiar.*  
*Yo tengo que ir a la farmacia.*

The students must study.  
I have to go to the drugstore.

- **dejar and salir:** Both verbs mean “to leave,” but *dejar* refers to leaving an item behind, and *salir* refers to leaving a place:

*Dejo mis gafas en la biblioteca.*  
*Yo salgo con mis amigos.*

I leave my glasses in the library.  
I go out with my friends.



- **estar and ser:** *Estar*, which means “to be,” is used to express

- Health:

*¿Cómo estás? Estoy bien.*                      How are you? I’m fine.

- Location, situation, or position:

*Dónde está el museo?*                      *Where’s the museum?*

- Temporary states or conditions:

*Estamos cansados.*                      *We’re tired.*

- The progressive tense:

*Ella está leyendo.*                      *She is reading.*

*Ser*, which also means “to be,” is used to express

- An inherent quality or characteristic:

*Él es viejo.*                      *He is old.*

- The identity of the subject:

*Yo soy médico.*                      *I’m a doctor.*

- The time, date, or place of an event:

*Es la una.*                      It’s one o’clock.

*Es martes.*                      It’s Tuesday.

*¿Dónde es el baile?*                      Where is the dance?

- An impersonal concept:

*No es difícil hablar español.*                      It isn’t difficult to speak Spanish.

- The passive:

*Las notas fueron copiadas  
por los alumnos.*                      The notes were copied by  
the students.

- **gastar and pasar:** These verbs both mean “to spend.” *Gastar* refers to spending money, whereas *pasar* refers to spending time:

*Ella no gasta mucho dinero.*                      She doesn’t spend a lot of money.

*Yo paso seis horas limpiando  
la casa.*                      I spend six hours cleaning the house.

- **jugar and tocar:** These verbs both mean “to play.” *Jugar + a* expresses that the subject is playing a sport or a game, whereas *tocar* expresses that the subject is playing a musical instrument:

*Jugamos a los naipes.*                      We’re playing cards.

*¿Juegas al golf?*                      Do you play golf?

*Toco la guitarra.*                      I play the guitar.

- ***llevar* and *tomar***: These verbs both mean “to take.” *Llevar* expresses the idea of taking a person somewhere, of leading someone to a place, or of carrying or transporting an item, whereas *tomar* expresses picking something up in your hands and carrying it:

<i>Llevo mi paraguas al restaurante.</i>	I’m taking my umbrella to the restaurant.
<i>Ella lleva a su hermano al cine.</i>	She takes her brother to the movies.
<i>Yo tomo su bolígrafo.</i>	I’m taking your pen.

- ***pedir* and *preguntar***: These verbs both mean “to ask.” *Pedir* expresses the sense of requesting or asking *for* something, whereas *preguntar* expresses asking a question or inquiring about someone or something:

<i>Él me pide mis consejos.</i>	He asks me for my advice.
<i>Ellos me preguntan si puedo ayudarlos.</i>	They ask me if I can help them.

- ***poder* and *saber***: These verbs both mean “can.” *Poder* shows that the subject has the ability to perform an action, whereas *saber* shows that the subject actually knows how to perform the action:

<i>Nosotros podemos nadar.</i>	We can (are able to, allowed to) swim.
<i>Nosotros sabemos nadar.</i>	We can (know how to) swim.

- ***volver* and *devolver***: These verbs both mean “to return.” *Volver* expresses returning in a physical sense or coming back, whereas *devolver* indicates returning an item to its rightful owner:

<i>Yo vuelvo a eso de las tres.</i>	I’m coming back at about three o’clock.
<i>Le devuelvo su coche.</i>	I’m returning his car to him.

## The Preterit

---

The *preterit* is a tense that expresses an action, an event, or a state of mind that occurred and was completed at a specific time in the past.

### THE PRETERIT OF REGULAR VERBS

The preterit of regular verbs is formed by dropping the *-ar*, *-er*, or *-ir* infinitive endings and adding the preterit endings shown in the following table:

Subject	<b>-ar Verbs</b> <i>trabajar</i> (“to work”)	<b>-er Verbs</b> <i>beber</i> (“to drink”)	<b>-ir Verbs</b> <i>decidir</i> (“to decide”)
<i>yo</i>	<i>trabajé</i>	<i>bebí</i>	<i>decidí</i>
<i>tú</i>	<i>trabajaste</i>	<i>bebiste</i>	<i>decidiste</i>
<i>él (ella, Ud.)</i>	<i>trabajó</i>	<i>bebió</i>	<i>decidió</i>
<i>nosotros</i>	<i>trabajamos</i>	<i>bebimos</i>	<i>decidimos</i>
<i>vosotros</i>	<i>trabajasteis</i>	<i>bebisteis</i>	<i>decidisteis</i>
<i>ellos (ellas, Uds.)</i>	<i>trabajaron</i>	<i>bebieron</i>	<i>decidieron</i>

**Examples:***Yo trabajé anoche.*

I worked last night.

*Nosotros bebimos té.*

We drank tea.

*Ellos decidieron ir a Puerto Rico.*

They decided to go to Puerto Rico.

**THE PRETERIT OF SPELLING-CHANGE VERBS**

Some verbs that are regular in the present tense require spelling changes in the preterit. Some verbs that have irregularities in the present also require spelling changes in the preterit.

**-CAR, -GAR, AND -ZAR VERBS**

Verbs that end in *-car*, *-gar*, and *-zar* have spelling changes only in the *yo* form of the preterit, as follows:

**Spelling Changes in the Preterit**

Ending	Change	Verb	Preterit
<i>-car</i>	<i>c→qu</i>	<i>buscar</i> (“to look for”)	<i>yo busqué</i>
<i>-gar</i>	<i>g→gu</i>	<i>llegar</i> (“to arrive”)	<i>yo llegué</i>
<i>-zar</i>	<i>z→c</i>	<i>empezar</i> (“to begin”)	<i>yo empecé</i>

**Examples:***Yo busqué la Avenida Sexta.*

I looked for Sixth Avenue.

*Yo no llegué tarde.*

I didn't arrive late.

*Yo empecé mi trabajo.*

I began my work.

Other high-frequency verbs with spelling changes in the preterit include those listed in the following tables:

### **-car Verbs**

<b>Verb</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>aplicar</i>	to apply
<i>buscar</i>	to look for
<i>clarificar</i>	to clarify
<i>complicar</i>	to complicate
<i>comunicar</i>	to communicate
<i>confiscar</i>	to confiscate
<i>criticar</i>	to criticize
<i>educar</i>	to educate
<i>equivocarse</i>	to be mistaken
<i>explicar</i>	to explain
<i>identificar</i>	to identify
<i>indicar</i>	to indicate
<i>marcar</i>	to designate, to label, to dial
<i>notificar</i>	to notify
<i>platicar</i>	to chat
<i>practicar</i>	to practice
<i>sacar</i>	to take out
<i>significar</i>	to mean
<i>tocar</i>	to touch, to play (music)
<i>verificar</i>	to verify

### **Examples:**

*Yo busqué a Juan.*

*Yo saqué mi cartera.*

*Yo toqué la guitarra.*

I looked for Juan.

I took out my wallet.

I played the guitar.

**-gar Verbs**

<b>Verb</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>apagar</i>	to put out, to turn off
<i>entregar</i>	to deliver
<i>interrogar</i>	to interrogate
<i>jugar</i>	to play (a sport or game)
<i>llegar</i>	to arrive
<i>pagar</i>	to pay
<i>rogar</i>	to ask, to beg

**Examples:**

*Yo apagué la luz.*

*Yo jugué en el parque.*

*Yo pagué la cuenta.*

I turned off the light.

I played in the park.

I paid the bill.

**-zar Verbs**

<b>Verb</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>almorzar</i>	to eat lunch
<i>aterrizar</i>	to land
<i>comenzar</i>	to begin
<i>cruzar</i>	to cross
<i>empezar</i>	to begin
<i>gozar</i>	to enjoy
<i>organizar</i>	to organize
<i>utilizar</i>	to use

**Examples:**

*Yo almorcé en casa.*

*Yo comencé la historia.*

*Yo organicé una fiesta.*

I ate lunch at home.

I began the story.

I organized a party.

## Verbs That Change *i* to *y*

With the exception of the verb *traer* (“to bring”) and all verbs that end in *-guir*, which are regular in the preterit, verbs whose stem ends in a vowel when the infinitive *-er* or *-ir* ending is dropped change *i* to *y* in the third person singular (*él, ella, Ud.*) and third person plural (*ellos, ellas, Uds.*) forms of the preterit. For all verbs except those ending in *-uir*, the *tú, nosotros, and vosotros* forms replace *i* with *í* (the *yo* form ends in *í*), as shown in the following table:

### *i*→*y* Verbs

Subject	<i>leer</i> (“to read”)	<i>oír</i> (“to hear”)	<i>construir</i> (“to construct”)
<i>yo</i>	<i>leí</i>	<i>oí</i>	<i>concluí</i>
<i>tú</i>	<i>leíste</i>	<i>oíste</i>	<i>concluiste</i>
<i>él, ella, Ud.</i>	<i>leyó</i>	<i>oyó</i>	<i>concluyó</i>
<i>nosotros</i>	<i>leímos</i>	<i>oímos</i>	<i>concluimos</i>
<i>vosotros</i>	<i>leísteis</i>	<i>oísteis</i>	<i>concluisteis</i>
<i>ellos, ellas, Uds.</i>	<i>leyeron</i>	<i>oyeron</i>	<i>concluyeron</i>

### Examples:

*Todavía no leyó esa revista.*

*Yo no te oí.*

*¿Qué concluyeron?*

She still hasn't read that magazine.

I didn't hear you.

What did they conclude?

Another verb like *leer* is *creer* (“to believe”):

*Yo no lo creí.*

I didn't believe it.

Other *-uir* verbs are listed in *The Present Tense of Stem-Changing Verbs*, earlier in this part.

## THE PRETERIT OF STEM-CHANGING VERBS

Stem-changing *-ir* verbs in the present also have a stem change in the preterit. In the third person singular form (*él, ella, Ud.*) and the third person plural form (*ellos, ellas, Uds.*), *e* changes to *i* or *o* changes to *u*, as shown in the following table:

## Stem-Changing *-ir* Verbs

	<i>e</i> → <i>ie</i> in the Present <i>e</i> → <i>i</i> in the Preterit	<i>e</i> → <i>i</i> in the Present <i>e</i> → <i>i</i> in the Preterit	<i>o</i> → <i>ue</i> in the Present <i>o</i> → <i>u</i> in the Preterit
Subject	<i>mentir</i> (“to lie”)	<i>pedir</i> (“to ask”)	<i>dormir</i> (“to sleep”)
<i>yo</i>	<i>mentí</i>	<i>pedí</i>	<i>dormí</i>
<i>tú</i>	<i>mentiste</i>	<i>pediste</i>	<i>dormiste</i>
<i>él (ella, Ud.)</i>	<i>mintió</i>	<i>pidió</i>	<i>durmió</i>
<i>nosotros</i>	<i>mentimos</i>	<i>pedimos</i>	<i>dormimos</i>
<i>vosotros</i>	<i>mentisteis</i>	<i>pedisteis</i>	<i>dormisteis</i>
<i>ellos (ellas, Uds.)</i>	<i>mintieron</i>	<i>pidieron</i>	<i>durmieron</i>

### Examples:

*Ella mintió.*

*Ellos pidieron la cuenta.*

*¿Durmió Ud. al aire libre?*

She lied.

They asked for the bill.

Did you sleep outdoors?

## **Reír and Sonreír**

The verb *reír* (“to laugh”) and its compound *sonreír* (“to smile”) change *e* to *i* in the third person singular and plural forms, and they also add an accent to the *tú*, *nosotros*, and *vosotros* forms:

### Verb

*reír*

*sonreír*

### Conjugation

*reí, reíste, rió, reímos, reísteis, rieron*

*sonreí, sonreíste, sonrió, sonreímos, sonreísteis, sonrieron*

### Examples:

*Cuando conté la historia, ella rió.*

*Nosotros sonreímos.*

When I told the story, she laughed.

We smiled.

## THE PRETERIT OF IRREGULAR VERBS

These are the endings for most irregular verbs in the preterit:

Subject	Ending
<i>yo</i>	<i>-e</i>
<i>tú</i>	<i>-iste</i>
<i>él, ella, Ud.</i>	<i>-ió</i>
<i>nosotros</i>	<i>-imos</i>
<i>vosotros</i>	<i>-isteis</i>
<i>ellos, ellas, Uds.</i>	<i>-ieron</i>

Irregular verbs fall into the following categories:

- Those that have *i* in the preterit stem:

Verb	English	Conjugation
<i>decir</i>	to say	<i>dije, dijiste, dijo, dijimos, dijisteis, dijeron</i>
<i>venir</i>	to come	<i>vine, viniste, vino, vinimos, vinisteis, vinieron</i>
<i>querer</i>	to wish, to want	<i>quise, quisiste, quiso, quisimos, quisisteis, quisieron</i>
<i>hacer</i>	to make, to do	<i>hice, hiciste, hizo, hicimos, hicisteis, hicieron</i>
<i>satisfacer</i>	to satisfy	<i>satisfice, satisficiste, satisfizo, satisficimos, satisficisteis, satisficieron</i>

### Examples:

*Ella no dijo nada.*  
*¿Qué hizo Ud.?*

She didn't say anything.  
What did you do?

- Those that have *u* in the preterit stem:

Verb	English	Conjugation
<i>caber</i>	to fit	<i>cupe, cupiste, cupo, cupimos cupisteis, cupieron</i>
<i>haber</i> (auxiliary)	to have	<i>hube, hubiste, hubo, hubimos, hubisteis, hubieron</i>
<i>saber</i>	to know	<i>supe, supiste, supo, supimos, supisteis, supieron</i>

### Examples:

*Nosotros cupimos en el coche.*  
*Él no supo la respuesta.*

We fit in the car.  
He didn't know the answer.



- Those that have *uv* in the preterit stem:

Verb	English	Conjugation
<i>andar</i>	to walk	<i>anduve, anduviste, anduvo, anduvimos, anduvisteis, anduvieron</i>
<i>estar</i>	to be	<i>estuve, estuviste, estuvo, estuvimos, estuvisteis, estuvieron</i>

**Examples:**

*Ellos anduvieron por el campo.* They walked in the country.  
*Tú no estuviste en tu oficina.* You weren't in your office.

- Those that have *j* in the preterit stem:

Verb	English	Conjugation
<i>traer</i>	to bring	<i>traje, trajiste, traje, trajimos, trajisteis, trajeron</i>
<i>decir</i>	to say, to tell	<i>dije, dijiste, dijo, dijimos, dijisteis, dijeron</i>
<i>conducir</i>	to drive	<i>conduje, condujiste, condujo, condujimos, condujisteis, condujeron</i>

**Examples:**

*Trajeron el correo.* They brought the mail.  
*¿Qué dijo Ud.?* What did you say?

All verbs that end in *-ducir* have the same change as *conducir*.

- dar* and *ver*, which are irregular and have identical preterit endings:

Verb	English	Conjugation
<i>dar</i>	to give	<i>di, diste, dio, dimos, disteis, dieron</i>
<i>ver</i>	to see	<i>vi, viste, vio, vimos, visteis, vieron</i>

**Examples:**

*Yo le di un regalo.* I gave him a gift.  
*Ellos no me vieron.* They didn't see me.

- ser* and *ir*, which have identical preterit forms:

Verb	English	Conjugation
<i>ser</i>	to be	<i>fui, fuiste, fue, fuimos, fuisteis, fueron</i>
<i>ir</i>	to go	<i>fui, fuiste, fue, fuimos, fuisteis, fueron</i>

**Examples:**

*No fue posible.* It wasn't possible.  
*¿A qué hora fue al supermercado?* At what time did you go to the supermarket?

## USING THE PRETERIT

The preterit is used

- To express an action or event that began at a specific time in the past:  
*La clase empezó a las ocho de la mañana.*                      The class began at eight o'clock a.m.
- To express an action or event that was completed at a specific time in the past:  
*Ayer jugué al tenis.*                      Yesterday I played tennis.
- To express any other completed past action:  
*Hice mi trabajo.*                      I did my work.
- To express a series of events that were completed within a definite time frame in the past:  
*Fui al centro, compré un vestido, y regresé a casa.*                      I went to the city, I bought a dress, and I returned home.
- To express that an action or event occurred a specific number of times:  
*Perdí mi paraguas tres veces.*                      I lost my umbrella three times.

## The Imperfect

---

The *imperfect* is a descriptive past tense that is used to describe scenes, settings, situations, people, or states in the past. The imperfect has no English equivalent. It expresses a continuing state or action in the past or a habitual action that was taking place or that used to happen repeatedly over an indefinite period of time.

### THE IMPERFECT OF REGULAR VERBS

To form the imperfect of regular verbs, drop the *-ar*, *-er*, or *-ir* infinitive ending and add the imperfect endings shown in the following table:

## The Imperfect of Regular Verbs

Subject	<b>-ar Verbs</b> <i>bailar</i> (“to dance”)	<b>-er Verbs</b> <i>correr</i> (“to run”)	<b>-ir Verbs</b> <i>permitir</i> (“to permit”)
<i>yo</i>	<i>bailaba</i>	<i>corría</i>	<i>permitía</i>
<i>tú</i>	<i>bailabas</i>	<i>corrías</i>	<i>permitías</i>
<i>él, ella, Ud.</i>	<i>bailaba</i>	<i>corría</i>	<i>permitía</i>
<i>nosotros</i>	<i>bailábamos</i>	<i>corríamos</i>	<i>permitíamos</i>
<i>vosotros</i>	<i>bailabais</i>	<i>corríais</i>	<i>permitíais</i>
<i>ellos, ellas, Uds.</i>	<i>bailaban</i>	<i>corrían</i>	<i>permitían</i>

### Examples:

<i>Nosotros bailábamos los domingos.</i>	We used to dance on Sundays.
<i>Ese niño corría mucho.</i>	That child used to run a lot.
<i>Su pregunta no permitía una respuesta.</i>	His question didn't allow an answer.

## THE IMPERFECT OF IRREGULAR VERBS

Only three verbs have irregular forms in the imperfect:

Verb	English	Conjugation
<i>ir</i>	to go	<i>iba, ibas, iba, íbamos, ibais, iban</i>
<i>ser</i>	to be	<i>era, eras, era, éramos, erais, eran</i>
<i>ver</i>	to see	<i>veía, veías, veía, veíamos, veíais, veían</i>

### Examples:

<i>Iban a la playa.</i>	They were going to the beach.
<i>Eran las once.</i>	It was eleven o'clock.
<i>No veíamos nada.</i>	We didn't see anything.

## USING THE IMPERFECT

The imperfect is a past tense that is used as follows:

- To describe actions that were ongoing or continuous in the past without regard to when they may or may not have been completed:

*Jugábamos al fútbol.* We were playing tennis.

- To described actions that the subject repeated or was in the habit of doing:

*Ellos iban al cine los viernes.* They used to go to the movies on Fridays.

- To describe actions that continued for an unspecified period of time:

*Yo asistía a esa universidad.* I used to attend that university.

- To describe people, places, things, conditions, states of mind, or conditions:

*Ella era muy bonita.* She was very pretty.  
*Los pájaros cantaban.* The birds were singing.  
*Estábamos contentos.* We were happy.

- To describe two actions that took place simultaneously:

*Yo leía mientras él dormía.* I was reading while he was sleeping.

- To describe a situation that was taking place when another action, expressed by the preterit, occurred:

*Ella estudiaba cuando el teléfono sonó.* She was studying when the phone rang.

- To describe an event or action that began and continued in the past by using the verb *hacer*:

*¿Cuánto tiempo hacía que estudiabas el español? Hacía tres años.* How long had you been studying Spanish? It had been three years.

## THE PRETERIT AND THE IMPERFECT COMPARED

The preterit expresses a past action that occurred and was completed at a specific moment in time; it expresses what happened and was finished. The imperfect describes a past action that was taking place over an unspecified period of time; it expresses what was happening, used to happen, or would happen over time. The following table summarizes the uses of these two tenses:

### The Preterit and the Imperfect Compared

Preterit	Imperfect
Expresses a past action or event that occurred at a definite time in the past, regardless of whether that time is mentioned:  <i>Yo escribí una carta.</i> I wrote a letter.	Describes ongoing or continuous past actions or events, regardless of whether the action was completed:  <i>Yo escribía una carta.</i> I was writing a letter.
Expresses a specific past action or event that occurred at a definite time that is mentioned:  <i>Fuimos al teatro anoche.</i> We went to the theater last night.	Describes habitual or repeated past actions:  <i>Íbamos al al teatro a menudo.</i> We used to go to the theater often.

(continues)

## The Preterit and the Imperfect Compared (*continued*)

Preterit	Imperfect
Expresses a specific past action or event that was repeated a stated number of times: <i>Te telefoneé una vez.</i> I called you once.	Describes a person, place, thing, condition, or state of mind in the past: <i>El teléfono no funcionaba.</i> The phone wasn't working.
Expresses a series of completed past actions: <i>Me levanté, me bané, y me visté.</i> I got up, I bathed, and I got dressed.	Expresses a time of day or a day of the week in the past: <i>Era el lunes.</i> It was Monday. <i>Eran las cuatro.</i> It was four o'clock.
Expresses the beginning or the end of an action: <i>Yo empecé a hacer mis tareas a las siete.</i> I began to do my homework at seven o'clock.	Expresses simultaneous actions in the past: <i>Él reía mientras yo lloraba.</i> He was laughing while I was crying.

### Would

When "would" expresses "used to," it is necessary to use the imperfect:

*Cuando era joven, iba a la biblioteca los sábados.* When I was young, I would (used to) go to the library on Saturdays.

When "would" expresses what the subject "would do" under certain conditions, the conditional [see Part IV] is used:

*Si hiciera buen tiempo, yo iría a la piscina.* If the weather were good, I would go to the pool.

## Verbs with Different Meanings in the Preterit and Imperfect

The meaning of some verbs changes depending on whether they are used in the preterit or the imperfect:

Verb	English	Preterit	Imperfect
<i>conocer</i>	to know	to meet for the first time: <i>Los conocimos a la playa.</i> We met them at the beach.	to know for some time: <i>Los conocían.</i> They knew them (for a while).
<i>poder</i>	to be able to	to finally be able to: <i>Ella pudo cocinar bien.</i> She could finally cook well.	to always be able to: <i>Elle podía cocinar bien.</i> She could always cook well.

Verb	English	Preterit	Imperfect
<i>querer</i>	to wish, to want	to try to: <i>Quisimos verlo.</i> We wanted to see him. (tried to)	to want something for a while: <i>Queríamos verlo.</i> We wanted to see him (for a while).
		to refuse to: <i>No quisimos verlo.</i> We didn't want to see him. (refused to)	
<i>saber</i>	to know	to find out: <i>Yo supe el problema.</i> I found out the problem.	to know for a while: <i>Yo sabía el problema.</i> I knew the problem (for a while).
<i>tener</i>	to have	to receive: <i>Ellos tuvieron un paquete.</i> They had (received) a package.	to carry on one's person: <i>Ellos tenían un paquete.</i> They had a package (that they carried with them).

## Words That Indicate the Preterit or the Imperfect

Certain words and expressions indicate that an action or event occurred at a specific time and then ended, whereas other words and expressions imply that an action or event was repeated in the past. The words and expressions in the following tables will help you determine whether to use the preterit or the imperfect:

### Words That Indicate the Preterit

Spanish	English
<i>anoche</i>	last night
<i>anteayer</i>	day before yesterday
<i>ayer</i>	yesterday
<i>ayer por (la mañana, la tarde, la noche)</i>	last night
<i>de repente</i>	suddenly
<i>el mes (año) pasado</i>	last month (year)
<i>el otoño(el invierno, el verano) pasado</i>	last fall (winter, summer)
<i>el otro día</i>	the other day
<i>finalmente</i>	finally

(continues)

## Words That Indicate the Preterit (*continued*)

Spanish	English
<i>la primavera pasada</i>	last spring
<i>la semana pasada</i>	last week
<i>por fin</i>	finally
<i>primero</i>	at first
<i>un día</i>	one day
<i>una vez (dos veces)</i>	one time (twice)

### Examples:

*De repente el niño se cayó.*

*Finalmente la carta llegó.*

Suddenly the child fell.

Finally the letter arrived.

## Words That Indicate the Imperfect

Spanish	English
<i>a menudo</i>	often
<i>a veces</i>	sometimes
<i>antiguamente</i>	formerly
<i>cada día (semana, mes, año)</i>	each (every) day (week, month, year)
<i>con frecuencia</i>	frequently
<i>de vez en cuando</i>	from time to time
<i>en ese momento</i>	at that time
<i>en general</i>	generally
<i>frecuentemente</i>	frequently
<i>generalmente</i>	generally
<i>habitualmente</i>	habitually
<i>normalmente</i>	normally
<i>siempre</i>	always
<i>todo el tiempo</i>	all the time
<i>todos los días (meses, años, veranos)</i>	every day (month, year, summer)
<i>usualmente</i>	usually

**Examples:**

*De vez en cuando nosotros viajábamos.* From time to time we traveled.  
*Siempre quería ir a México.* I always wanted to go to Mexico.

**Either the Preterit or the Imperfect**

When speaking in the past, sometimes either the preterit or the imperfect is acceptable, depending on the meaning the speaker wishes to convey:

<i>Yo miré la televisión.</i>	I watched television.
<i>Yo miraba la televisión.</i>	I was watching television.

## The Future Tense

*Future* actions may be expressed in the following manner in Spanish:

- By using the present and an expression of time—for example, *más tarde* (“later”), *después* (“afterward”), *mañana* (“tomorrow”), *en un rato* (“in a while”), *dentro de poco* (“in a short time”), and *pronto* (“soon”)—to indicate that the action will take place:

*Te veo más tarde.* I’ll see you later.

- By conjugating the verb *ir* (“to go”) in the present [*see* The Present Tense of Irregular Verbs, *earlier in this part*] + *a* + the infinitive expressing the action, to express what the subject is going to do in the near future:

*Voy a hacer un viaje.* I’m going to take a trip.

- By using the future tense:

*Lo ayudará.* I will help him.

## THE FUTURE TENSE OF REGULAR VERBS

The future tense expresses what the subject will do or what action or event will occur at some future time. In Spanish, the future endings are the same for all regular and irregular verbs. There are no stem or spelling changes in this tense.

The future tense of regular verbs is formed by adding the future endings to the infinitive of the verb, as shown in the following table:



## The Future of Regular Verbs

Subject	<b>-ar Verbs</b> <i>tomar</i> (“to take”)	<b>-er Verbs</b> <i>vender</i> (“to sell”)	<b>-ir Verbs</b> <i>recibir</i> (“to receive”)
<i>yo</i>	<i>tomaré</i>	<i>venderé</i>	<i>recibiré</i>
<i>tú</i>	<i>tomarás</i>	<i>venderás</i>	<i>recibirás</i>
<i>él, ella, Ud.</i>	<i>tomará</i>	<i>venderá</i>	<i>recibirá</i>
<i>nosotros</i>	<i>tomaremos</i>	<i>venderemos</i>	<i>recibiremos</i>
<i>vosotros</i>	<i>tomaréis</i>	<i>venderéis</i>	<i>recibiréis</i>
<i>ellos, ellas, Uds.</i>	<i>tomarán</i>	<i>venderán</i>	<i>recibirán</i>

### Examples:

*Nosotros tomaremos el tren.*  
*Yo no venderé mi coche.*  
*¿Recibirás buenas noticias?*

We will take the train.  
 I won't sell my car.  
 Will you receive good news?

## THE FUTURE OF IRREGULAR VERBS

A few Spanish verbs have irregular future stems that are used in place of the infinitive. These stems end in *-r* or *-rr*. Irregular stems fall into three categories:

- Those that drop *e* from the infinitive ending before adding the future endings:

Infinitive	English	Future Stem Requiring Future Endings
<i>caber</i>	to fit	<i>cabr-</i>
<i>haber</i> (auxiliary)	to have	<i>habr-</i>
<i>poder</i>	to be able	<i>podr-</i>
<i>querer</i>	to wish, to want	<i>querr-</i>
<i>saber</i>	to know	<i>sabr-</i>

### Examples:

*¿Cabremos todos en el taxi?*  
*Ellos querrán salir pronto.*

Will we all fit into the taxi?  
 They will want to leave soon.

- Those that drop *e* or *i* from the infinitive ending and replace the dropped vowel with a *d* before adding the future endings:

<b>Infinitive</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Future Stem Requiring Future Endings</b>
<i>poner</i>	to put	<i>pondr-</i>
<i>salir</i>	to go out	<i>saldr-</i>
<i>tener</i>	to have	<i>tendr-</i>
<i>valer</i>	to be worth	<i>valdr-</i>
<i>venir</i>	to come	<i>vendr-</i>

**Examples:**

*¿Con quién saldrá Ud?*  
*¿Cuánto valdrá su casa?*

With whom will you go out?  
How much will your house be worth?

- Those that are completely irregular:

<b>Infinitive</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Future Stem Requiring Future Endings</b>
<i>decir</i>	to say	<i>dir-</i>
<i>hacer</i>	to make, to do	<i>har-</i>

**Examples:**

*Él no dirá la verdad.*  
*Haremos un viaje a España.*

He won't tell the truth.  
We will take a trip to Spain.

## USING THE FUTURE TENSE

The future is used

- To express what will happen:  
*Yo saldré bien en mis exámenes.* I will do well on my exams.
- To predict a future action or event:  
*Hará buen tiempo mañana.* There will be nice weather tomorrow.
- To express wonder, probability, or conjecture in the present:  
*¿Cuántos años tendrá?* I wonder how old she is. (How old can she be?)  
*Serán las ocho.* It's probably eight o'clock.  
*¿Quién te escribió esta carta?* I wonder who wrote you this letter.  
*Será Ana.* It must be Ann.  
*Estará contento.* You must be happy.
- To express an unexpected action or result caused by something that is happening in the present:  
*Si Ud. trabaja muy duro, ganará mucho dinero.* If you work very hard, you will earn a lot of money.



# Simple Moods

## Mood

---

The *mood* of a verb (also known as the *mode*) indicates the manner in which the action or state is perceived or how the speaker envisions the action or state being expressed. In Spanish there are five moods:

- The *indicative* expresses a fact or asks a question in the preterit, imperfect, present, or future tense. [See Part III for more information about these tenses.]
- The *conditional* expresses what the subject would do or what would happen under certain circumstances.
- The *subjunctive* expresses wishing, wanting, emotion, doubt, fear, supposition, regret, and so on.
- The *imperative* expresses a command or a suggestion. [See Part VIII for more information about the imperative.]
- The *infinitive* expresses the “to” form of the verb (for example, to eat, to drink, to be merry)—the form of the verb before it is conjugated into a tense. [See Part IX for more information about infinitives.]

### Infinitives with Accents

A verb whose infinitive contains an accent drops that accent in the future tense and in the conditional mood:

<i>reír</i>	to laugh
<i>oír</i>	to hear

**Examples:**

<i>Al entender eso, él no reirá.</i>	Upon hearing that, he won't laugh.
<i>Ellas reirían.</i>	They would laugh.
<i>Yo no oiré su explicación.</i>	I won't hear his explanation.
<i>Nosotros no sonreiríamos.</i>	We wouldn't smile.

# The Conditional

---

The *conditional* is generally used in Spanish in the same way it is used in English: to express actions and states that “would” occur under certain circumstances.

## THE CONDITIONAL OF REGULAR VERBS

The conditional is formed by using the same stem used for all regular verbs in the future and by adding the imperfect endings used for *-er* and *-ir* regular verbs, as shown in the following table:

### The Conditional of Regular Verbs

Subject	<b>-ar Verbs</b> <i>buscar</i> (“to look for”)	<b>-er Verbs</b> <i>aprender</i> (“to learn”)	<b>-ir Verbs</b> <i>asistir</i> (“to attend”)
<i>yo</i>	<i>buscaría</i>	<i>aprendería</i>	<i>asistiría</i>
<i>tú</i>	<i>buscarías</i>	<i>aprenderías</i>	<i>asistirías</i>
<i>él, ella, Ud.</i>	<i>buscarías</i>	<i>aprendería</i>	<i>asistiría</i>
<i>nosotros</i>	<i>buscaríamos</i>	<i>aprenderíamos</i>	<i>asistiríamos</i>
<i>vosotros</i>	<i>buscaríais</i>	<i>aprenderíais</i>	<i>asistiríais</i>
<i>ellos, ellas, Uds.</i>	<i>buscarían</i>	<i>aprenderían</i>	<i>asistirían</i>

### Examples:

*¿Buscarías una casa más grande?*  
*No aprenderíamos el ruso.*  
*Yo asistiría a esa conferencia.*

Would you look for a bigger house?  
 We wouldn't learn Russian.  
 I would attend that conference.

## THE CONDITIONAL OF IRREGULAR VERBS

Irregular verbs in the conditional are formed with the same stem used for irregular verbs in the future and add the same endings used for the conditional of regular verbs.

Spanish verbs with irregular conditional stems, which are used in place of the infinitive, are

- Those that drop *e* from the infinitive ending before adding the future endings:

Infinitive	Meaning	Conditional Stem Requiring Conditional Endings
<i>caber</i>	to fit	<i>cabr-</i>
<i>haber</i> (auxiliary)	to have	<i>habr-</i>
<i>poder</i>	to be able	<i>podr-</i>
<i>querer</i>	to wish, to want	<i>querr-</i>
<i>saber</i>	to know	<i>sabr-</i>

**Examples:**

*¿Cabrían todos los invitados en la sala?*

Will all the guests fit into the room?

*Yo querría descansar un rato.*

I would like to rest a while.

- Those that drop *e* or *i* from the infinitive ending and replace the dropped vowel with a *d* before adding the future endings:

Infinitive	Meaning	Conditional Stem Requiring Conditional Endings
<i>poner</i>	to put	<i>pondr-</i>
<i>salir</i>	to go out	<i>saldr-</i>
<i>tener</i>	to have	<i>tendr-</i>
<i>valer</i>	to be worth	<i>valdr-</i>
<i>venir</i>	to come	<i>vendr-</i>

**Examples:**

*¿Valdría la pena ir al centro?*

Would it be worth the effort to go to the city?

*¿Tendrías ganas de viajar?*

Would you want to travel? *or* Would you feel like traveling?

- Those that are completely irregular:

Infinitive	Meaning	Conditional Stem Requiring Conditional Endings
<i>decir</i>	to say	<i>dir-</i>
<i>hacer</i>	to make, to do	<i>har-</i>

**Examples:**

*Yo no diría mentiras.*

I wouldn't tell lies.

*Ellos no harían el trabajo.*

They wouldn't do the work.

## USING THE CONDITIONAL

The conditional is used

- To express what events or actions would take place if certain hypothetical circumstances existed [*see The Imperfect Subjunctive, later in this part*]:

*Si tuviera bastante dinero, él iría a Europa.*      If he had enough money, he would go to Europe.

- To express an action or event that would take place in the future with respect to a past action:

*Mi amigo me dijo que nosotros nos divertiríamos mucho al cine.*      My friend told me that we would have a good time at the movies.

- To express wonder, probability, conjecture, or speculation that occurred in the past, regardless of whether a subordinate clause in the past tense is used or implied:

*¿Qué tiempo haría cuando ellos salieron?*      I wonder what the weather was like when they went out.  
*Llovería.*      It must have been raining.  
*Estarías triste.*      You must have been sad.

- To express courtesy, kindness, or modesty:

*Me gustaría acompañarte.*      I would like to go with you.  
*¿Querías tomar algo?*      Would you like to drink something?

### Would

Remember that when “would” means “used to (habitually did),” the imperfect is used [*see The Imperfect in Part III*]:

*Iba a ese restaurante los domingos.*      I would (used to) go to that restaurant on Sundays.

When “would” means “want” or “be willing to,” the preterit of *querer* is used:

*Yo no quise ir al centro.*      I wasn't willing (didn't want) to go downtown.

# The Present Subjunctive

The *subjunctive*, which is used far more frequently in Spanish than in English, is a mood that expresses unreal, hypothetical, theoretical, imaginary, uncorroborated, or unconfirmed conditions or situations that result from doubts, emotions, wishes, wants, needs, desires, feelings, speculations, and suppositions.

## THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF REGULAR VERBS

The present subjunctive expresses actions or events taking place in the present or the future. The present subjunctive of regular verbs is formed by dropping the *-o* from the first person singular (*yo*) form of the present tense and adding the subjunctive endings listed in the following table:

### The Present Subjunctive of Regular Verbs

Subject	<b>-ar Verbs</b> <i>gitar</i> (“to shout”)	<b>-er Verbs</b> <i>aprend</i> (“to learn”)	<b>-ir Verbs</b> <i>erabir</i> (“to open”)
present <i>yo</i> form	<i>grito</i>	<i>aprendo</i>	<i>abro</i>
<i>yo</i>	<i>grite</i>	<i>aprenda</i>	<i>abra</i>
<i>tú</i>	<i>grites</i>	<i>aprendas</i>	<i>abras</i>
<i>él, ella, Ud.</i>	<i>grite</i>	<i>aprenda</i>	<i>abra</i>
<i>nosotros</i>	<i>gritemos</i>	<i>aprendamos</i>	<i>abramos</i>
<i>vosotros</i>	<i>gritéis</i>	<i>aprendáis</i>	<i>abráis</i>
<i>ellos, ellas, Uds.</i>	<i>griten</i>	<i>aprendan</i>	<i>abran</i>

### Examples:

<i>Es importante que los niños no griten.</i>	It is important that the children not shout.
<i>El profesor quiere que los alumnos aprendan mucho.</i>	The teacher wants the students to learn a lot.
<i>Prefiero que Ud. abra las ventanas.</i>	I prefer that you open the windows.



## THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF SPELLING-CHANGE VERBS

In the present subjunctive, *-car*, *-gar*, and *-zar* verbs have the same change that occurs in the first person singular (*yo*) form of the preterit:

- *-car* verbs change *c* to *qu*:

Infinitive	English	Preterit <i>yo</i>	Subjunctive Stem
<i>buscar</i>	to look for	<i>busqué</i>	<i>busqu-</i>

### Example:

*Es importante que yo busque mi libro.* It is important for me to look for my book.

- *-gar* verbs change *g* to *gu*:

Infinitive	English	Preterit <i>yo</i>	Subjunctive Stem
<i>pagar</i>	to pay	<i>pagué</i>	<i>pagu-</i>

### Example:

*Es increíble que él no pague la cuenta.* It's incredible that he doesn't pay the bill.

- *-zar* verbs change *z* to *c*:

Infinitive	English	Preterit <i>yo</i>	Subjunctive Stem
<i>gozar</i>	to enjoy	<i>gocé</i>	<i>goc-</i>

### Example:

*Es justo que gocemos de la vida.* It is right that we enjoy life.

In the present subjunctive, consonant + *-cer/-cir*, vowel + *-cer/-cir*, *-ger/-gir*, and *-guir* verbs have the same change that occurs in the first person singular (*yo*) form of the present tense:

- Consonant + *-cer/-cir* verbs change *c* to *z*:

Infinitive	English	Preterit <i>yo</i>	Subjunctive Stem
<i>convencer</i>	to convince	<i>convencí</i>	<i>convenz-</i>

### Example:

*No es posible que tú me convengas de lo contrario.* It isn't possible that you will convince me otherwise.

Infinitive	English	Preterit yo	Subjunctive Stem
<i>fruncir</i>	to frown	<i>frunzo</i>	<i>frunz-</i>

**Example:**

*No quiero que Ud. frunza el ceño.* I don't want you to frown.

- Vowel + *-cer/-cir* verbs change *c* to *zc*:

Infinitive	English	Preterit yo	Subjunctive Stem
<i>conocer</i>	to know	<i>conozco</i>	<i>conozc-</i>

**Example:**

*Dudamos que él conozca a tu hermana.* We doubt that he knows your sister.

Infinitive	English	Preterit yo	Subjunctive Stem
<i>traducir</i>	to translate	<i>traduzco</i>	<i>traduzc-</i>

**Example:**

*El profesor exige que los alumnos traduzcan las frases.* The teacher demands that the students translate the sentences.

- *-ger/-gir* verbs change *g* to *j*:

Infinitive	English	Preterit yo	Subjunctive Stem
<i>escoger</i>	to choose	<i>escojo</i>	<i>escoj-</i>

**Example:**

*Es necesario que nosotros escojamos bien.* It is necessary that we choose well.

Infinitive	English	Preterit yo	Subjunctive Stem
<i>dirigir</i>	to direct	<i>dirijo</i>	<i>dirij-</i>

**Example:**

*Es bueno que ellos dirijan sus pasos hacia el banco.* It is good that they are making their way toward the bank.

- *-guir* verbs change *-gu* to *g*:

Infinitive	English	Preterit yo	Subjunctive Stem
<i>distinguir</i>	to distinguish	<i>distingo</i>	<i>disting-</i>

**Example:**

*Es importante que Uds. distingan entre lo bueno y lo malo.* It is important that you distinguish between good and evil.

## THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF VERBS WITH STEM CHANGES

In the present subjunctive, stem changes occur as shown in the following table:

### Stem Changes in the Present Subjunctive

Infinitive Ending [see Part III]	Stem Change in Present	Verb	yo, tú, él, ellos Subjunctive Stem	nosotros/ vosotros Subjunctive Stem
-ar	e→ie	cerrar ("to close")	cierr-	cerr-
-ar	o→ue	mostrar ("to show")	muestr-	mostr-
-er	e→ie	querer ("to wish," "to want")	quier-	quer-
-er	o→ue	poder ("to be able")	pued-	pod-
-ir	e→ie	mentir ("to lie")	mient-	mint-
-ir	o→ue	dormir (to sleep)	duerm-	duerm-
-ir	e→i	servir ("to serve")	serv-	serv-

### Examples:

*No quiero que Ud. cierra la puerta.*

*No es necesario que me muestres tu diseño.*

*Dudo que ella quiera viajar.*

*Busco a una persona que pueda ayudarme.*

*Es importante que nosotros no mintamos.*

*Es mejor que tú duermas hasta las nueve.*

*Es posible que no sirvan la cena.*

I don't want you to shut the door.

It isn't necessary to show me your design.

I doubt she wants to travel.

I'm looking for a person who can help me.

It's important that we don't lie.

It is better that you sleep until nine o'clock.

It's possible that they aren't serving dinner.

## The Present Subjunctive of *-iar*, *-uar*, and *-uir* Verbs

Verbs that end in *-iar* [see The Present Tense of Stem-Changing Verbs in Part III] have accent marks in all present subjunctive forms except *nosotros*:

Verb	English	Conjugation
<i>enviar</i>	to send	<i>envíe, envíes, envíe, enviemos, enviéis, envíen</i>

Verbs that end in *-uar* [see The Present Tense of Stem-Changing Verbs in Part III] have accent marks in all present subjunctive forms except *nosotros*:

Verb	English	Conjugation
<i>continuar</i>	to continue	<i>continúe, continúes, continúe, continuemos, continuéis, continúen</i>

Verbs that end in *-uir* (but not *-guir* [see The Present Tense of Stem-Changing Verbs in Part III]) add a *y* after the *u* in all present subjunctive forms:

Verb	English	Conjugation
<i>concluir</i>	to conclude	<i>concluya, concluyas, concluya, concluyamos, concluyáis, concluyan</i>

## THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF IRREGULAR VERBS

Verbs that are irregular in the first person singular (*yo*) form of the present tense form the present subjunctive by dropping the *o* from that irregular *yo* form and adding the appropriate subjunctive endings, as shown in the following table:

### Verbs Whose Subjunctive Stem Derives from Present Tense *Yo* Form

Verb	English	Yo Form	Subjunctive Forms
<i>caber</i>	to fit	<i>quepo</i>	<i>quepa, quepas, quepa, quepamos, quepáis, quepan</i>
<i>caer</i>	to fall	<i>caigo</i>	<i>caiga, caigas, caiga, caigamos, caigáis, caigan</i>
<i>decir</i>	to say, to tell	<i>digo</i>	<i>diga, digas, diga, digamos, digáis, digan</i>
<i>hacer</i>	to make, to do	<i>hago</i>	<i>haga, hagas, haga, hagamos, hagáis, hagan</i>
<i>oír</i>	to hear	<i>oigo</i>	<i>oiga, oigas, oiga, oigamos, oigáis, oigan</i>
<i>poner</i>	to put	<i>pongo</i>	<i>ponga, pongas, ponga, pongamos, pongáis, pongan</i>
<i>salir</i>	to go out	<i>salgo</i>	<i>salga, salgas, salga, salgamos, salgáis, salgan</i>
<i>tener</i>	to have	<i>tengo</i>	<i>tenga, tengas, tenga, tengamos, tengáis, tengan</i>
<i>traer</i>	to bring	<i>traigo</i>	<i>traiga, traigas, traiga, traigamos, traigáis, traigan</i>
<i>valer</i>	to be worth	<i>valgo</i>	<i>valga, valgas, valga, valgamos, valgáis, valgan</i>
<i>venir</i>	to come	<i>vengo</i>	<i>venga, vengas, venga, vengamos, vengáis, vengán</i>
<i>ver</i>	to see	<i>veo</i>	<i>vea, veas, vea, veamos, veáis, vean</i>

**Examples:***Quiero que tú me digas todo.*

I want you to tell me everything.

*Es urgente que Uds. salgan.*

It's urgent that you leave.

*No es necesario que traiga su chequera.*

It isn't necessary that you bring your checkbook.

Some verbs are completely irregular, and their subjunctive stems must be memorized:

**Completely Irregular Verbs**

Verb	English	Subjunctive Forms
<i>dar</i>	to give	<i>dé, des, dé, demos, deis, den</i>
<i>estar</i>	to be	<i>esté, estés, esté, estemos, estéis, estén</i>
<i>haber</i> (auxiliary)	to have	<i>haya, hayas, haya, hayamos, hayáis, hayan</i>
<i>ir</i>	to go	<i>vaya, vayas, vaya, vayamos, vayáis, vayan</i>
<i>saber</i>	to know	<i>sepa, sepas, sepa, sepamos, sepáis, sepan</i>
<i>ser</i>	to be	<i>sea, seas, sea, seamos, seáis, sean</i>

**Examples:***Es improbable que la profesora esté ausente.*

It's improbable that the teacher is absent.

*Es imperativo que yo vaya a la oficina.*

It's imperative that I go to the office.

*Busco a alguien que sepa reparar mi coche.*

I'm looking for someone who knows how to repair my car.

**USING THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE**

The present subjunctive mood is called for when all the following conditions exist in a sentence:

- The sentence contains an independent or main clause (a group of words containing a subject and a verb that can stand by itself as a sentence) and also contains a dependent or subordinate clause (a group of words containing a subject and a verb that cannot stand by itself).
- *Que* ("that") joins the two clauses and is followed by a verb in the subjunctive.
- The main clause shows, among other things, wishing, wanting, emotion, doubt, needs, necessity, feelings, commands, supposition, or speculation.
- The verb in the main clause is in the present, the future, or a command form.

**Examples:**

<i>Yo insisto en que tú me lo muestres.</i>	I insist that you show it to me.
<i>Él saldrá tan pronto como pueda.</i>	He will leave as soon as he can.
<i>Déjele que hable.</i>	Let him speak.

**The Subjunctive After Impersonal Expressions**

Many impersonal expressions begin with *es* (“it is”) and are followed by an adjective. Others are third person singular (*él*) verb forms. *Que* (“that”) then joins the clause that contains the impersonal expression with a dependent clause. If the impersonal expression shows any of the qualities of wishing, emotion, doubt, and so on, as mentioned in the preceding section, the verb in the dependent clause must be in the subjunctive. The following table lists common impersonal expressions that require the subjunctive:

**Impersonal Expressions That Require the Subjunctive**

<b>Impersonal Expression</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>basta que</i>	it is enough that
<i>conviene que</i>	it is advisable that
<i>es absurdo que</i>	it is absurd that
<i>es aconsejable que</i>	it is advisable that
<i>es asombroso que</i>	it is amazing that
<i>es bueno que</i>	it is good that <i>or</i> it is nice that
<i>es conveniente que</i>	it is fitting that
<i>es curioso que</i>	it is curious that
<i>es difícil que</i>	it is difficult that
<i>es divertido que</i>	it is amusing that
<i>es dudoso que</i>	it is doubtful that
<i>es esencial que</i>	it is essential that
<i>es extraño que</i>	it is strange that
<i>es fácil que</i>	it is easy that
<i>es imperativo que</i>	it is imperative that
<i>es importante que</i>	it is important that
<i>es imposible que</i>	it is impossible that

(continues)

## Impersonal Expressions That Require the Subjunctive (*continued*)

Impersonal Expression	English
<i>es improbable que</i>	it is improbable that
<i>es increíble que</i>	it is incredible that
<i>es indispensable que</i>	it is indispensable that
<i>es injusto que</i>	it is unfair that
<i>es interesante que</i>	it is interesting that
<i>es irónico que</i>	it is ironic that
<i>es justo que</i>	it is fair that
<i>es lamentable que</i>	it is regrettable that
<i>es lástima</i>	it is a pity
<i>es malo que</i>	it is bad that
<i>es mejor que</i>	it is better that
<i>es menester que</i>	it is necessary that
<i>es natural que</i>	it is natural that
<i>es necesario que</i>	it is necessary that
<i>es posible que</i>	it is possible that
<i>es preciso que</i>	it is necessary that
<i>es preferible que</i>	it is preferable that
<i>es probable que</i>	it is probable that
<i>es raro que</i>	it is rare that
<i>es sorprendente que</i>	it is surprising that
<i>es suficiente que</i>	it is enough that
<i>es urgente que</i>	it is urgent that
<i>es útil que</i>	it is useful that
<i>importa que</i>	it is important that
<i>más vale que</i>	it is better that
<i>parece mentira que</i>	it seems untrue that
<i>puede ser que</i>	it could be that

**Examples:***Es dudosa que llueva.*

It is doubtful that it will rain.

*Es increíble que la policía esté en huelga.*

It's incredible that the police are on strike.

*Más vale que no salgas.*

It is better if you don't go out.

Most of these expressions continue to show doubt even when negated:

*No es posible que ella juegue al golf.*

It isn't possible that she will play golf.

*No es útil que Ud. me ayude.*

It isn't useful for you to help me.

When there is no doubt or when doubt is negated, there is no subjunctive:

*No es dudoso que yo regrese pronto.*

There is no doubt that I will return soon.

When an impersonal expression shows certainty, the indicative (past, present, or future) is used in the dependent clause. When certainty is negated or questioned, the subjunctive must be used. The expressions in the following table require the indicative except when negated, in which case doubt is implied:

**Impersonal Expressions That Require the Indicative**

<b>Impersonal Expression</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>es cierto</i>	it is certain, it is sure
<i>es claro</i>	it is clear
<i>es evidente</i>	it is evident
<i>es exacto</i>	it is exact
<i>es obvio</i>	it is obvious
<i>es seguro</i>	it is sure
<i>es verdad</i>	it is true
<i>parece</i>	it seems

**Examples:***Es cierto que ella es muy inteligente.*

It is certain that she is very intelligent.

*Es evidente que va a nevar.*

It is evident that it is going to snow.

*Es obvio que tienes mucha suerte.*

It is obvious that you are very lucky.

**But:***No es claro que él gane el concurso.*

It isn't clear that he will win the race.

*¿Es evidente que ella reciba el premio.*

Is it evident that she will receive the prize?



### **Tal Vez and Quizás**

*Tal vez* and *quizás*, both meaning “perhaps,” require the subjunctive when doubt or uncertainty exists. The indicative is used when there is certainty:

<i>Tal vez (Quizás) vengamos con Uds.</i>	Perhaps we will come with you.
<i>Tal vez (Quizás) tienes que ir al médico si no estás bien.</i>	Perhaps you need to go to the doctor if you aren't well.

### **The Subjunctive After Certain Verbs**

The subjunctive is used after the following verbs that show advice, command, demand, desire, doubt, disbelief, denial, emotion, feelings, hope, permission, preference, prohibition, request, suggestion, wishing, and wanting:

<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>aconsejar</i>	to advise
<i>alegrarse (de)</i>	to be glad, to be happy
<i>avergonzarse de</i>	to be ashamed of
<i>decir</i>	to tell (only when meaning to order)
<i>dejar</i>	to let, to allow
<i>desear</i>	to desire, to wish, to want
<i>dudar</i>	to doubt
<i>enfadarse</i>	to become angry
<i>enojarse</i>	to become angry
<i>esperar</i>	to hope
<i>exigir</i>	to require, to demand
<i>hacer</i>	to make, to cause
<i>insistir (en)</i>	to insist
<i>lamentar</i>	to regret
<i>mandar</i>	to command, to order
<i>necesitar</i>	to need
<i>negar</i>	to deny
<i>ojalá que</i>	if only

Spanish	English
<i>ordenar</i>	to order
<i>pedir</i>	to ask for, to request
<i>permitir</i>	to permit
<i>preferir</i>	to prefer
<i>prohibir</i>	to forbid
<i>querer</i>	to wish, to want
<i>reclamar</i>	to demand
<i>recomendar</i>	to recommend
<i>requerir</i>	to require
<i>rogar</i>	to beg, to request
<i>sentir</i>	to be sorry, to regret
<i>solicitar</i>	to request
<i>sorprenderse de</i>	to be surprised
<i>sugerir</i>	to suggest
<i>suplicar</i>	to beg, to plead
<i>temer</i>	to fear
<i>tener miedo de</i>	to fear

**Examples:**

*La madre hace que su hija saque la basura.*

The mother makes her daughter take out the garbage.

*Le suplicamos que nos ayude.*

We beg him to help us.

*Me alegro de que tú salgas bien en tus exámenes.*

I am glad that you are doing well on your tests.

Note that *dudar* and *negar* express belief or certainty when used negatively:

*No dudo que él es fuerte.*

I don't doubt that he is strong.

*No niego que tú tienes razón.*

I don't deny that you are right.

## Creer and Pensar

The verbs *creer* (“to believe”) and *pensar* (“to think”) show doubt only when used negatively or interrogatively:

*¿Crees que él vaya al partido de fútbol? ¿Piensas que juegue bien?*

*No creo que él vaya al partido.  
No pienso que juegue bien.*

Do you believe that he is going to the soccer match? Do you think he plays well?

I don't believe he is going to the match.  
I don't think he plays well.

**But:**

*Creo que él va al partido. Pienso que juega bien.*

I believe he is going to the match. I think he plays well.

## The Subjunctive After Certain Adjectives

The subjunctive is used in a dependent clause after an independent clause that contains the verb *estar* (“to be”) and certain adjectives that show emotions or feelings + *de que*:

Spanish	English
<i>alegre</i>	happy
<i>asombrado(a)</i>	astonished, surprised
<i>asustado(a)</i>	afraid
<i>avergonzado(a)</i>	embarrassed, ashamed
<i>contento(a)</i>	happy
<i>encantado(a)</i>	delighted
<i>enfadado(a)</i>	displeased
<i>enojado(a)</i>	angry
<i>fastidiado(a)</i>	bothered
<i>feliz</i>	happy
<i>furioso(a)</i>	furious
<i>infeliz</i>	unhappy
<i>irritado(a)</i>	irritated
<i>lisonjeado(a)</i>	flattered
<i>orgullosa(a)</i>	proud
<i>triste</i>	sad

**Examples:**

*Ella está encantada de que nosotros  
hagamos un viaje a España.*

She is delighted that we are taking  
a trip to Spain.

*Yo estoy furioso de que tú no  
me escuches.*

I am furious that you aren't listening  
to me.

**The Subjunctive After Certain Conjunctions**

Some conjunctions that express time, purpose, condition, concession, negation, or fear always require the subjunctive, whereas others may take either the subjunctive or the indicative, depending on whether the speaker wishes to convey doubt or uncertainty. Note that both clauses in a subjunctive construction may have the same subject. The conjunctions listed in the following table always require the subjunctive:

**Conjunctions That Always Require the Subjunctive**

Spanish	English
<i>a condición de que</i>	on condition that
<i>a menos que</i>	unless
<i>a no ser que</i>	unless
<i>antes de que</i>	before
<i>con tal que</i>	provided that
<i>en caso de que</i>	in case that
<i>para que</i>	in order that, so that
<i>por miedo a que</i>	for fear that
<i>sin que</i>	without

**Examples:**

*Yo te pagaré a menos que no reciba  
mi cheque.*

I will pay you unless I don't  
receive my check.

*Los alumnos escuchan atentivamente  
para que el profesor no les dé  
muchas tareas.*

The students listen attentively so that  
the teacher doesn't give them a lot  
of homework.

Some conjunctions require the subjunctive for events or actions that have not as yet occurred because future events are viewed as uncertain. These conjunctions require the indicative when they refer to past or present events because their certainty is not in question. In some instances, the subjunctive form of the verb can be translated as "may." The following conjunctions may use the subjunctive or the indicative:

## Conjunctions That Require the Subjunctive or the Indicative

Spanish	English
<i>así que</i>	even if
<i>aunque</i>	although, even if, even though
<i>cuando</i>	when
<i>de manera que</i>	so that
<i>de modo que</i>	so that
<i>después de que</i>	after
<i>en cuanto</i>	as soon as
<i>hasta que</i>	until
<i>luego que</i>	as soon as
<i>mientras (que)</i>	while
<i>tan pronto como</i>	as soon as

### Examples:

*Aunque no estudie mucho, ese alumno recibirá buenas notas.*

Although he doesn't (may not) study a lot, that student will receive good grades. (It is uncertain that he will, in fact, receive good grades.)

*Aunque no estudió mucho, ese alumno recibió buenas notas.*

Although he didn't study a lot, that student received good grades. (He received his grades, and they were, in fact, good.)

*Hablaré despacio de manera que Uds. puedan comprenderme.*

I will speak slowly so that you can understand me. (It is unclear whether you will understand me even if I speak slowly.)

*Hablé despacio de manera que Uds. podían comprenderme.*

I spoke slowly so that you could understand me. (It is clear that you understood me when I spoke slowly.)

## The Subjunctive After Indefinites

The subjunctive is used after indefinites or compounds of *-quiera* or *que*:

Spanish	English
<i>comoquiera</i>	however
<i>cualquier(a)</i>	whatever, any
<i>cuandoquiera</i>	whenever
<i>(a-) dondequiera</i>	wherever
<i>por + adjective/adverb + que</i>	however, no matter how, as
<i>quienquiera</i>	whoever

**Examples:**

<i>Cualquier que sea su problema, no hable de él con nadie.</i>	Whatever your problem may be, don't speak about it with anyone.
<i>Por perezosos que ellos sean, siempre terminan su trabajo.</i>	As lazy as they are (may be), they always finish their work.

**The Subjunctive in Relative Clauses**

The subjunctive is used in relative clauses where the person or thing mentioned in the main clause is indefinite, nonexistent, or sought after but not as yet attained, or may or may not necessarily exist. If the person or thing mentioned clearly exists, then the indicative is used:

<i>Busco a un hombre que pueda reparar mi televisor.</i>	I'm looking for a man who can repair my television set. (It is unclear whether such a man exists.)
<i>Tengo un coche que sea muy deportivo.</i>	I have a car that is very sporty.

**The Subjunctive in Third Person Commands**

The subjunctive is used in third person singular or plural commands:

<i>¡Viva la libertad!</i>	Long live liberty!
<i>¡Que ganen mucho!</i>	May they earn a lot of money!

**AVOIDING THE SUBJUNCTIVE**

When the subject of the independent and the dependent clause are the same, *que* is omitted, and the infinitive is used in place of the subjunctive:

<i>Yo prefiero que tú me acompañes.</i>	I prefer that you accompany me.
<i>Yo prefiero acompañarte.</i>	I prefer to accompany you.

The infinitive can be used instead of the subjunctive with the verbs *dejar*, *hacer*, *mandar*, *permitir*, and *prohibir*:

<i>Déjeme que hable.</i> or <i>Déjeme hablar.</i>	Let me speak.
<i>Me manda que me vaya.</i> or <i>Me manda irme.</i>	He orders me to go away.

When using conjunctions, if the subject of both clauses is the same, *que* is omitted, and the infinitive is used in place of the subjunctive:

<i>Te telefonaré antes de venir a tu casa.</i>	I will call you before coming to your house.
<i>¿Va Ud. a esperar hasta terminar el trabajo?</i>	Are you going to wait until you finish the work?

In relative clauses, awkward sentences may be avoided by using simpler constructions:

<i>Quiero encontrar un hombre que sea sensible. (Quiero encontrar un hombre sensible.)</i>	I want to meet a man who is sensitive. (I want to meet a sensitive man.)
--	--

## The Imperfect Subjunctive

---

The *imperfect subjunctive* is a mood that has the same applications as the present subjunctive in that it, too, expresses unreal, hypothetical, theoretical, imaginary, uncorroborated, or unconfirmed conditions or situations that result from doubts, emotions, wishes, wants, needs, desires, feelings, speculations, and suppositions. The imperfect subjunctive refers to an action that has already occurred or that would or would not occur under certain circumstances.

### THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF ALL VERBS

The imperfect subjunctive of all verbs is formed by dropping the *-ron* from the third person plural (*ellos*) form of the preterit tense and adding either the *-ra* or *-se* imperfect subjunctive endings listed in the following table:

## Forming the Imperfect Subjunctive

<b>Infinitive</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Third Person Plural Preterit</b>	<b>Imperfect -ra Form</b>	<b>Subjunctive -se Form</b>
<i>hablar</i>	to speak	<i>hablaron</i>	<i>hablara</i> <i>hablaras</i> <i>hablara</i> <i>habláramos</i> <i>hablarais</i> <i>hablaran</i>	<i>hablase</i> <i>hablases</i> <i>hablase</i> <i>hablásemos</i> <i>hablaseis</i> <i>hablasen</i>
<i>comer</i>	to eat	<i>comieron</i>	<i>comiera</i> <i>comieras</i> <i>comiera</i> <i>comiéramos</i> <i>comierais</i> <i>comieran</i>	<i>comiese</i> <i>comieses</i> <i>comiese</i> <i>comiésemos</i> <i>comieseis</i> <i>comiesen</i>
<i>recibir</i>	to receive	<i>recibieron</i>	<i>recibiera</i> <i>recibieras</i> <i>recibiera</i> <i>recibiéramos</i> <i>recibierais</i> <i>recibieran</i>	<i>recibiese</i> <i>recibieses</i> <i>recibiese</i> <i>recibiésemos</i> <i>recibieseis</i> <i>recibiesen</i>
<i>dormir</i>	to sleep	<i>durmieron</i>	<i>durmiera</i> <i>durmieras</i> <i>durmiera</i> <i>durmiéramos</i> <i>durmierais</i> <i>durmieran</i>	<i>durmiese</i> <i>durmieses</i> <i>durmiese</i> <i>durmiésemos</i> <i>durmieseis</i> <i>durmiesen</i>
<i>servir</i>	to serve	<i>servieron</i>	<i>serviera</i> <i>servieras</i> <i>serviera</i> <i>serviéramos</i> <i>servierais</i> <i>servieran</i>	<i>serviese</i> <i>servieses</i> <i>serviese</i> <i>serviésemos</i> <i>servieseis</i> <i>serviesen</i>
<i>ir</i>	to go	<i>fuleron</i>	<i>fuera</i>	<i>fuese</i>
<i>ser</i>	to be		<i>fueras</i> <i>fuera</i> <i>fuéramos</i> <i>fuerais</i> <i>fuleran</i>	<i>fueses</i> <i>fuese</i> <i>fuésemos</i> <i>fueseis</i> <i>fuesen</i>

(continues)



## Forming the Imperfect Subjunctive (*continued*)

Infinitive	English	Third Person Plural Preterit	Imperfect -ra Form	Subjunctive -se Form
<i>hacer</i>	to make, to do	<i>hicieron</i>	<i>hiciera</i> <i>hicieras</i> <i>hiciera</i> <i>hiciéramos</i> <i>hicierais</i> <i>hicieran</i>	<i>hiciese</i> <i>hicieses</i> <i>hiciese</i> <i>hiciésemos</i> <i>hicieseis</i> <i>hiciesen</i>
<i>traer</i>	to bring	<i>trajeron</i>	<i>trajera</i> <i>trajeras</i> <i>trajera</i> <i>trajéramos</i> <i>trajerais</i> <i>trajeran</i>	<i>trajese</i> <i>trajeses</i> <i>trajese</i> <i>trajésemos</i> <i>trajeseis</i> <i>trajesen</i>
<i>leer</i>	to read	<i>leyeron</i>	<i>leyera</i> <i>leyeras</i> <i>leyera</i> <i>leyéramos</i> <i>leyerais</i> <i>leyeran</i>	<i>leyese</i> <i>leyeses</i> <i>leyese</i> <i>leyésemos</i> <i>leyeseis</i> <i>leyesen</i>

## USING THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

The imperfect subjunctive is used in a dependent clause in the same way and in the same instances as the present subjunctive except that the verb in the main clause is in the imperfect, preterit, or conditional:

*Yo insistí en que tú me lo mostrara (mostrase).*

I insisted that you show it to me.

*Él salió tan pronto como pudiera (pudiese).*

He left as soon as he could.

*No dejaría que hablara (hablase).*

He wouldn't allow him to speak.

## Being Polite

To be extremely polite or to make a sentence softer, the imperfect subjunctive form with the *-ra* ending is often substituted for the conditional of *deber* (“to have to”), *querer* (“to wish,” “to want”), and *poder* (“to be able to”):

<i>Debieras estudiar más.</i>	You should study more.
<i>Quisiera verte a menudo.</i>	I would like to see you often.
<i>Pudiera sentarse.</i>	You may sit.

The imperfect subjunctive is used after the expression *como si* to express “as if”:

<i>Me miraba como si fuera estúpido.</i>	He was looking at me as if I were stupid.
--	---

The imperfect subjunctive is used after *ojalá que* to express “I wish,” “I hope,” or “if only” when referring to a hypothetical situation:

<i>Ojalá que mi madre supiera cocinar.</i>	If only my mother knew how to cook.
--	-------------------------------------



# **GERUNDS AND PROGRESSIVE TENSES**

## **Gerunds**

---

A *gerund* (*un gerundio*) is a verbal: a word that is derived from a verb but used as an adjective or as a noun. In Spanish, as in English, the gerund may be an adjective ending in *-ing*. The gerund may also be the equivalent of the English “by” or “while” + the present participle:

*Yo estoy escuchando música.*

I am listening to music.

*El muchacho quien está  
gritando es mi primo.*

The boy who is shouting is my  
cousin.

*Trabajando duro puede  
hacerse rico.*

By working hard you can become  
rich.

Unlike in English, the Spanish gerund is never used as a noun subject. The infinitive is used instead:

*Jugar al tenis es un deporte  
muy divertido.*

Playing tennis is a very enjoyable  
sport.

## **FORMING THE GERUND OF REGULAR VERBS**

To form the gerund of regular verbs

- Drop the *-ar* infinitive ending and add *-ando*.
- Drop the *-er* or *-ir* infinitive ending and add *-iendo*.

The following table illustrates how this is done:

## Forming the Gerund of Regular Verbs

Ending	Verb	English	Gerund	English
-ar	<i>hablar</i>	to speak	<i>hablando</i>	speaking
-er	<i>correr</i>	to run	<i>corriendo</i>	running
-ir	<i>discutir</i>	to discuss	<i>discutiendo</i>	discussing

### Examples:

*Los alumnos están hablando español.* The students are speaking Spanish.  
*El niño está corriendo por el parque.* The child is running through the park.  
*Estamos discutiendo sus proyectos.* We are discussing his plans.

## Stems That End in Vowels

When an *-er* or *-ir* verb stem ends in a vowel, *i* becomes *y* before *-endo*:

Verb	English	Gerund
<i>caer</i>	to fall	<i>cayendo</i>
<i>creer</i>	to believe	<i>creyendo</i>
<i>distribuir</i>	to distribute	<i>distribuyendo</i>
<i>leer</i>	to read	<i>leyendo</i>
<i>oír</i>	to hear	<i>oyendo</i>
<i>traer</i>	to bring	<i>trayendo</i>

### Examples:

*Los niños están distribuyendo folletos.* The children are distributing brochures.  
*Estoy leyendo un libro muy interesante.* I'm reading a very interesting book.

## FORMING THE GERUND OF STEM-CHANGING AND IRREGULAR VERBS

To form the gerund of stem-changing *-ir* verbs with *e* to *ie* stem changes or with *e* to *i* stem changes, change the stem vowel from *e* to *i*. Those with *o* to *ue* stem changes undergo an *o* to *u* change in the gerund, as shown in the following table:

## Stem Changes in the Gerund

Verb	English	Gerund
<i>colegir</i>	to collect	<i>coligiendo</i>
<i>conseguir</i>	to get	<i>consiguiendo</i>
<i>corregir</i>	to correct	<i>corrigiendo</i>
<i>decir</i>	to say, to tell	<i>diciendo</i>
<i>divertir</i>	to divert, to have fun	<i>divirtiendo</i>
<i>dormir</i>	to sleep	<i>durmiendo</i>
<i>elegir</i>	to elect	<i>eligiendo</i>
<i>mentir</i>	to lie	<i>mintiendo</i>
<i>morir</i>	to die	<i>muriendo</i>
<i>pedir</i>	to ask	<i>pidiendo</i>
<i>preferir</i>	to prefer	<i>prefiriendo</i>
<i>referir</i>	to refer	<i>refiriendo</i>
<i>repetir</i>	to repeat	<i>repitiendo</i>
<i>seguir</i>	to follow	<i>siguiendo</i>
<i>sentir</i>	to feel	<i>sintiendo</i>
<i>servir</i>	to serve	<i>sirviendo</i>
<i>sugerir</i>	to suggest	<i>sugiriendo</i>
<i>venir</i>	to come	<i>viniendo</i>
<i>vestir</i>	to dress	<i>vistiendo</i>

### Examples:

*Ella está mintiendo.*

She is lying.

*El profesor está corrigiendo los exámenes.*

The teacher is correcting the tests.

*Los niños están durmiendo.*

The children are sleeping.

### How?

The gerund answers the question "How?" or "In what way?":

*¿Cómo pasa Ud. el verano?*

How do you spend the summer?

*Lo pasa viajando.*

I spend it traveling.

Three Spanish verbs have irregular gerunds:

Verb	English	Gerund
<i>ir</i>	to go	<i>yendo</i> (has very limited use)
<i>poder</i>	to be able	<i>pudiendo</i> (has very limited use)
<i>reír</i>	to laugh	<i>riendo</i>

**Example:**

*Las muchachas están riendo.*

The girls are laughing.

## Progressive Tenses

The gerund is used primarily after the verb *estar* (“to be”), but it is also used after the verbs *andar* (“to walk”), *continuar* (“to continue”), *ir* (“to go,” “to continue”), *llegar* (“to arrive”), *quedarse* (“to remain,” “to continue”), *salir* (“to go out”), *seguir* (“to follow,” “to continue”), and *venir* (“to come”) to show that an action or event is, was, will, or would be in progress or continuing at any given moment in time.

### THE PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

The present tense in Spanish shows what the subject habitually or generally does now. The *present progressive* shows what the subject is doing at present:

*Yo leo novelas.*

I read novels.

*Yo estoy leyendo una novela.*

I am reading a novel.

The present progressive is most often formed by taking the present tense of the verb *estar* (*estoy, estás, está, estamos, estáis, están*) or any of the verbs of motion listed above [see *The Present Tense in Part III for the present tense conjugations of these verbs*] and adding the gerund expressing the action or event that is occurring:

*Ellos están preparando la comida.*

They are preparing the meal.

*Yo ando buscando mi perro.*

I'm walking along looking for my dog.

*El niño continúa llorando.*

The child continues crying.

*Sus ideas van cambiando.*

Her ideas are changing.

*¿Por qué llegas sonriendo?*

Why do you arrive smiling?

*Los muchachos se quedan jugando.*

The boys continue playing.

*Ella sale riendo.*

She leaves laughing.

*Nosotros seguimos estudiando.*

We continue studying.

*Ellas vienen corriendo.*

They come running.

## Verbs Not Used in the Progressive

The *gerunds* of the verbs of motion listed on page 112 are not used to form any of the progressive tenses of those verbs. Instead, the appropriate tense or mood is used:

<i>Ellos andan por la ciudad.</i>	They are walking through the city.
<i>Las muchachas iban al cine.</i>	The girls were going to the movies.
<i>Yo seguiré el proceso</i>	I will be monitoring the process.
<i>Ella no vendría sola.</i>	She wouldn't be coming alone.

## THE PAST PROGRESSIVE

The preterit tense in Spanish expresses what the subject did or what action or event took place and was completed at a specific moment in time. The imperfect tense in Spanish describes what the subject “would” or “used to” do, or it describes an action or event that continued in the past over an indefinite period of time. The preterit progressive expresses what the subject was doing or what action or event was taking place at a specific moment in time. The imperfect progressive describes what the subject was doing or what action or event was taking place for an indefinite period of time:

<i>Yo estuve estudiando en la biblioteca ayer por la tarde.</i>	I was studying in the library yesterday afternoon.
<i>Yo estaba estudiando con Carlos.</i>	I was studying with Carlos.

The *past progressive* is most often formed by taking the preterit tense of the verb *estar* (*estuve, estuviste, estuvo, estuvimos, estuvisteis, estuvieron*) or the imperfect of the verb *estar* (*estaba, estabas, estaba, estábamos, estabais, estaban*) or the preterit or the imperfect of any of the verbs of motion listed on page 112 [see *The Preterit Tense in Part III for the preterit and the imperfect tense conjugations of these verbs*] and adding the gerund expressing the action or event that was occurring:

<i>Estuvieron trabajando toda la tarde.</i>	They were working all afternoon.
<i>Todavía estaban trabajando a las dos.</i>	They were still working at two o'clock.
<i>Ella coninuó bailando hasta la medianoche.</i>	She continued dancing until midnight.
<i>Ella continuaba bailando con su novio.</i>	She continued dancing with her boyfriend.
<i>Salió aplaudiendo.</i>	He left clapping.
<i>Salía hablando de la obra.</i>	He was leaving speaking of the work.



## THE FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

The future tense in Spanish shows what the subject will do or what action or event will happen in the future. The *future progressive* shows what the subject will be doing or what actions or events will be occurring in the future:

<i>Nosotros viajaremos durante el invierno.</i>	We will travel during the winter.
<i>Nosotros estaremos viajando durante el invierno.</i>	We will be traveling during the winter.

The future progressive is most often formed by taking the future tense of the verb *estar* (*estaré, estarás, estará, estaremos, estaréis, estarán*) or any of the verbs of motion listed on page 112 [see *The Future Tense in Part III for the future tense conjugations of these verbs*] and adding the gerund expressing the action or event that will be occurring:

<i>Ella tocará el piano por la mañana.</i>	She will play the piano in the morning.
<i>Ella estará tocando el piano toda la mañana.</i>	She will be playing the piano all morning.
<i>Yo estudiaré el español.</i>	I will study Spanish.
<i>Yo seguiré estudiando el español.</i>	I will be continuing to study Spanish.
<i>Él traerá un regalo a mi casa.</i>	He will bring a gift to my house.
<i>Él vendrá a mi casa trayendo un regalo.</i>	He will come to my house bringing a gift.

## THE CONDITIONAL PROGRESSIVE

The conditional mood in Spanish shows what the subject would do or what action or event would happen in certain situations. The *conditional progressive* shows what the subject would be doing or what actions or events would be occurring in certain situations:

<i>Si hiciera buen tiempo, yo jugaría al golf.</i>	If it were nice weather, I would play golf.
<i>Si hiciera buen tiempo, yo estaría jugando más al golf.</i>	If it were nice weather, I would be playing golf more.

The conditional progressive is most often formed by taking the conditional of the verb *estar* (*estaría, estarías, estaría, estaríamos, estaríis, estarían*) or any of the verbs of motion listed on page 112 [see *The Conditional in Part IV for the conditional conjugations of these verbs*] and adding the gerund expressing the action or event that would be occurring in certain situations. The situation in the clause that follows *si* ("if") is hypothetical and requires a verb in the imperfect subjunctive [see *The Imperfect Subjunctive in Part IV*]:

<i>Si tuviera más dinero yo compraría un coche nuevo ahora.</i>	If I had more money, I would buy a new car now.
<i>Si tuviera más dinero, yo estaría comprando un coche nuevo ahora.</i>	If I had more money, I would be buying a new car now.
<i>Si hubiera un huracán, no trabajaría.</i>	If there were a hurricane, I wouldn't work.
<i>Si hubiera un huracán, no iría trabajando.</i>	If there were a hurricane, I wouldn't be working.
<i>Si tuviera buena fortuna, cantarí.</i>	If he had good fortune, he would sing.
<i>Si tuviera buena fortuna, llegaría cantando.</i>	If he had good fortune, he would arrive singing.

## The Gerund in Commands

The gerund commonly follows command forms of the verbs *seguir* and *continuar*:

<i>Sigan Uds. tocando la guitarra.</i>	Continue playing the guitar.
<i>No sigue hablando.</i>	Don't continue to speak.
<i>Continúe Ud. estudiando.</i>	Continue studying.
<i>No continúes leyendo.</i>	Do not continue to read.

## PRONOUNS AND GERUNDS

When using a direct object [*see Direct Object Pronouns in Part II*], indirect object [*see Indirect Object Pronouns in Part II*], or reflexive pronoun [*see Reflexive Pronouns in Part III*] with a gerund, follow these rules for the placement of the pronoun and any necessary accent marks:

- One pronoun may be placed before the conjugated verb of motion or may follow and be attached to the gerund. When the pronoun is attached to the gerund, count back three vowels and add an accent:

<i>La estoy buscando.</i> or <i>Estoy buscándola.</i>	I am looking for her.
<i>Nos seguían hablando.</i> or <i>Seguían hablándonos.</i>	They were continuing to speak to us.
<i>Se continuó bañando hasta las dos.</i> or <i>Continuó bañándose hasta las dos.</i>	She continued bathing until two o'clock.

- Two pronouns may be placed before the conjugated verb of motion or may follow and be attached to the gerund. When the pronouns are attached to the gerund, count back four vowels and add an accent:

*Él me lo está leyendo.* or

He is reading it to me.

*Él está leyéndomelo.*

*Se la continuaré escribiendo.*

I will continue to write it to him.

or *Continuaré escribiéndosela.*

*Ella se los seguía repitiendo.*

She continued repeating them to

or *Ella seguía repitiéndoselos.*

herself.

# COMPOUND TENSES

## Simple vs. Compound Tenses

Verb tenses and moods are classified as either simple or compound. A *simple tense* or *mood* requires just one verb form to express the event or action: when it takes place and what it is. A *compound tense* consists of two verb forms to express “when” and “what”: an auxiliary, or helping, verb, which indicates the time period or the mood in which the action or event takes place, and a past participle, which indicates what action or event is taking place.

Spanish has four simple verb tenses and three simple moods, each of which has a corresponding compound tense or mood. To form a compound, conjugate the helping verb, *haber* (“to have”), in the parallel simple tense and add the past participle, as shown in the following table:

### Simple vs. Compound Tenses and Moods

Simple Tenses and Moods	Compound Tenses and Moods
Present (do/does; am/are/is) <i>Ella entra.</i> She enters.	Present perfect (have + past participle) <i>Ella ha entrado.</i> She has entered.
Preterit (did) <i>Ella entró.</i> She entered.	Preterit perfect (had + past participle) <i>Ella hubo entrado.</i> She had entered.
Imperfect (was, used to) <i>Ella entraba.</i> She was entering.	Pluperfect (had + past participle) <i>Elle había entrado.</i> She had entered.
Future (will) <i>Ella entrará.</i> She will enter.	Future perfect (will have + past participle) <i>Elle habrá entrado.</i> She will have entered.
Conditional (would) <i>Ella entraría.</i> She would enter.	Conditional perfect (would have + past participle) <i>Ella habría entrado.</i> She would have entered.
Present subjunctive (may) ... <i>que ella entre</i> ... that she may enter	Perfect (past) subjunctive (may have + past participle) ... <i>que ella haya entrado.</i> ... that she may have entered
Imperfect subjunctive (might) ... <i>que ella entrara (entrase)</i> ... that she might enter	Pluperfect subjunctive (might have + past participle) ... <i>que ella hubiera (hubiese) entrado</i> ... that she might have entered

# The Past Participle

The *past participle* is a verb form that expresses what action or event took place in one of the perfect tenses or moods:

<i>Él ha llegado.</i>	He has arrived.
<i>Habíamos conducido a la fiesta.</i>	We had driven to the party.
<i>¿Habrás terminado antes el mediodía?</i>	Will you have finished before noon?

## PAST PARTICIPLES OF REGULAR VERBS

To form the past participle of regular verbs

- Drop the *-ar* infinitive ending and add *-ado*.
- Drop the *-er* or *-ir* infinitive ending and add *-ido*.

The following table illustrates how past participles are formed:

### Past Participles of Regular Verbs

Ending	Verb	English	Past Participle	English
<i>-ar</i>	<i>trabajar</i>	to work	<i>trabajado</i>	worked
<i>-er</i>	<i>comer</i>	to eat	<i>comido</i>	eaten
<i>-ir</i>	<i>decidir</i>	to decide	<i>decidido</i>	decided

#### Examples:

<i>Ellos han trabajado mucho.</i>	They have worked a lot.
<i>No habíamos comido nada.</i>	We hadn't eaten anything.
<i>¿Qué habría Ud. decidido?</i>	What would you have decided?

If a vowel precedes an *-er* or *-ir* verb ending, add an accent to that vowel. If the verb ends in an accented vowel, maintain that accent, as shown in the following table:

### Past Participles That Require Accents

Verb	English	Past Participle	English
<i>caer</i>	to fall	<i>caído</i>	fallen
<i>creer</i>	to believe	<i>creído</i>	believed
<i>leer</i>	to read	<i>leído</i>	read
<i>oír</i>	to hear	<i>oído</i>	heard

Verb	English	Past Participle	English
<i>reír</i>	to laugh	<i>reído</i>	laughed
<i>sonreír</i>	to smile	<i>sonreído</i>	smiled
<i>traer</i>	to bring	<i>traído</i>	brought

**Examples:**

*El niño ha caído.*

The child has fallen.

*No me habrían creído.*

They wouldn't have believed me.

*Yo había reído.*

I had laughed.

**IRREGULAR PAST PARTICIPLES**

Stem-changing and spelling-change verbs have regular past participles. The verbs listed in the following table have irregular past participles, even though some of them are regular in the simple tenses:

**Irregular Past Participles**

Verb	English	Past Participle	English
<i>abrir</i>	to open	<i>abierto</i>	opened
<i>cubrir</i>	to cover	<i>cubierto</i>	covered
<i>decir</i>	to tell, to say	<i>dicho</i>	said
<i>escribir</i>	to write	<i>escrito</i>	written
<i>freír</i>	to fry	<i>frito</i>	fried
<i>hacer</i>	to make	<i>hecho</i>	made
<i>morir</i>	to die	<i>muerto</i>	died
<i>poner</i>	to put	<i>puesto</i>	put
<i>proveer</i>	to provide	<i>provisto</i>	provided
<i>resolver</i>	to resolve	<i>resuelto</i>	resolved
<i>romper</i>	to break	<i>roto</i>	broken
<i>satisfacer</i>	to satisfy	<i>satisfecho</i>	satisfied
<i>ver</i>	to see	<i>visto</i>	seen
<i>volver</i>	to return	<i>vuelto</i>	returned

**Examples:***Él ha abierto la puerta.**Habían hecho un viaje.**Habría visto esa película.*

He has opened the door.

They had taken a trip.

I would have seen that film.

**USING THE PAST PARTICIPLE**

When used as a verbal, the past participle is invariable, always ends in *-o*, and cannot be separated from the helping verb:

*Nosotros hemos resuelto el problema.**La muchacha había roto el juguete.**No se lo habría dicho.*

We have resolved the problem.

She had broken the toy.

I wouldn't have said it to him.

When used as an adjective, the past participle agrees in number (singular or plural) and gender (masculine or feminine) with the noun it modifies:

*El señor Gómez es un hombre educado.**Veo una puerta cerrada.**Leo libros escritos en español.**Hay montañas cubiertas de nieve.*

Mr. Gómez is an educated man.

I see a closed door.

I read books written in Spanish.

There are mountains covered with snow.

**Reflexive Verbs**

In compound tenses, reflexive pronouns are always placed before the conjugated form of *haber*:

*Roberto se ha afeitado.**Nos habíamos divertido.*

Robert has shaved.

We had had fun.

**The Present Perfect**

The *present perfect* expresses an action that began in the past and continues up to the present or an action that was completed at an unspecified time in the past but is somehow connected to the present:

*Hemos comido en ese restaurante recientemente.**No he leído esa novela.**¿Has visto esa película?*

We have eaten in that restaurant recently.

I haven't read that novel.

Have you seen that film?

## FORMING THE PRESENT PERFECT

The present perfect is formed by joining the present tense of the helping verb, *haber*, and the past participle of the action that took place, as shown in the following table:

### Forming the Present Perfect

Subject + Present Tense of <i>Haber</i>	Sample Past Participle	English
Yo <b>he</b>	<i>cantado.</i>	I have sung.
Tú <b>has</b>	<i>respondido.</i>	You have responded.
Él (Ella, Ud.) <b>ha</b>	<i>aplaudido.</i>	He (she, you) has/have clapped.
Nosotros <b>hemos</b>	<i>olvidado.</i>	We have forgotten.
Vosotros <b>habéis</b>	<i>reído.</i>	You have laughed.
Ellos (Ellas, Uds.) <b>han</b>	<i>vuelto.</i>	They (you) have returned.

### Examples:

<i>Ellos han ido a casa de sus abuelos.</i>	They have gone to their grandparents' house.
<i>¿Has hecho un viaje a Uruguay?</i>	Have you taken a trip to Uruguay?
<i>Ella me ha dado un regalo.</i>	She has given me a gift.

## USING THE PRESENT PERFECT

The present perfect is used to express what the subject has done or what action or event has occurred. The helping verb, *haber*, must always be used in the present perfect, even if an English translation does not contain the word *has* or *have*:

<i>He leído muchos libros interesantes.</i>	I (have) read many interesting books.
<i>Ya ha terminado el verano.</i>	The summer (has) already ended.
<i>Han disfrutado de vacaciones maravillosas.</i>	They (have) enjoyed a marvelous vacation.

## The Preterit Perfect

The *preterit perfect* expresses an action or event that had ended in the past:

<i>Cuando el presidente hubo terminado su discurso, todo el mundo aplaudió.</i>	When the president had finished his speech, everyone clapped.
<i>En cuanto hube llegado a casa preparé la cena.</i>	As soon as I arrived home, I prepared dinner.



*Apenas se hubieron despertado  
cuando su amigo llamó.*

They had hardly awakened when  
their friend called.

## FORMING THE PRETERIT PERFECT

The preterit perfect is formed by joining the preterit tense of the helping verb, *haber*, and the past participle of the action that took place, as shown in the following table:

### Forming the Preterit Perfect

Subject + Preterit Tense of <i>Haber</i>	Sample Past Participle	English
Yo <b>hube</b>	<i>cantado.</i>	I had sung.
Tú <b>hubes</b>	<i>respondido.</i>	You had responded.
Él (Ella, Ud.) <b>hubo</b>	<i>aplaudido.</i>	He (she, you) had clapped.
Nosotros <b>hubimos</b>	<i>olvidado.</i>	We had forgotten.
Vosotros <b>hubistéis</b>	<i>reído.</i>	You had laughed.
Ellos (Ellas, Uds.) <b>hubieron</b>	<i>vuelto.</i>	They (you) had returned.

### Examples:

<i>Apenas yo hube abierto la puerta, cuando una mosca entró.</i>	I had hardly opened the door, when a fly flew in.
<i>Tan pronto él hubo entendido todo, comprendió el problema.</i>	As soon as he had heard everything, he understood the problem.
<i>Luego que se hubo dormido, el teléfono sonó.</i>	As soon as she had fallen asleep, the telephone rang.

## USING THE PRETERIT PERFECT

The preterit perfect is used mainly in literary and historic works to express what the subject had done or what action or event had just occurred. The helping verb, *haber*, must always be used in the preterit perfect, even if an English translation does not contain the word *had*:

<i>En cuanto hube salido, empezó a llover.</i>	As soon as I had gone out, it began to rain.
<i>Así que los alumnos hubieron terminado su trabajo, el profesor lo corrigió.</i>	As soon as the students had finished their work, the teacher corrected it.

*Después de que nosotros hubimos  
vuelto, tuvimos que preparar la cena.*      After we had arrived, we had to  
prepare dinner.

To express “had” in conversational and informal writing, the pluperfect or the simple preterit replaces the preterit perfect.

### Expressions Indicating the Preterit Perfect

The preterit perfect is generally used after the following expressions:

Spanish	English
<i>apenas</i>	hardly, scarcely
<i>cuando</i>	when
<i>después (de) que</i>	after
<i>así que</i>	as soon as
<i>en cuanto</i>	as soon as
<i>luego que</i>	as soon as
<i>tan pronto como</i>	as soon as

## The Pluperfect

The *pluperfect* describes an action or event that was completed in the past before another action or event occurred, whether or not it is specifically mentioned:

<i>Ella había limpiado la casa (antes de salir).</i>	She had cleaned the house (before going out).
<i>Cuando era alumno, había estudiado mucho.</i>	When I was a student, I had studied a lot.
<i>Te habían llamado después de llegar a casa.</i>	They had called you after arriving home.

### FORMING THE PLUPERFECT

The pluperfect is formed by joining the imperfect tense of the helping verb, *haber*, and the past participle of the action that had taken place, as shown in the following table:

## Forming the Pluperfect

Subject + Imperfect Tense of <i>Haber</i>	Sample Past Participle	English
Yo <i>había</i>	<i>cantado.</i>	I had sung.
Tú <i>habías</i>	<i>respondido.</i>	You had responded.
Él (Ella, Ud.) <i>había</i>	<i>aplaudido.</i>	He (she, you) had clapped.
Nosotros <i>habíamos</i>	<i>olvidado.</i>	We had forgotten.
Vosotros <i>habíais</i>	<i>reído.</i>	You had laughed.
Ellos (Ellas, Uds.) <i>habían</i>	<i>vuelto.</i>	They (you) had returned.

### Examples:

<i>Nunca había comido paella antes.</i>	I had never eaten paella before.
<i>Cuando ella era joven, había vivido en España.</i>	When she was young, she had lived in Spain.
<i>Cuando salimos de nuestra casa, ya habíamos cenado.</i>	When we left our house, we had already eaten dinner.

## USING THE PLUPERFECT

The pluperfect is used to describe an action or event that had occurred further in the past than any action or event expressed in the preterit. Because the pluperfect is used in relationship to another past action, that action either is not expressed or is expressed by the preterit or the imperfect:

<i>Cuando llegamos tarde al aeropuerto, el vuelo ya había despegado.</i>	When we arrived late at the airport, the flight had already taken off.
<i>Cuando íbamos al supermercado, ya había empezado a nevar.</i>	When we were going to the supermarket, it had already started to snow.
<i>Cuando él se durmió, ya había terminado su trabajo.</i>	When he fell asleep, he had already finished his work.

## The Future Perfect

The *future perfect* expresses an action or event that will have occurred and been completed in the past:

*Antes de acostarse, María habrá terminado sus tareas.*  
*Antes el fin de la semana yo habré, pintado mi dormitorio.*  
*Después de estudiar mucho, ellos habrán aprendido todas las reglas de gramática.*

Before going to bed, María will have finished her homework.  
 Before the end of the week, I will have painted my bedroom.  
 After having studied a lot, they will have learned all the grammar rules.

## FORMING THE FUTURE PERFECT

The future perfect is formed by joining the future tense of the helping verb, *haber*, and the past participle of the action that will take place, as shown in the following table:

### Forming the Future Perfect

Subject + Future Tense of <i>Haber</i>	Sample Past Participle	English
Yo <b>habré</b>	<i>cantado.</i>	I will have sung.
Tú <b>habrás</b>	<i>respondido.</i>	You will have responded.
Él (Ella, Ud.) <b>habrá</b>	<i>aplaudido.</i>	He (she, you) will have clapped.
Nosotros <b>habremos</b>	<i>olvidado.</i>	We will have forgotten.
Vosotros <b>habréis</b>	<i>reído.</i>	You will have laughed.
Ellos (Ellas, Uds.) <b>habrán</b>	<i>vuelto.</i>	They (you) will have returned.

### Examples:

*Antes el fin del mes, ella habrá pagado todas sus cuentas.* Before the end of the month, she will have paid all her bills.  
*Antes el siete de la mañana, yo habré hecho muchas cosas.* Before seven o'clock in the morning, I will have done many things.  
*Después de un año en España, los alumnos habrán aprendido mucho.* After a year in Spain, the students will have learned a lot.

## USING THE FUTURE PERFECT

The future perfect expresses what the subject will have done or what action or event will have occurred in the past before another action will take place (expressed by the future):

*Para las ocho de la mañana, ya habré comido y podré salir.* By eight o'clock in the morning, I will have already eaten and I will be able to go out.

*Antes el fin del día, ya habremos  
es estudiado mucho y querremos  
divertirnos.*

*Después de una hora en la  
biblioteca, él habrá aprendido  
mucho y escribirá su artículo.*

Before the end of the day, we will  
already have studied a lot and we'll  
want to have fun.

After an hour in the library, he will  
have learned a lot and will write  
his article.

The future perfect is also used to express probability or conjecture in the past:

*¿Quién habrá hecho todos  
estos errores?*

*¿Habrá vuelto?*

*Habrán olvidado su cumpleaños.*

Who has made all these mistakes?  
*or* I wonder who has made all  
these mistakes.

Has he returned? *or* I wonder if he  
has returned.

They have probably forgotten your  
birthday. *or* They must have  
forgotten your birthday.

## ***Deber De***

*Deber de* + the perfect infinitive [see The Perfect Infinitive in Part IX] may replace the future perfect to express probability in the past:

*Deben de haber llegado tarde.*      They must have arrived late.

*Debe de haber tomado otro vuelo.*      He must have taken a different flight.

# COMPOUND MOODS

## The Conditional Perfect

---

The *conditional perfect* expresses an action or event that would have occurred and been completed in the past:

*Yo te habría dicho todo.*

I would have told you everything.

*Ella la habría ayudado.*

She would have helped her.

*Ellos no me habrían dicho mentiras.*

They wouldn't have lied to me.

## FORMING THE CONDITIONAL PERFECT

The conditional perfect is formed by joining the conditional tense of the auxiliary (helping) verb, *haber*, and the past participle of the action that will take place, as shown in the following table:

### Forming the Conditional Perfect

Subject + Conditional of <i>Haber</i>	Sample Past Participle	English
<i>Yo habría</i>	<i>cantado.</i>	I would have sung.
<i>Tú habrías</i>	<i>respondido.</i>	You would have responded.
<i>Él (Ella, Ud.) habría</i>	<i>aplaudido.</i>	He (she, you) would have clapped.
<i>Nosotros habríamos</i>	<i>olvidado.</i>	We would have forgotten.
<i>Vosotros habrías</i>	<i>reído.</i>	You would have laughed.
<i>Ellos (Ellas, Uds.) habrían</i>	<i>vuelto.</i>	They (you) would have returned.

### Examples:

*Ellos no le habrían dado mucho dinero.*

They wouldn't have given her a lot of money.

*Mi abuela habría tenido cien años.*

My grandmother would have been one hundred years old.

*Te habríamos ayudado.*

We would have helped you.

## USING THE CONDITIONAL PERFECT

The conditional perfect expresses what the subject would have done or what action or event would have occurred in the past if (*si*) another situation had taken place (expressed by the pluperfect subjunctive [see The Pluperfect Subjunctive, *later in this part*]):

*Si hubiera hecho buen tiempo,  
yo habría conducido a la playa.*

*Nosotros nos habríamos viajado  
por el mundo si hubiéramos  
tenido mucho dinero.*

*Si hubiera ganado la lotería, ella  
se habría comprado un castillo  
en España.*

If it had been nice weather, I would  
have driven to the beach.

We would have traveled around the  
world if we had had a lot of money.

If she had won the lottery, she would  
have bought herself a castle in  
Spain.

The conditional perfect is also used to express probability or conjecture in the past:

*¿Quién habría hecho todos  
estos errores?*

*¿Habría vuelto?*

*Habrían olvidado su cumpleaños.*

*Habría sido la medianoche  
cuando llegaron.*

Who had made all these mistakes? *or*  
I wonder who had made all these  
mistakes.

Had he returned? *or* I wonder if he  
had returned.

They had probably forgotten your  
birthday. *or* They must have  
forgotten your birthday.

It was probably midnight when they  
returned.

## The Present Perfect Subjunctive

---

The *present perfect subjunctive* expresses an action or event that occurred and was completed in the past in the dependent clause before the action of the main clause took place:

*Yo dudo que ellos me hayan entendido.  
Es imposible que él ya no haya llegado.*

*El profesor no cree que los alumnos  
hayan estudiado bastante.*

I doubt that they understood me.

It's impossible that he hasn't arrived  
yet.

The teacher doesn't believe that the  
students studied enough.

## FORMING THE PRESENT PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

The present perfect subjunctive is formed by joining the present subjunctive of the helping verb, *haber*, and the past participle of the action that took place, as shown in the following table:

### Forming the Present Perfect Subjunctive

Subject + Present Subjunctive of <i>Haber</i>	Sample Past Participle	English
<i>Yo haya</i>	<i>cantado.</i>	I (may) have sung.
<i>Tú hayas</i>	<i>respondido.</i>	You (may) have responded.
<i>Él (Ella, Ud.) haya</i>	<i>aplaudido.</i>	He (she, you) (may) have clapped.
<i>Nosotros hayamos</i>	<i>olvidado.</i>	We (may) have forgotten.
<i>Vosotros hayáis</i>	<i>reído.</i>	You (may) have laughed.
<i>Ellos (Ellas, Uds.) hayan</i>	<i>vuelto.</i>	They (you) (may) have returned.

#### Examples:

*Es natural que nosotros hayamos estudiado para el examen.*  
*No creo que ellas hayan llegado.*  
*Espero que Ud. haya enviado los documentos.*

It is natural that we studied for the test.  
 I don't believe they arrived.  
 I hope you sent the documents.

## USING THE PRESENT PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

The present perfect subjunctive is used in the same manner as the present subjunctive. The present perfect subjunctive, however, expresses what the subject may have done or what action or event may have occurred in the past before another action took place:

*Yo no creo que el tren haya llegado a tiempo.*  
*Es bueno que nosotros hayamos hecho una reservación en ese restaurante.*  
*Es extraño que tú no hayas traído su libro en clase.*

I don't believe that the train arrived on time.  
 It is good that we made a reservation in that restaurant.  
 It is strange that you didn't bring your book to class.



## The Pluperfect Subjunctive

The *pluperfect subjunctive* expresses an action or event that occurred and was completed in the past:

*El jefe esperaba que los obradores  
lo hubieran (hubiesen) entendido.*

*Yo no creía que él hubiera  
(hubiese) muerto.*

*Ella no estaba segura de que él la  
hubiera (hubiese) querido.*

The boss hoped that the workers had understood him.

I didn't believe that he had died.

She wasn't sure that he had loved her.

### FORMING THE PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

The pluperfect subjunctive is formed by joining the imperfect subjunctive of the helping verb, *haber*, and the past participle of the action that took place, as shown in the following table:

#### Forming the Pluperfect Subjunctive

Subject + Imperfect Subjunctive of <i>Haber</i>	Sample Past Participle	English
Yo <i>hubiera (hubiese)</i>	<i>cantado.</i>	I (might) have sung.
Tú <i>hubieras (hubieses)</i>	<i>respondido.</i>	You (might) have responded.
Él (Ella, Ud.) <i>hubiera (hubiese)</i>	<i>aplaidado.</i>	He(she, you) (might) have clapped.
Nosotros <i>hubiéramos (hubiésemos)</i>	<i>olvidado.</i>	We (might) have forgotten.
Vosotros <i>hubierais (hubieseis)</i>	<i>reído.</i>	You (might) have laughed.
Ellos(Ellas,Uds.) <i>hubieran (hubiesen)</i>	<i>vuelto.</i>	They (you) (might) have returned.

#### Examples:

*Ella insistía en que los niños no hubieran  
(hubiesen) tomado demasiado chocolate.*

*El médico lo examinó antes de que  
él le hubiera (hubiese) explicado  
sus síntomas.*

*Yo temía que Ud. no me hubiera  
(hubiese) dado bastante información.*

She insisted that the children hadn't eaten too much chocolate.

The doctor examined him before he had explained his symptoms.

I was afraid that you hadn't given me enough information.

## USING THE PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

The pluperfect subjunctive is used in the same manner as the imperfect subjunctive. The pluperfect subjunctive, however, expresses what the subject might have done or what action or event might have occurred in the past:

<i>¿Creería Ud. que ellos no hubieran (hubiesen) venido a la conferencia?</i>	Would you believe that they hadn't come to the conference?
<i>No pensaba que Ud. lo hubiera (hubiese) hablado.</i>	I didn't think that you had spoken to him.
<i>Buscábamos a una persona que hubiera (hubiese) hecho ese viaje.</i>	We were looking for a person who had taken that trip.

The pluperfect subjunctive is used after the expression *como si* to express “as if”:

<i>Me hablaban como si no hubiera entendido nada.</i>	They were speaking to me as if I hadn't understood anything.
---	--

The pluperfect subjunctive is used after *ojalá que* to express “I wish,” “I hope,” or “if only” when referring to a contrary-to-fact situation:

<i>Ojalá que ellos me hubieran (hubiesen) explicado el problema más pronto.</i>	If only they had explained the problem to me sooner.
---	--

## Sequence of Tenses in the Subjunctive

In Spanish, the tense of the verb in the main clause determines the correct subjunctive mood (present, present perfect, imperfect, or pluperfect) to use in the dependent clause. The following table shows the rules that are followed:

### Sequence of Tenses in the Subjunctive

Verb in Main Clause	Verb in Dependent Clause
Present indicative, present perfect, future, <i>or</i> command	Present subjunctive <i>or</i> present perfect subjunctive
Preterit, imperfect, conditional, <i>or</i> pluperfect	Imperfect subjunctive <i>or</i> pluperfect subjunctive

**Examples:**

<i>El profesor manda que los alumnos hablen solamente español.</i>	The teacher orders that the students speak only Spanish.
<i>El profesor ha mandado que los alumnos hablen solamente español.</i>	The teacher has ordered that the students speak only Spanish.
<i>El profesor mandará que los alumnos hablen solamente español.</i>	The teacher will order that the students speak only Spanish.
<i>Mande Ud. que los alumnos hablen solamente español.</i>	Order that the students speak only Spanish.
<i>No pienso que los alumnos hayan hablado solamente español.</i>	I don't think that the students have spoken only Spanish.
<i>El profesor mandó que los alumnos hablaran solamente español.</i>	The teacher ordered that the students speak only Spanish.
<i>El profesor mandaba que los alumnos hablaran solamente español.</i>	The teacher ordered (was ordering, used to order) that the students speak only Spanish.
<i>El profesor mandaría que los alumnos hablaran solamente español.</i>	The teacher would order that the students speak only Spanish.
<i>El profesor había mandado que los alumnos hablaran solamente español.</i>	The teacher had ordered that the students speak only Spanish.
<i>No pensaba que los alumnos hubieran (hubiesen) hablado solamente español.</i>	I didn't think that the students had spoken only Spanish.

## Conditional Sentences

---

A *conditional sentence* is composed of two clauses:

- A *si* ("if") clause
- A main or result clause

In any given sentence, the *si* clause may precede or follow the main clause. The sequence of tenses used in a conditional sentence depends on whether the real conditions or contrary-to-fact conditions exist in the sentence.

### REAL CONDITIONS

*Real conditions* describe situations that exist, that are certain, or that are likely to take place. When a real condition exists, the indicative (past, present, or future tense or the imperative) is used:

*Si tú me enviaste una carta,  
yo no la recibí.  
Yo iré a la piscina si hace buen tiempo.*

*Si tú me acompañaras, yo haré  
un viaje a México.  
Dígame si Uds. vienen.*

If you sent me a letter, I didn't  
receive it.  
I'll go to the pool if the weather is  
nice.  
If you will accompany me, I will take  
a trip to Mexico.  
Tell me if you are coming.

## CONTRARY-TO-FACT CONDITIONS

*Contrary-to-fact conditions* do not really exist or have not as yet occurred. When a contrary-to-fact condition exists in the present, the imperfect subjunctive (*-ra* or *-se* form) is used in the *si* clause, and the conditional or the imperfect subjunctive (the *-ra* form only) is used in the main or result clause. When a contrary-to-fact condition exists in the past, the pluperfect subjunctive (*-ra* or *-se* form) is used in the *si* clause, and the conditional perfect or the pluperfect subjunctive (*-ra* form only) is used in the main or result clause. The following table summarizes how the tenses are used:

### Contrary-to-Fact Conditions

	<b>Si Clause</b>	<b>Main or Result Clause</b>
<b>Present Time</b>	Imperfect subjunctive ( <i>-ra</i> or <i>-se</i> form)	Conditional <i>or</i> imperfect subjunctive ( <i>-ra</i> form only)
<b>Past Time</b>	Pluperfect subjunctive ( <i>-ra</i> or <i>-se</i> form)	Conditional perfect <i>or</i> pluperfect subjunctive ( <i>-ra</i> form only)

### Examples:

*Si yo trabajara (trabajase) mucho,  
yo ganaría (ganara) mucho dinero.  
Si yo hubiera (hubiese) trabajado  
mucho, yo habría (hubiera)  
ganado mucho dinero.*

If I worked (were to work) a lot, I  
would earn a lot of money.  
If I had worked (were to have worked)  
a lot, I would have earned a lot of  
money.

## The Perfect Infinitive

The *perfect infinitive* is used after a preposition (usually *por*) and is formed by adding a past participle to the infinitive of *haber*.

*Ella se enoja por no haber recibido el puesto.*

She becomes angry for not having received the job.

Él se puso enfermo por haber comido demasiado.  
comido demasiado.

He became sick for having eaten too much.

# THE IMPERATIVE

## Formal Commands

---

A *formal, or polite, command* addresses people who are older or unfamiliar to the speaker and to whom respect must be shown. In English, the subject of the command, “you,” is understood, and the pronoun is not used. In Spanish, the “you” subject may or may not be expressed. When the pronoun is not given, the verb ending identifies the subject. There are two formal commands in Spanish: one that uses the singular subject *Ud.* and one that uses the plural subject *Uds.*

### THE IMPERATIVE OF REGULAR VERBS

To form the *Ud.* or *Uds.* formal command, use the present subjunctive of the third person singular or plural of the verb indicating the action. The present subjunctive is formed as follows:

- Drop the final *-o* from the present tense *yo* form of the verb.
- For *-ar* infinitives, add *-e* for *Ud.* and *-en* for *Uds.*
- For *-er* or *-ir* infinitives, add *-a* for *Ud.* and *-an* for *Uds.*

A negative command requires *no* before the conjugated verb.

The following table shows how to form the imperative of regular verbs:

#### The Imperative of Regular Verbs

Infinitive	English	Affirmative	Negative	English
<i>hablar</i>	to speak	<i>hable(n)</i>	<i>no hable(n)</i>	(don't) speak
<i>correr</i>	to run	<i>corra(n)</i>	<i>no corra(n)</i>	(don't) run
<i>subir</i>	to go up	<i>suba(n)</i>	<i>no suba(n)</i>	(don't) go up

#### Examples:

*Hable (Ud.) más despacio, por favor.*

*No corran (Uds.)*

*Suba (Ud.) al segundo piso.*

Please speak more slowly.

Don't run.

Go up to the second floor.

## Proper Punctuation

When writing, to emphasize a command, place an inverted exclamation point at the beginning of the command and a regular exclamation point at the end of it:

<i>¡No coman (Uds.) tanto!</i>	Don't eat so much!
<i>¡Escuche (Ud.)!</i>	Listen!

## THE IMPERATIVE OF SPELLING-CHANGE VERBS

All spelling-change verbs, except for those ending in *-car*, *-gar*, and *-zar*, form the affirmative and negative polite imperative by using the present subjunctive *Ud.* and *Uds.* form of the verb. Take the *yo* form of the present, drop the final *-o*, and add the correct present subjunctive endings to form the *Ud.* and *Uds.* imperative, as shown in the following table:

### Formal Commands for *-er* and *-ir* Infinitive Spelling-Change Verbs

Infinitive	Yo Form of Present	Imperative	English
<i>convencer</i>	<i>convenzo</i>	<i>(no) convenza(n)</i>	(don't) convince
<i>desobedecer</i>	<i>desobedezco</i>	<i>(no) desobedezca(n)</i>	(don't) disobey
<i>recoger</i>	<i>recojo</i>	<i>(no) recoja(n)</i>	(don't) pick up
<i>distinguir</i>	<i>distingo</i>	<i>(no) distinga(n)</i>	(don't) distinguish
<i>exigir</i>	<i>exijo</i>	<i>(no) exija(n)</i>	(don't) demand
<i>fruncir</i>	<i>frunzo</i>	<i>(no) frunza(n)</i>	(don't) frown
<i>traducir</i>	<i>traduzco</i>	<i>(no) traduzca(n)</i>	(don't) translate

### Examples:

<i>¡No desobedezcan (Uds.) al profesor!</i>	Don't disobey the teacher!
<i>¡Recoja (Ud.) los papeles!</i>	Pick up the papers!
<i>¡Exija (Ud.) lo mejor!</i>	Demand the best!

To form the imperative of *-car*, *-gar*, and *-zar* spelling-change verbs, drop the *-é* from the *yo* form of the preterit and add *-e* or *-en* for *Ud.* and *Uds.*, respectively, as shown in the following table:

## Formal Commands for *-car*, *-gar*, and *-zar* Spelling-Change Verbs

Infinitive	Yo Form of Preterit	Imperative	English
<i>buscar</i>	<i>busqué</i>	(no) <i>busque(n)</i>	(don't) look (for)
<i>cruzar</i>	<i>crucé</i>	(no) <i>cruce(n)</i>	(don't) cross
<i>llegar</i>	<i>llegué</i>	(no) <i>llegue(n)</i>	(don't) arrive

### Examples:

<i>¡Busque (Ud.) el libro!</i>	Look for the book!
<i>¡No lleguen (Uds.) tarde!</i>	Don't arrive late!
<i>¡Crucen (Uds.) la calle!</i>	Cross the street!

## THE IMPERATIVE OF STEM-CHANGING VERBS

All stem-changing verbs form the affirmative and negative polite imperative by using the present subjunctive *Ud.* and *Uds.* form of the verb. Take the *yo* form of the present, drop the final *-o*, and add the correct present subjunctive endings to form the *Ud.* and *Uds.* imperative, as shown in the following table:

### Formal Commands for Stem-Changing Verbs

Infinitive	Yo Form of Present	Imperative	English
<i>cerrar</i>	<i>cierro</i>	(no) <i>cierre(n)</i>	(don't) close
<i>continuar</i>	<i>continúo</i>	(no) <i>continúe(n)</i>	(don't) continue
<i>enviar</i>	<i>envío</i>	(no) <i>envíe(n)</i>	(don't) send
<i>mostrar</i>	<i>muestro</i>	(no) <i>muestre(n)</i>	(don't) show
<i>encender</i>	<i>enciendo</i>	(no) <i>encienda(n)</i>	(don't) light
<i>envolver</i>	<i>envuelvo</i>	(no) <i>envuelva(n)</i>	(don't) wrap
<i>torcer</i>	<i>tuerzo</i>	(no) <i>tuerza(n)</i>	(don't) twist
<i>contribuir</i>	<i>contribuyo</i>	(no) <i>contribuya(n)</i>	(don't) contribute
<i>corregir</i>	<i>corrijo</i>	(no) <i>corrija(n)</i>	(don't) correct
<i>distinguir</i>	<i>distingo</i>	(no) <i>distinga(n)</i>	(don't) distinguish
<i>dormir</i>	<i>duermo</i>	(no) <i>duerma(n)</i>	(don't) sleep
<i>seguir</i>	<i>sigo</i>	(no) <i> siga(n)</i>	(don't) follow
<i>servir</i>	<i>sirvo</i>	(no) <i> sirva(n)</i>	(don't) serve
<i>sugerir</i>	<i>sugiero</i>	(no) <i> sugiera(n)</i>	(don't) suggest



**Examples:**

<i>¡No cierren (Uds.) las ventanas!</i>	Don't close the windows!
<i>¡Encienda (Ud.) la luz!</i>	Turn on the light!
<i>¡Siga (Ud.) hablando!</i>	Continue speaking!

**THE IMPERATIVE OF IRREGULAR VERBS**

All irregular verbs, including those that have irregular present tense *yo* forms, form the affirmative and negative polite imperative by using the present subjunctive *Ud.* and *Uds.* form of the verb. Take the *yo* form of the present, drop the final *-o*, and add the correct present subjunctive endings to form the *Ud.* and *Uds.* imperative, as shown in the following table:

**Formal Commands for Verbs with Irregular *Yo* Forms**

<b>Infinitive</b>	<b><i>Yo</i> Form of Present</b>	<b>Imperative</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>cab</i> er	<i>quepo</i>	<i>(no) quepa(n)</i>	(don't) fit
<i>caer</i>	<i>caigo</i>	<i>(no) caiga(n)</i>	(don't) fall
<i>decir</i>	<i>digo</i>	<i>(no) diga(n)</i>	(don't) tell, (don't) say
<i>hacer</i>	<i>hago</i>	<i>(no) haga(n)</i>	(don't) do, (don't) make
<i>oír</i>	<i>oigo</i>	<i>(no) oiga(n)</i>	(don't) hear
<i>poner</i>	<i>pongo</i>	<i>(no) ponga(n)</i>	(don't) put
<i>salir</i>	<i>salgo</i>	<i>(no) salga(n)</i>	(don't) leave, (don't) go out
<i>tener</i>	<i>tengo</i>	<i>(no) tenga(n)</i>	(don't) have
<i>traer</i>	<i>traigo</i>	<i>(no) traiga(n)</i>	(don't) bring
<i>valer</i>	<i>valgo</i>	<i>(no) valga(n)</i>	(don't) be worth
<i>venir</i>	<i>vengo</i>	<i>(no) venga(n)</i>	(don't) come
<i>ver</i>	<i>veo</i>	<i>(no) vea(n)</i>	(don't) see

**Examples:**

<i>¡No diga (Ud.) nada!</i>	Don't say anything!
<i>¡Salgan (Uds.)!</i>	Leave!
<i>¡Tráigame (Ud.) un vaso de agua!</i>	Bring me a glass of water!

The formal commands of irregular verbs must be memorized, as shown in the following table:

### Formal Commands of Irregular Verbs

Infinitive	Command	English
<i>dar</i>	(no) <i>dé (den)</i>	(don't) give
<i>estar</i>	(no) <i>esté(n)</i>	(don't) be
<i>ir</i>	(no) <i>vaya(n)</i>	(don't) go
<i>saber</i>	(no) <i>sepa(n)</i>	(don't) know
<i>ser</i>	(no) <i>sea(n)</i>	(don't) be

#### Examples:

*Déme (Ud.) una pluma, por favor.* Give me a pen, please.  
*No vayan (Uds.) al estadio.* Don't go to the stadium.  
*¡No sea (Ud.) tonto!* Don't be silly!

## Informal Commands

*Informal, or familiar, commands* are directed to friends, peers, family members, children, pets, or someone younger than the speaker. A *tú* command, which is an informal, or familiar, singular command, is used if only one person is being addressed. A *vosotros* command, which is an informal, or familiar, plural command, is used when more than one person is being addressed. *Vosotros* commands are used primarily in Spain, whereas *Uds.* commands are used in Latin American Spanish-speaking countries.

### INFORMAL TÚ COMMANDS

Affirmative informal *tú* commands are formed in a different way than negative informal *tú* commands, so it is important to pay attention to the type of command that is being given.

#### Affirmative Tú Commands of Most Verbs

Affirmative *tú* commands of most verbs (regular, spelling-change, and stem-changing verbs) are formed by dropping the final -s from the present tense *tú* form of the verb, which results in the third person singular (*él, ella, Ud.*) present tense form of the verb, as shown in the following tables:

## Affirmative *Tú* Commands of Regular Verbs

Infinitive	<i>Tú</i> Form of Present	Command	English
<i>ayudar</i>	<i>ayudas</i>	<i>ayuda (tú)</i>	help
<i>comer</i>	<i>comes</i>	<i>come (tú)</i>	eat
<i>abrir</i>	<i>abres</i>	<i>abre (tú)</i>	open

### Examples:

*Ayuda a tu hermana.*

Help your sister.

*Come frutas.*

Eat fruit.

*Abre la ventana.*

Open the window.

## Affirmative *Tú* Commands of Spelling-Change Verbs

Infinitive	<i>Tú</i> Form of Present	Command	English
<i>buscar</i>	<i>buscas</i>	<i>busca (tú)</i>	look for
<i>lanzar</i>	<i>lanzas</i>	<i>lanza (tú)</i>	throw
<i>llegar</i>	<i>llegas</i>	<i>llega (tú)</i>	arrive
<i>convencer</i>	<i>convences</i>	<i>convence (tú)</i>	convince
<i>desobedecer</i>	<i>desobedeces</i>	<i>desobedece (tú)</i>	disobey
<i>recoger</i>	<i>recoges</i>	<i>recoge (tú)</i>	pick up
<i>distinguir</i>	<i>distingues</i>	<i>distingue (tú)</i>	distinguish
<i>exigir</i>	<i>exiges</i>	<i>exige (tú)</i>	demand
<i>fruncir</i>	<i>frunces</i>	<i>frunce (tú)</i>	frown
<i>traducir</i>	<i>traduces</i>	<i>traduce (tú)</i>	translate

### Examples:

*Recoge el periódico.*

Pick up the newspaper.

*Traduce esta frase.*

Translate that sentence.

*Distingue entre lo bueno y lo malo.*

Distinguish between good and evil.

## Affirmative *Tú* Commands of Stem-Changing Verbs

Infinitive	<i>Tú</i> Form of Present	Command	English
<i>cerrar</i>	<i>cierras</i>	<i>cierra (tú)</i>	close
<i>continuar</i>	<i>continúas</i>	<i>continúa (tú)</i>	continue
<i>enviar</i>	<i>envías</i>	<i>envía (tú)</i>	send
<i>mostrar</i>	<i>muestras</i>	<i>muestra (tú)</i>	show
<i>encender</i>	<i>enciendes</i>	<i>enciende (tú)</i>	light
<i>envolver</i>	<i>envuelves</i>	<i>envuelve (tú)</i>	wrap
<i>torcer</i>	<i>tuerces</i>	<i>tuerce (tú)</i>	twist
<i>contribuir</i>	<i>contribuyes</i>	<i>contribuye (tú)</i>	contribute
<i>corregir</i>	<i>corriges</i>	<i>corrige (tú)</i>	correct
<i>dormir</i>	<i>duermes</i>	<i>duerme (tú)</i>	sleep
<i>seguir</i>	<i>sigues</i>	<i>sigue (tú)</i>	follow
<i>servir</i>	<i>sirves</i>	<i>sirve (tú)</i>	serve
<i>sugerir</i>	<i>sugieres</i>	<i>sugiere (tú)</i>	suggest

### Examples:

*Cierra la caja.*

Close the box.

*Continúa escribiendo.*

Continue writing.

*Sirve carne.*

Serve meat.

## Affirmative *Tú* Commands of Irregular Verbs

A few irregular verbs have irregular affirmative informal command forms, as shown in the following table:

### Affirmative *Tú* Commands of Irregular Verbs

Infinitive	Irregular Command	English
<i>decir</i>	<i>di (tú)</i>	say, tell
<i>hacer</i>	<i>haz (tú)</i>	do, make
<i>ir</i>	<i>ve (tú)</i>	go
<i>poner</i>	<i>pon (tú)</i>	put
<i>salir</i>	<i>sal (tú)</i>	leave, go out

(continues)

## Affirmative *Tú* Commands of Irregular Verbs (*continued*)

Infinitive	Irregular Command	English
<i>ser</i>	<i>sé (tú)</i>	be
<i>tener</i>	<i>ten (tú)</i>	have, be
<i>valer</i>	<i>val (tú)</i>	be worth
<i>venir</i>	<i>ven (tú)</i>	come

### Examples:

*Di lo que vas a hacer.*

Say what you are going to do.

*Ten cuidado.*

Be careful.

*Ven conmigo.*

Come with me.

## *Tú* Commands

When issuing a singular informal command, the pronoun *tú* is generally not used in the sentence:

*Repíte tu nombre, por favor.*

Repeat your name, please.

*No pagues la cuenta.*

Don't pay the bill.

Also note that the singular informal commands for *ver* ("to see") and *ir* ("to go") are identical:

*Ve esa película.*

See that film.

*Ve a ese teatro.*

Go to that theater.

## Negative *Tú* Commands of Most Verbs

All verbs (regular, spelling-change, and stem-changing verbs) use the *tú* form of the present subjunctive for the negative *tú* commands, as shown in the following tables:

### Negative *Tú* Commands of Regular Verbs

Infinitive	<i>Tú</i> Form of Subjunctive/Command	English
<i>ayudar</i>	<i>no ayudes</i>	don't help
<i>comer</i>	<i>no comas</i>	don't eat
<i>abrir</i>	<i>no abras</i>	don't open

**Examples:**

*No ayudes a tu hermana.*

Don't help your sister.

*No comas frutas.*

Don't eat fruit.

*No abras la ventana.*

Don't open the window.

**Negative Tú Commands of Spelling-Change Verbs**

<b>Infinitive</b>	<b>Tú Form of Subjunctive/Command</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>buscar</i>	<i>no busques</i>	don't look for
<i>lanzar</i>	<i>no lances</i>	don't throw
<i>llegar</i>	<i>no llegues</i>	don't arrive
<i>convencer</i>	<i>no convenzas</i>	don't convince
<i>desobedecer</i>	<i>no desobedezcas</i>	don't disobey
<i>recoger</i>	<i>no recojas</i>	don't pick up
<i>distinguir</i>	<i>no distingas</i>	don't distinguish
<i>exigir</i>	<i>no exijas</i>	don't demand
<i>fruncir</i>	<i>no frunzas</i>	don't frown
<i>traducir</i>	<i>no traduzcas</i>	don't translate

**Examples:**

*No recojas el periódico.*

Don't pick up the newspaper.

*No traduzcas esta frase.*

Don't translate that sentence.

*No distingas entre lo bueno y lo malo.*

Don't distinguish between good and evil.

**Negative Tú Commands of Stem-Changing Verbs**

<b>Infinitive</b>	<b>Tú Form of Subjunctive/Command</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>cerrar</i>	<i>no cierres</i>	don't close
<i>continuar</i>	<i>no continúes</i>	don't continue
<i>enviar</i>	<i>no envíes</i>	don't send
<i>mostrar</i>	<i>no muestres</i>	don't show
<i>encender</i>	<i>no enciendas</i>	don't light
<i>envolver</i>	<i>no envuelvas</i>	don't wrap
<i>torcer</i>	<i>no tuerzas</i>	don't twist

*(continues)*

## Negative *Tú* Commands of Stem-Changing Verbs (*continued*)

Infinitive	<i>Tú</i> Form of Subjunctive/Command	English
<i>contribuir</i>	<i>no contribuyas</i>	don't contribute
<i>corregir</i>	<i>no corrijas</i>	don't correct
<i>dormir</i>	<i>no duermas</i>	don't sleep
<i>seguir</i>	<i>no sigas</i>	don't follow
<i>servir</i>	<i>no sirvas</i>	don't serve
<i>sugerir</i>	<i>no sugieras</i>	don't suggest

### Examples:

*No cierres la caja.*

Don't close the box.

*No continúes escribiendo.*

Don't continue writing.

*No sirvas carne.*

Don't serve meat.

## Negative *Tú* Commands of Irregular Verbs

The few irregular verbs that have irregular affirmative informal command forms have regular negative command formation in that they use the *tú* form of the present subjunctive:

### Negative *Tú* Commands of Irregular Verbs

Infinitive	Irregular Command	English
<i>decir</i>	<i>no digas</i>	don't say, don't tell
<i>hacer</i>	<i>no hagas</i>	don't do, don't make
<i>ir</i>	<i>no vayas</i>	don't go
<i>poner</i>	<i>no pongas</i>	don't put
<i>salir</i>	<i>no salgas</i>	don't leave, don't go out
<i>ser</i>	<i>no seas</i>	don't be
<i>tener</i>	<i>no tengas</i>	don't have, don't be
<i>valer</i>	<i>no valgas</i>	don't be worth
<i>venir</i>	<i>no vengas</i>	don't come

### Examples:

*No digas lo que vas a hacer.*

Don't say what you are going to do.

*No tengas cuidado.*

Don't be careful.

*No vengas conmigo.*

Don't come with me.

## INFORMAL VOSOTROS COMMANDS

Affirmative informal *vosotros* commands are formed in a different way than negative informal *vosotros* commands, so it is important to pay attention to the type of command that is being given.

### Affirmative *Vosotros* Commands of All Verbs

Affirmative *vosotros* commands of all verbs (regular, spelling-change, and stem-changing verbs) are formed by dropping the final *-r* from the infinitive of the verb and adding *-d*, as shown in the following tables:

#### Affirmative *Vosotros* Commands of Regular Verbs

Infinitive	<i>Vosotros</i> Command	English
<i>ayudar</i>	<i>ayudad (vosotros)</i>	help
<i>comer</i>	<i>comed (vosotros)</i>	eat
<i>abrir</i>	<i>abrid (vosotros)</i>	open

#### Examples:

<i>Ayudad a vuestra hermana.</i>	Help your sister.
<i>Comed frutas.</i>	Eat fruit.
<i>Abrid la ventana.</i>	Open the window.

#### Affirmative *Vosotros* Commands of Spelling-Change Verbs

Infinitive	Command	English
<i>buscar</i>	<i>buscad (vosotros)</i>	look for
<i>lanzar</i>	<i>lanzad (vosotros)</i>	throw
<i>llegar</i>	<i>llegad (vosotros)</i>	arrive
<i>convencer</i>	<i>convenced (vosotros)</i>	convince
<i>desobedecer</i>	<i>desobedeced (vosotros)</i>	disobey
<i>recoger</i>	<i>recoged (vosotros)</i>	pick up
<i>distinguir</i>	<i>distinguid (vosotros)</i>	distinguish
<i>exigir</i>	<i>exigid (vosotros)</i>	demand
<i>fruncir</i>	<i>fruncid (vosotros)</i>	frown
<i>traducir</i>	<i>traducid (vosotros)</i>	translate



**Examples:***Recoged el periódico.**Traducid esta frase.**Distinguid entre lo bueno y lo malo.*

Pick up the newspaper.

Translate that sentence.

Distinguish between good and evil.

**Affirmative *Vosotros* Commands of Stem-Changing Verbs**

Infinitive	Command	English
<i>cerrar</i>	<i>cerrad (vosotros)</i>	close
<i>continuar</i>	<i>continudad (vosotros)</i>	continue
<i>enviar</i>	<i>enviad (vosotros)</i>	send
<i>mostrar</i>	<i>mostrad (vosotros)</i>	show
<i>encender</i>	<i>encended (vosotros)</i>	light
<i>envolver</i>	<i>envolved (vosotros)</i>	wrap
<i>torcer</i>	<i>torced (vosotros)</i>	twist
<i>contribuir</i>	<i>contribuid (vosotros)</i>	contribute
<i>corregir</i>	<i>corrigid (vosotros)</i>	correct
<i>dormir</i>	<i>dormid (vosotros)</i>	sleep
<i>seguir</i>	<i>seguid (vosotros)</i>	follow
<i>servir</i>	<i>servid (vosotros)</i>	serve
<i>sugerir</i>	<i>sugerid (vosotros)</i>	suggest

**Examples:***Cerrad la caja.**Continudad escribiendo.**Servid carne.*

Close the box.

Continue writing.

Serve meat.

**Affirmative *Vosotros* Commands of Irregular Verbs**

Irregular verbs form their *vosotros* commands by dropping the final *-r* from the infinitive and adding *-d*:

## Affirmative *Vosotros* Commands of Irregular Verbs

Infinitive	Irregular Command	English
<i>decir</i>	<i>decid (vosotros)</i>	say, tell
<i>hacer</i>	<i>haced (vosotros)</i>	do, make
<i>ir</i>	<i>id (vosotros)</i>	go
<i>poner</i>	<i>poned (vosotros)</i>	put
<i>salir</i>	<i>salid (vosotros)</i>	leave, go out
<i>ser</i>	<i>sed (vosotros)</i>	be
<i>tener</i>	<i>tened (vosotros)</i>	have, be
<i>valer</i>	<i>valed (vosotros)</i>	be worth
<i>venir</i>	<i>venid (vosotros)</i>	come

### Examples:

*Decid lo que vais a hacer.*

Say what you are going to do.

*Tened cuidado.*

Be careful.

*Venid conmigo.*

Come with me.

## Negative *Vosotros* Commands of Most Verbs

All verbs (regular, spelling-change, and stem-changing verbs) use the *vosotros* form of the present subjunctive for the negative *vosotros* commands, as shown in the following tables:

### Negative *Vosotros* Commands of Regular Verbs

Infinitive	<i>Vosotros</i> Form of Subjunctive/Command	English
<i>ayudar</i>	<i>no ayudéis</i>	don't help
<i>comer</i>	<i>no comáis</i>	don't eat
<i>abrir</i>	<i>no abráis</i>	don't open

### Examples:

*No ayudéis a vuestra hermana.*

Don't help your sister.

*No comáis frutas.*

Don't eat fruit.

*No abráis la ventana.*

Don't open the window.

## Negative *Vosotros* Commands of Spelling-Change Verbs

Infinitive	<i>Vosotros</i> Form of Subjunctive/Command	English
<i>buscar</i>	<i>no busquéis</i>	don't look for
<i>lanzar</i>	<i>no lancéis</i>	don't throw
<i>llegar</i>	<i>no lleguéis</i>	don't arrive
<i>convencer</i>	<i>no convenzáis</i>	don't convince
<i>desobedecer</i>	<i>no desobedezcáis</i>	don't disobey
<i>recoger</i>	<i>no recojáis</i>	don't pick up
<i>distinguir</i>	<i>no distingáis</i>	don't distinguish
<i>exigir</i>	<i>no exijáis</i>	don't demand
<i>fruncir</i>	<i>no frunzáis</i>	don't frown
<i>traducir</i>	<i>no traduzcáis</i>	don't translate

### Examples:

*No recojáis el periódico.*

Don't pick up the newspaper.

*No traduzcáis esta frase.*

Don't translate that sentence.

*No distingáis entre lo bueno y lo malo.*

Don't distinguish between good and evil.

## Negative *Vosotros* Commands of Stem-Changing Verbs

Infinitive	<i>Vosotros</i> Form of Subjunctive/Command	English
<i>cerrar</i>	<i>no cerréis</i>	don't close
<i>continuar</i>	<i>no continuéis</i>	don't continue
<i>enviar</i>	<i>no enviéis</i>	don't send
<i>mostrar</i>	<i>no mostréis</i>	don't show
<i>encender</i>	<i>no encendáis</i>	don't light
<i>envolver</i>	<i>no envolváis</i>	don't wrap
<i>torcer</i>	<i>no torzáis</i>	don't twist
<i>contribuir</i>	<i>no contribuyáis</i>	don't contribute
<i>corregir</i>	<i>no corrigáis</i>	don't correct
<i>dormir</i>	<i>no dormáis</i>	don't sleep
<i>seguir</i>	<i>no sigáis</i>	don't follow

<b>Infinitive</b>	<b>Vosotros Form of Subjunctive/Command</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>servir</i>	<i>no serváis</i>	don't serve
<i>sugerir</i>	<i>no sugeráis</i>	don't suggest

**Examples:**

*No cerráis la caja.*

Don't close the box.

*No contnuéis escribiendo.*

Don't continue writing.

*No serváis carne.*

Don't serve meat.

## Negative Vosotros Commands of Irregular Verbs

Irregular verbs have regular negative command formation in that they use the *vosotros* form of the present subjunctive:

### Negative Vosotros Commands of Irregular Verbs

<b>Infinitive</b>	<b>Irregular Command</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>decir</i>	<i>no digáis</i>	don't say, don't tell
<i>hacer</i>	<i>no hagáis</i>	don't do, don't make
<i>ir</i>	<i>no vayáis</i>	don't go
<i>poner</i>	<i>no pongáis</i>	don't put
<i>salir</i>	<i>no salgáis</i>	don't leave, don't go out
<i>ser</i>	<i>no seáis</i>	don't be
<i>tener</i>	<i>no tengáis</i>	don't have, don't be
<i>valer</i>	<i>no valgáis</i>	don't be worth
<i>venir</i>	<i>no vengáis</i>	don't come

**Examples:**

*No digáis lo que vais a hacer.*

Don't say what you are going to do.

*No tengáis cuidado.*

Don't be careful.

*No vengáis conmigo.*

Don't come with me.

## Vosotros Commands

In a plural informal command, the pronoun *vosotros* is generally not used in the sentence:

<i>Repetid vuestro nombre, por favor.</i>	Repeat your name, please.
<i>No pagáis la cuenta.</i>	Don't pay the bill.

## Indirect Commands

*Indirect commands* are expressed by *Que* (“Let”) and the third person singular and plural present subjunctive:

<i>Que prepare Elena el postre.</i>	Let Elena prepare the dessert.
<i>Que hablen (ellos).</i>	Let them speak.
<i>Que no lo vean.</i>	Let them not see it.
<i>Que se acueste temprano.</i>	Let him go to bed early.

There are two ways to express “Let us” or “Let’s”:

- Use *vamos a* + infinitive (or noun) in the affirmative or *no vayamos a* + infinitive (or noun) in the negative:

<i>Vamos a jugar a la pelota.</i>	Let's play ball.
<i>Vamos al banco.</i>	Let's go to the bank.
<i>No vayamos a sentarnos.</i>	Let's not sit down.
<i>No vayamos al cine.</i>	Let's not go to the movies.

- Use the *nosotros* form of the subjunctive:

<i>Comamos.</i>	Let's eat.
<i>Bebamos.</i>	Let's drink.

## OBJECT PRONOUNS WITH COMMANDS

Direct object, indirect object, and reflexive pronouns are attached to the verb in an affirmative command and precede the verb in a negative command:

<i>Léelo.</i>	Read it.
<i>No lo leas.</i>	Don't read it.
<i>Pídale su número de teléfono.</i>	Ask her for her phone number.

*No le pida su dirección.*  
*Siéntense.*  
*No se sienten.*

Don't ask her for her address.  
 Sit down.  
 Don't sit down.

## Reflexive “Let’s”

With a reflexive verb, the affirmative “Let’s” is expressed by dropping the final -s of the *nosotros* ending before adding the reflexive pronoun [see Position of Reflexive Pronouns in Part XIII]:

<i>Levantémonos.</i>	Let’s get up.
<i>No nos levantemos.</i>	Let’s not get up.

With a reflexive verb, the affirmative *vosotros* command drops the final -d before adding the reflexive pronouns [see Position of Reflexive Pronouns in Part XIII]. When -os is added to an -ir reflexive verb [see Position of Reflexive Pronouns in Part XIII], an accent is added before the -os ending:

<i>Sentaos.</i>	Sit.
<i>No os sentáis.</i>	Don’t sit.
<i>Desvestíos.</i>	Undress.
<i>No os desvistáis.</i>	Don’t undress.

With indirect commands, any object pronoun always precedes the verb:

<i>Que lo haga Jorge.</i>	Let Jorge do it.
<i>Que no lo haga Jorge.</i>	Let Jorge not do it.
<i>Que me hablen ellos.</i>	Let them speak to me.
<i>Que no me hablen ellos.</i>	Let them not speak to me.
<i>Que se sienten aquí.</i>	Let them sit here.
<i>Que no se sienten aquí.</i>	Let them not sit here.

## Accents

In an affirmative command, when one pronoun is attached to the conjugated verb form, count back three vowels from the end and add an accent:

*Póngase (Ud.) un abrigo.* Put on an overcoat.

*¡Díganlos (Uds.) la verdad!* Tell us the truth!

This is done to maintain correct stress and pronunciation.

If the command form has only one syllable, no accent is needed:

*Ponlo en la mesa.* Put it on the table.

*Dime tu dirección.* Give me your address.

Note that two vowels that are pronounced as one sound (diphthongs) generally count as one vowel, and the accent is placed on the second vowel in the diphthong. For instance, in the following example, the accent is placed on the *e* of the *ie* diphthong:

*Siéntese.* Sit.

An exception to this rule occurs with the command form of the verb *traer* ("to bring"):

*Tráiganlo.* Bring it.

When two pronouns are attached to one another, count back four vowels from the end and add an accent:

*Dígamelo.* Tell it to me.

*Muéstrenoslos.* Show them to us.

Again, note the exception with the verb *traer* ("to bring"):

*Tráiganoslos.* Bring them to us.

# INFINITIVES

## Using Infinitives

---

The *infinitive* is the form of the verb before it is conjugated and that expresses “to” + an action. An infinitive may be used as a noun and, less frequently, as an adjective.

### INFINITIVES AS NOUNS

In Spanish, an infinitive may be used as the subject of a sentence, as the object of a verb, as a predicate noun, or as the object of a preposition.

#### The Infinitive as the Subject

An infinitive is used as the subject of a sentence where English uses a gerund:

*Estudiar no es muy divertido.*

Studying isn't a lot of fun.

*Fumar es peligroso.*

Smoking is dangerous.

The use of the definite article *el* before the infinitive is optional:

*(La) Avaricia es un vicio.*

Greed is a vice.

*(El) Trabajar es necesario.*

Working is necessary.

#### Negating an Infinitive

An infinitive is negated by placing *no* before it and any other negative words after it:

*Es importante no olvidar esa fecha.* It is important not to forget that date.

*Ella decide no cocinar nada.* She decides not to cook anything.



## The Infinitive as the Object of a Verb

An infinitive may be used as the direct object of a verb:

*Quiero ir a la fiesta.*

I want to go to the party.

*Espera recibir el premio.*

She hopes to receive the prize.

Verbs that are followed directly by an infinitive used as an object are shown in the following table:

### Verbs Followed Directly by an Infinitive

Verb	English
<i>conseguir</i>	to succeed in, to manage to
<i>creer</i>	to think, to believe
<i>deber</i>	should, ought to
<i>decidir</i>	to decide
<i>dejar</i>	to let, to allow
<i>desear</i>	to want, to wish
<i>esperar</i>	to hope, to expect, to wait
<i>hacer</i>	to make
<i>impedir</i>	to impede, to prevent from
<i>intentar</i>	to try to
<i>lograr</i>	to succeed in
<i>mandar</i>	to order
<i>merecer</i>	to deserve, to merit
<i>necesitar</i>	to need, to have to
<i>oír</i>	to hear
<i>olvidar</i>	to forget
<i>parecer</i>	to seem
<i>pensar</i>	to intend
<i>permitir</i>	to permit
<i>poder</i>	to be able to, can
<i>preferir</i>	to prefer

Verb	English
<i>pretender</i>	to attempt
<i>procurar</i>	to try to
<i>prohibir</i>	to prohibit
<i>prometer</i>	to promise
<i>querer</i>	to want
<i>recordar</i>	to remember
<i>saber</i>	to know how to
<i>sentir</i>	to regret, to be sorry
<i>soler</i>	to be used to, to be accustomed to
<i>temer</i>	to fear
<i>ver</i>	to see

**Examples:**

<i>Ella piensa hacer un viaje.</i>	She intends to take a trip.
<i>Yo prefiero quedarme en casa.</i>	I prefer to stay home.
<i>Nosotros no sabemos esquíar.</i>	We don't know how to ski.

**The Infinitive as a Predicate Noun**

A *predicate noun* is a word or group of words used to complete the sense of the subject—it refers back to and modifies the subject:

<i>Su problema era decirle la verdad.</i>	Her problem was to tell him the truth.
<i>Mi sueño es llegar a ser médico.</i>	My dream is to become a doctor.

**The Infinitive as the Object of a Preposition**

An infinitive may be used as the object of the following prepositions:

- *a* (“to,” “at”):

<i>Vamos a bailar.</i>	Let's go dancing.
------------------------	-------------------

- *al* (“upon”):

<i>Al llegar a casa, leí mi correo electrónico.</i>	Upon arriving home, I read my e-mail.
---	---------------------------------------

- *antes de* (“before”):

<i>Te llamo antes de venir.</i>	I'll call you before coming.
---------------------------------	------------------------------

- *con* (“with,” “to,” “of,” “by”):  
*No gana nada con mentir.* You gain nothing by lying.
- *de* (“of,” “to”):  
*Tengo ganas de divertirme.* I feel like having a good time.
- *después de* (“after”):  
*Fui a casa después de ir al mercado.* I went home after going to the market.
- *en* (“in,” “on,” “of”):  
*Insistía en tomar el tren.* He insisted on taking the train.
- *en lugar de* (“instead of”) and *en vez de* (“instead of”):  
*Mira la televisión en vez de estudiar.* He watches television instead of studying.  
*Nos quedamos en casa en lugar de salir.* We stay home instead of going out.
- *hasta* (“until”):  
*Ella trabajó hasta dormirse.* She worked until falling asleep.
- *para* (“for,” “in order to”):  
*Va a la tienda para comprar un regalo.* She goes to the store to buy a gift.
- *sin* (“without”):  
*Ellos salieron sin decir nada.* They went out without saying a word.

Certain verbs in Spanish require the preposition *a*, *de*, *en*, or *con* before an infinitive, as shown in the following tables:

### Verbs That Require *a* Before the Infinitive

Verb	English
<i>acercarse</i>	to approach
<i>acostumbrarse</i>	to become accustomed
<i>animar</i>	to encourage
<i>aprender</i>	to learn
<i>apresurarse</i>	to hurry

<b>Verb</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>aspirar</i>	to aspire
<i>atreverse</i>	to dare
<i>ayudar</i>	to help
<i>comenzar</i>	to begin
<i>convidar</i>	to invite
<i>correr</i>	to run
<i>decidirse</i>	to decide
<i>dedicarse</i>	to devote oneself
<i>disponerse</i>	to get ready
<i>echarse</i>	to lie down, to move aside
<i>empezar</i>	to begin
<i>enseñar</i>	to teach
<i>invitar</i>	to invite
<i>ir</i>	to go
<i>llegar</i>	to succeed in
<i>negarse</i>	to refuse
<i>obligar</i>	to force
<i>oponerse</i>	to oppose
<i>ponerse</i>	to begin
<i>prepararse</i>	to prepare oneself
<i>principiar</i>	to begin
<i>regresar</i>	to return
<i>resignarse</i>	to resign oneself
<i>salir</i>	to go out
<i>venir</i>	to come
<i>volver</i>	to do something (again)

**Examples:**

*La madre le enseña a su hija a nadar.*  
*Vamos a reunirnos a las seis.*  
*Ellos se preparan a ir al baile.*

The mother teaches her daughter to swim.  
 We are going to meet at six o'clock.  
 They prepare themselves to go to the dance.

## Verbs That Require *de* Before the Infinitive

Verb	English
<i>acabar</i>	to have just
<i>acordarse</i>	to remember to
<i>alegrarse</i>	to be glad
<i>arrepentirse</i>	to regret
<i>cansarse</i>	to tire
<i>cesar</i>	to stop
<i>dejar</i>	to stop
<i>disfrutar</i>	to enjoy
<i>encargarse</i>	to take charge of
<i>gozar</i>	to enjoy
<i>ocuparse</i>	to deal with
<i>olvidarse</i>	to forget
<i>terminar</i>	to stop
<i>tratar de</i>	to try to

### Examples:

*Acabo de telefonarte.*

*Ellos no dejaron de reír.*

*Ella terminó de escribir la composición.*

I just called you.

They didn't stop laughing.

She finished writing the composition.

## Verbs That Require *en* Before the Infinitive

Verb	English
<i>consentir</i>	to consent to
<i>consistir</i>	to consist of
<i>convenir</i>	to agree to
<i>empeñarse</i>	to insist on
<i>insistir</i>	to insist on
<i>pensar</i>	to think (to reflect)
<i>tardar</i>	to delay in

**Examples:**

*¿Consentirías en acompañarme  
al centro?*

*Se empeñó en comprar esta falda roja.*

*¿En qué piensas?*

Would you agree to accompany me to  
the city?

She insisted on buying that red skirt.

What are you thinking about?

**Verbs That Require *con* Before the Infinitive**

Verb	English
<i>amenazar</i>	to threaten
<i>conformarse</i>	to be satisfied with
<i>contar</i>	to count on
<i>soñar</i>	to dream of

**Examples:**

*Ellos amenazaron con no pagar  
la factura.*

*El equipo cuenta con ganar  
el campeonato.*

*Ella sueña con ir a la fiesta.*

They threatened not to pay the bill.

The team counts on winning the  
championship.

She dreams about going to the party.

**Using Infinitives and the Subjunctive Correctly**

In the construction verb + preposition + infinitive, there are generally two clauses, each containing the same subject. If, however, there are two clauses with two different subjects, *que* is required after the preposition, and the subjunctive is used instead of the infinitive:

*Consiente en vernos.*

He agrees to see us.

*Consiente en que nosotros lo veamos.*

He agrees that we can see him.

*Ella fue al banco antes de ir al  
supermercado.*

She went to the bank before going to  
the supermarket.

*Ella fue al banco antes de que su  
esposo fuera al supermercado.*

She went to the bank before her  
husband went to the supermarket.

## INFINITIVES AS ADJECTIVES

An infinitive can be used as an adjective when it is used to modify a noun:

*Tengo mucho trabajo que hacer.*      I have a lot of work to do.

In this example, the infinitive *hacer* (“to do”) is describing the noun *trabajo* (“work”).

## Derivations from Infinitives

---

Some nouns or adjectives are derived from infinitives.

### NOUNS DERIVED FROM INFINITIVES

Several categories of noun endings are derived from infinitives.

#### Nouns from Verb Stems + **-o** or **-a**

Some *-ar* infinitives drop their ending and add *-o* or *-a* to form nouns, as shown in the following table:

#### Nouns from Stem + **-o** or **-a**

Infinitive	English	Noun	English
<i>abusar</i>	to abuse	<i>el abuso</i>	abuse
<i>acentuar</i>	to accentuate	<i>el acento</i>	accent
<i>ayudar</i>	to help	<i>la ayuda</i>	help
<i>bañar</i>	to bathe	<i>el baño</i>	bathroom
<i>besar</i>	to kiss	<i>el beso</i>	kiss
<i>caminar</i>	to walk	<i>el camino</i>	path
<i>causar</i>	to cause	<i>la causa</i>	cause
<i>dañar</i>	to harm	<i>el daño</i>	harm
<i>descansar</i>	to rest	<i>el descanso</i>	rest
<i>faltar</i>	to lack	<i>la falta</i>	mistake

#### Examples:

*Necesito ayuda.*

*Dame un beso.*

*Haces una falta.*

I need help.

Give me a kiss.

You are making a mistake.

## Nouns That End in **-ción**

Some *-ar* infinitives drop their final *-r* and add *-ción* to form nouns, as shown in the following table:

### Nouns That End in **-ción**

Infinitive	English	Noun	English
<i>afirmar</i>	to affirm	<i>la afirmación</i>	affirmation
<i>alimentar</i>	to feed	<i>la alimentación</i>	feeding
<i>animar</i>	to animate	<i>la animación</i>	animation
<i>circular</i>	to circulate	<i>la circulación</i>	circulation, traffic
<i>combinar</i>	to combine	<i>la combinación</i>	combination
<i>declarar</i>	to declare	<i>la declaración</i>	declaration
<i>destinar</i>	to destine	<i>la destinación</i>	destination
<i>fascinar</i>	to fascinate	<i>la fascinación</i>	fascination
<i>limitar</i>	to limit	<i>la limitación</i>	limitation
<i>reconciliar</i>	to reconcile	<i>la reconciliación</i>	reconciliation

### Examples:

*Hablaban con animación.*

They were speaking with animation.

*Hay mucha circulación.*

There's a lot of traffic.

*Miran el espectáculo  
con fascinación.*

They watch the spectacle with  
fascination.

## Nouns That End in **-miento**

Some *-ar*, *-er*, and *-ir* infinitives drop their final *-r* and add *-miento* to form nouns, as shown in the following table:

### Nouns That End in **-miento**

Infinitive	English	Noun	English
<i>acercar</i>	to approach	<i>el acercamiento</i>	approach
<i>alojar</i>	to accommodate	<i>el alojamiento</i>	accommodation
<i>compartir</i>	to share	<i>el compartimiento</i>	compartment

(continues)



## Nouns That End in *-miento* (continued)

Infinitive	English	Noun	English
<i>comportar</i>	to behave	<i>el comportamiento</i>	behavior
<i>embotellar</i>	to bottle	<i>el embotellamiento</i>	traffic jam
<i>enfrentar</i>	to set against	<i>el enfrentamiento</i>	confrontation
<i>enterrar</i>	to bury	<i>el enterramiento</i>	burial
<i>equipar</i>	to equip	<i>el equipamiento</i>	equipment
<i>mover</i>	to move	<i>el movimiento</i>	movement (motion)
<i>sufrir</i>	to suffer	<i>el sufrimiento</i>	suffering

### Examples:

*Les dieron alojamiento.*

They put them up (gave them accommodations).

*Su comportamiento me sorprende.*

His behavior surprises me.

*El mecánico puso en movimiento el motor.* The mechanic put the motor in motion.

## Verbs That End in *-cer*

Verbs that end in *-cer* and the verb *mover* change the final *-e* from the infinitive ending to *-i* before adding *-miento*:

Verb	English	Noun	English
<i>conocer</i>	to know	<i>el conocimiento</i>	acquaintance
<i>crecer</i>	to grow	<i>el crecimiento</i>	growth
<i>establecer</i>	to establish	<i>el establecimiento</i>	establishment

## Nouns That End in *-encia*

Some *-ar*, *-er*, and *-ir* infinitives drop their ending and add *-encia* to form nouns, as shown in the following table (note that *c* is followed by *i* and that *t* becomes *c* where necessary to maintain the proper sound):

## Nouns That End in *-encia*

Infinitive	English	Noun	English
<i>coexistir</i>	to coexist	<i>la coexistencia</i>	coexistence
<i>coincidir</i>	to coincide	<i>la coincidencia</i>	coincidence
<i>competer</i>	to compete	<i>la competencia</i>	competence
<i>complacer</i>	to please	<i>la complacencia</i>	pleasure
<i>corresponder</i>	to correspond	<i>la correspondencia</i>	correspondence
<i> depender</i>	to depend	<i>la dependencia</i>	dependence
<i>impacientar</i>	to grow impatient	<i>la impaciencia</i>	impatience
<i>inferir</i>	to infer	<i>la inferencia</i>	inference
<i>subsistir</i>	to subsist	<i>la subsistencia</i>	subsistence
<i>sugerir</i>	to suggest	<i>la sugerencia</i>	suggestion

### Examples:

*No dudo su competencia.*

I don't doubt your competence.

*Habla con impaciencia.*

He speaks impatiently.

*No nos gustan sus sugerencias.*

We don't like their suggestions.

## Nouns That End in *-ante* or *-iente*

Some *-ar*, *-er*, and *-ir* infinitives drop their ending and add *-ante* (for *-ar* verbs) or *-iente* (for *-er* and *-ir* verbs) to form nouns that express "one who," as shown in the following table:

### Nouns That End in *-ante* or *-iente*

Infinitive	English	Noun	English
<i>caminar</i>	to walk	<i>caminante</i>	one who walks
<i>corresponder</i>	to correspond	<i>correspondiente</i>	one who corresponds
<i>demandar</i>	to demand	<i>demandante</i>	one who demands (plaintiff)
<i>expedir</i>	to expedite	<i>expediente</i>	one who expedites
<i>gobernar</i>	to govern	<i>gobernante</i>	one who governs
<i>habitar</i>	to live	<i>habitante</i>	one who lives
<i>ignorar</i>	to ignore	<i>ignorante</i>	one who ignores

(continues)

## Nouns That End in *-ante* or *-iente* (continued)

Infinitive	English	Noun	English
<i>participar</i>	to participate	<i>participante</i>	one who participates
<i>remitir</i>	to remit	<i>remitiente</i>	one who remits
<i>simpatizar</i>	to get along	<i>simpatizante</i>	one who sympathizes

### Examples:

*Escriba a su correspondiente.*

He writes to his correspondent (pen pal).

*Es un ignorante.*

He is an ignorant person.

*Somos participantes en el concurso.*

We are participants in the contest.

## ADJECTIVES DERIVED FROM INFINITIVES

Some *-ar*, *-er*, and *-ir* infinitives drop their ending and add *-able* (for *-ar* verbs) or *-ible* (for *-er* and *-ir* verbs) to form adjectives, as shown in the following table:

### Adjectives That End in *-able* or *-ible*

Infinitive	English	Adjective	English
<i>convertir</i>	to convert	<i>convertible</i>	convertible
<i>creer</i>	to believe	<i>creíble</i>	credible
<i>dirigir</i>	to direct	<i>dirigible</i>	steerable
<i>imaginar</i>	to imagine	<i>imaginable</i>	imaginable
<i>lavar</i>	to wash	<i>lavable</i>	washable
<i>notar</i>	to note	<i>notable</i>	notable
<i>preferir</i>	to prefer	<i>preferible</i>	preferable
<i>razonar</i>	to reason	<i>razonable</i>	reasonable
<i>recomendar</i>	to recommend	<i>recomendable</i>	advisable
<i>tolerar</i>	to tolerate	<i>tolerable</i>	tolerable

### Examples:

*No es creíble.*

It is not believable.

*Esta camisa es lavable.*

That shirt can be washed (is washable).

*No eres razonable.*

You aren't reasonable.

## The Perfect Infinitive

---

The *perfect infinitive* is formed by taking the infinitive of the auxiliary verb, *haber* (“to have”), and the past participle of the verb denoting the action [see The Past Participle in Part VI]:

<i>Recibí una multa por haber conducido muy rápidamente.</i>	I received a ticket for having driven very fast.
<i>Esa mujer fue conocida por haber escrito novelas.</i>	That woman was well known for having written novels.
<i>Ella se cayó por no haber puesto atención.</i>	She fell for not having paid attention.



# PREPOSITIONS AND CONJUNCTIONS

## Prepositions

---

*Prepositions* are invariable words or phrases that join words or elements in a sentence, thereby creating a relationship between them. Prepositions establish the following links:

- Noun to noun:

*Tiene un dolor de cabeza.*

He has a headache.

- Verb to verb:

*Empieza a tocar el piano.*

She begins to play the piano.

- Verb to noun:

*Caminamos por el parque.*

We walk through the park.

- Verb to pronoun:

*¿Por qué hablas contra ella?*

Why do you speak against her?

## COMMON PREPOSITIONS

Some high-frequency Spanish prepositions and prepositional phrases include those in the following table:

### Common Prepositions

Spanish	English
<i>a</i>	to, at
<i>a eso de (+ time)</i>	about (time)
<i>a fuerza de</i>	by persevering
<i>a pesar de</i>	in spite of
<i>a tiempo</i>	on time

*(continues)*

**Common Prepositions (*continued*)**

<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>a través de</i>	across, through
<i>acerca de</i>	about
<i>además de</i>	besides
<i>alrededor de</i>	around
<i>ante</i>	before, in the presence of
<i>antes (de)</i>	before
<i>cerca de</i>	near
<i>con</i>	with
<i>contra</i>	against
<i>de</i>	of
<i>de hoy en adelante</i>	from now on
<i>de otro modo</i>	otherwise
<i>debajo de</i>	beneath, under
<i>delante de</i>	in front of
<i>dentro de</i>	inside, within
<i>desde</i>	since
<i>después (de)</i>	after
<i>detrás de</i>	behind
<i>durante</i>	during
<i>en</i>	in, by, on, at
<i>en cambio</i>	on the other hand
<i>en casa de</i>	at the house of
<i>en lugar de</i>	instead of
<i>en vez de</i>	instead of
<i>encima de</i>	above, on top of
<i>enfrente de</i>	opposite, in front of
<i>entre</i>	between
<i>frente a</i>	in front of
<i>fuera de</i>	outside of
<i>hacia</i>	toward

Spanish	English
<i>hasta</i>	until
<i>lejos de</i>	far
<i>por</i>	for, by
<i>para</i>	for
<i>según</i>	according to
<i>sin</i>	without
<i>sobre</i>	over, above, on, upon
<i>tras</i>	after

**Examples:**

<i>Tu paraguas está debajo de la mesa.</i>	Your umbrella is under the table.
<i>El cine está enfrente del banco.</i>	The movie theater is in front of the bank.
<i>El agente corrió tras el ladrón.</i>	The agent ran after the thief.

**Contractions**

The prepositions *a* (“to,” “at”) and *de* (“of,” “from,” “about”) contract with the masculine, singular definite article, *el*, to become *al* (“to the”) and *del* (“of the,” “from the,” “about the”), respectively:

<i>Voy al gimnasio.</i>	I’m going to the gym.
<i>Sale del supermercado.</i>	He leaves the supermarket.

**USES OF CERTAIN PREPOSITIONS**

Different prepositions may have similar meanings but different uses. A complete understanding of when to use a preposition helps to distinguish when and why a certain preposition is called for rather than another.

**A**

The preposition *a* (which contracts with the masculine singular definite article, *el*, to become *al*) shows the following:

- A person that is the direct object of the sentence:

<i>No busco a Carlos.</i>	I’m not looking for Carlos.
---------------------------	-----------------------------



- Challenge:  
*A que no sabe cuando he llegado.* I bet you don't know when I arrived.
- Condition:  
*A ser esto el problema, yo lo resolveré.* If that were the problem, I'd solve it.
- The imperative:  
*¡A comenzar!* Let's begin!
- Location:  
*Ella está a la entrada de la oficina.* She is at the entrance to the office.
- Means or manner:  
*Lave Ud. esta camisa a mano.* Wash this shirt by hand.  
*Se vistió a la americana.* He dressed like an American.
- Movement:  
*Vamos a Madrid.* We are going to Madrid.
- Quantity, price, or speed:  
*Obtuve una hipoteca al seis por ciento.* I got a mortgage at six percent (interest).  
*Compré los huevos a quinientos pesetas la docena.* I bought the eggs at five hundred pesetas per dozen.  
*Condujo a sesenta kilómetros por hora.* He was driving at sixty kilometers per hour.
- Time:  
*Vamos a cenar a las seis.* We're going to eat dinner at six o'clock.

## The Personal A

The personal *a*, which has no English equivalent, is used before the direct object of a verb to indicate that the direct object is one of the following:

- A person:  
*Yo veo a Jorge.* I see George.
- A pronoun referring to a person:  
*No busco a nadie.* I'm not looking for anyone.
- A pet:  
*Ella está mirando a su gato.* She is looking at her cat.

- A geographic name that is not preceded by a definite article (although current usage tends to omit the personal *a* in this case):

*Queremos ver (a) Costa Rica.*

We want to see Costa Rica.

*Queremos ver el Perú.*

We want to see Peru.

## De

The preposition *de* (which contracts with the masculine, singular definite article, *el*, to become *del*) shows the following:

- Possession:

*Es la revista de Gloria.*

It's Gloria's magazine.

- Relation:

*Nos paseamos por las calles  
de Madrid.*

We went for a walk on the streets  
of Madrid.

- A characteristic:

*Compré un anillo de oro.*

I bought a gold ring.

- Contents:

*Bebí una taza de té.*

I drank a cup of tea.

- Origin:

*Somos de los Estados Unidos.*

We're from the United States.

- Cause:

*Me enfermé de no haber llevado  
un sombrero.*

I got sick from not wearing a hat.

- Subject or theme:

*Necesito un libro de física.  
Hablaban de ella.*

I need a book about physics.  
They were speaking about her.

- Use:

*Le falta una hoja de afeitar.*

He needs a razor blade.

- Measurement or quantity:

*Hacemos un viaje de un mes.  
Ella salió con un hombre  
de cincuenta años.*

We are taking a one month's vacation.  
She went out with a fifty-year-old  
man.

- Times and dates:

*Nos vamos a las seis de la mañana.* We are leaving at six in the morning.  
*Es el dos de febrero.* It is February second.

- Time of day:

*Él trabaja de noche.* He works at night.

- Part of a whole:

*Ellos tomaron un trozo de pastel.* They took a piece of cake.

- A comparison:

*Ese libro era más interesante de lo que pensaba.* That book was more interesting than I thought.

- A superlative:

*Nilsa es la más alta de la clase.* Nilsa is the tallest in the class.

- Means:

*Se casó con ella en un latido del corazón.* He married her in a heartbeat.

## **En**

The preposition *en* shows the following:

- Location:

*La escuela está en la Avenida Sexta.* The school is on Sixth Avenue.

- Movement:

*Entramos en el banco.* We entered the bank.

- Means or manner:

*Hable Ud. en voz baja.* Speak in a low voice.  
*El artículo está escrito en español.* The article is written in Spanish.

- Proportion:

*Los impuestos han bajados en un dos por ciento.* The taxes have decreased by two percent.

- Time and dates:

*Estamos en la primavera.* It's (We are in) spring.  
*Estamos en dos mil cinco.* It's (We are in) 2005.

- Subject and occupation:

*Ella es experta en español.  
Trabajé en la medicina.*

She is an expert in Spanish.  
I worked in the medical field.

- Means of transportation:

*Vamos a España en avión.*

We are going to Spain by plane.

## **Hasta**

The preposition *hasta* shows the following:

- Place or location:

*Caminamos hasta la primera calle.*

We walked to the first street.

- Time:

*No voy a regresar hasta la  
medianoche.*

I am not going to return until  
midnight.

- Quantities:

*Trabaja hasta doce horas diarias.*

He works up to twelve hours a day.

- Farewells:

*Hasta mañana.*

See you tomorrow.

## **Para**

Because *para* and *por* both express “for,” it is essential to learn the uses of each. *Para* shows the following:

- Destination (place) or direction:

*Iré para la casa.*

I will head for home.

- Destination (recipient):

*Este regalo es para ti.*

This gift is for you.

- A time in the future:

*Te querre para siempre.*

I will love you forever.

- A purpose or a goal:

*Trabajo para ganar dinero.*

I work to earn money.

- The use or function of an object:

*Ella toma pastillas para dormir.*

She takes pills to sleep.

- Comparisons that qualify:

*Para una americana, habla muy bien el español.*

For an American, she speaks Spanish very well.

- Opinion:

*Para mí, este coche cuesta demasiado.*

To me, this car costs too much.

## **Por**

*Por* shows the following:

- Motion:

*Ellos caminaron por el bosque.*

They walked through the woods.

- Means or manner:

*Voy a enviar este paquete por correo aéreo.*

I am going to send this package by airmail.

- Substitution or “in exchange for”:

*Yo fui al supermercado por mi madre.*

I went to the supermarket for my mother.

- The duration of an action:

*Dormí por ocho horas.*

I slept for eight hours.

- An indefinite period of time:

*Estudiaremos por la noche.*

We will study at night.

- Place:

*Iban bailando por las calles.*

They went dancing in the streets.

- Approximation:

*Su libro está por aquí.*

Your book is somewhere around here.

- “On behalf of” or “for the sake of”:

*Lo hablaré por Ud.*

I will speak to him on your behalf (for your sake).

- Choice:

*Ella tiene un gusto por el arte.*      She has a taste for art.

- Representation:

*Hablo por todos mis amigos.*      I speak for all my friends.

- A reason:

*Por no dormir, se puso enfermo.*      Because he didn't sleep, he became ill.

- Multiplication:

*Dos por dos son cuatro.*      Two times two is four.

- "By the" or "per":

*Ganará mucho por hora.*      He will earn a lot per hour.  
*Lo pagaron por hora.*      They will pay him by the hour.  
*Las rosas cuestan treinta dólares por docena.*      The roses cost thirty dollars per dozen.

- An incomplete action followed by an infinitive:

*Hay tres camas por hacer.*      There are three beds to make.  
*Por aburrido que sea,*  
*lea ese libro.*      However boring it may be, read this book.

- Estimation or opinion (equivalent to "for" or "as"):

*La tomamos por la maestra.*      We took her for the teacher.  
*Se le conoce por Anita.*      She is known as Anita.

- The agent in a passive construction [*see The Passive Voice with Ser in Part XV*]:

*El libro fue escrito por su madre.*      The book was written by his mother.

- "For" after the verbs *enviar* ("to send"), *ir* ("to go"), *mandar* ("to order," "to send"), *preguntar* ("to ask"), *regresar* ("to return"), *venir* ("to come"), and *volver* ("to return"):

*Fue (envió, preguntó) por un abogado.*      He went for (sent for, asked for) a lawyer.  
*Vine (regresé, volví) por su cheque.*      She came (returned, came back) for her check.

## Adverbial Expressions

*Por* is also used in common adverbial expressions:

Spanish	English
<i>por eso</i>	therefore, so
<i>por lo común</i>	generally
<i>por lo general</i>	generally
<i>por lo visto</i>	apparently
<i>por supuesto</i>	of course

### Examples:

*Ricardo no estudió y por eso no salió bien en su examen.* Richard didn't study and, therefore, he didn't do well on his test.

*¿Te gusta el chocolate? ¡Por supuesto!* Do you like chocolate? Of course!

## COMMON EXPRESSIONS WITH PREPOSITIONS

Some common, high-frequency Spanish expressions contain prepositions:

- *A causa de* (“because of”):
 

<i>No leyó a causa de su dolor de cabeza.</i>	He didn't read because of his headache.
---	---
- *A eso de* (“about” + time):
 

<i>Llegarán a eso de las dos.</i>	They will arrive at about two o'clock.
-----------------------------------	--
- *A fines de* (“at the end of”):
 

<i>Sus cursos empiezan a fines de verano.</i>	His courses start at the end of summer.
---	---
- *A fuerza de* (“by dint of [by persevering]”):
 

<i>A fuerza de trabajar duro, ganó mucho.</i>	By working a lot, she earned a lot.
---	-------------------------------------
- *A la derecha (de)* (“on [to] the right [of]”):
 

<i>La muchacha se sienta a la derecha de su madre.</i>	The girl sits on her mother's right.
--	--------------------------------------
- *A la izquierda (de)* (“on [to] the left [of]”):
 

<i>¿Dónde están los baños? A la izquierda.</i>	Where are the bathrooms? On the left.
--	---------------------------------------

- *A principios de* (“at the beginning of”):  
*Iré en Europa a principios de mayo.* I will go to Europe at the beginning of May.
- *A tiempo* (“on time”):  
*Siempre llego a tiempo.* I always arrive on time.
- *Al aire libre* (“in the open air”):  
*Durmieron al aire libre.* They slept in the open air.
- *De hoy en adelante* (“from today on”):  
*De hoy en adelante no comeré dulces.* From today on I won’t eat sweets.
- *De otro modo* (“otherwise”):  
*Los alumnos escuchan de otro modo no saldrán bien.* The students listen; otherwise, they will not do well.
- *De vez en cuando* (“from time to time”):  
*Voy al cine de vez en cuando.* I go to the movies from time to time.
- *En cambio* (“on the other hand”):  
*Podríamos ir al parque; en cambio, podríamos ir al cine.* We could go to the park; on the other hand, we could see a movie.
- *En efecto* (“in fact”):  
*En efecto, me gusta mucho esquíar.* In fact, I like to ski a lot.
- *En la esquina de* (“on the corner of”):  
*La farmacia está en la esquina de la Avenida Quinta y la Calle Cruz.* The drug store is on the corner of Fifth Avenue and Cruz Street.
- *En vez de* (“instead of”):  
*Ella duerme en vez de limpiar la casa.* She sleeps instead of cleaning the house.

## Prepositional Pronouns

Prepositions may be followed by prepositional pronouns [see Prepositional Pronouns in Part II]:

<i>Pienso en ti.</i>	I’m thinking about you.
<i>No quieren salir sin mí.</i>	They don’t want to leave without me.
<i>¿Quieres ir al cine conmigo?</i>	Do you want to go to the movies with me?



# Conjunctions

---

A *conjunction* is a word whose function is to connect words, phrases, or clauses. There are two kinds of conjunctions: coordinating conjunctions and subordinating conjunctions.

## COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

*Coordinating conjunctions* connect words, phrases, and clauses that are of equal rank: two nouns, two infinitives, or two main clauses. In Spanish these conjunctions are *y* (“and”), *o* (“or”), *ni* (“neither”), *pero* (“but”), *sino* (“but”), and *que* (“that”).

### Y

The high-frequency conjunction *y* means “and.” *Y* changes to *e* when the word that follows begins with *i-* or *hi-*:

<i>Mi amiga y yo vamos a tomar el almuerzo juntas.</i>	My friend and I are going to have lunch together.
<i>Carlota e Inés son mejores amigas.</i>	Carlota and Inés are best friends.
<i>Los López viajan con sus hijos e hijas.</i>	The Lópezes travel with their sons and daughters.

### O

*O* is used to express “or.” *O* changes to *u* when the word that follows begins with *o-* or *ho-*:

<i>¿Quién habla, Susana o Julia?</i>	Who is speaking, Susana or Julia?
<i>Uno u otro me ayudará.</i>	One or the other will help me.
<i>No sé si el ladrón fue mujer u hombre.</i>	I don't know if the thief was a man or a woman.

### Ni

*Ni* can express “neither” or “nor”:

<i>No habla ni español ni francés.</i>	He speaks neither Spanish nor French.
--	---------------------------------------

## Pero

*Pero* expresses “but” in a general sense or “however”:

*Me gusta la vainilla pero prefiero el chocolate.*

I like vanilla, but (however) I prefer chocolate.

*Ella tiene mucha suerte pero no es feliz.*

She is very lucky, but (however) she isn't happy.

## Sino

*Sino* expresses “but” in a negative statement to show contradiction:

*No bebo café sino té.*

I don't drink coffee, but I drink tea.

### Pero vs. Sino

Both *pero* and *sino* express “but.” However, *pero* is used in a more general sense and can also express “however,” and *sino* is used only in a negative statement to show contrast, meaning “on the contrary” or “but rather”:

*Me gustan todas las frutas, pero prefiero las fresas.*

I like all fruits, but (however) I prefer strawberries.

*No me gustan las naranjas sino las manzanas.*

I don't like oranges, but (rather) I like apples.

*No hablo ruso sino español.*

I don't speak Russian but (rather) Spanish.

## Que

The conjunction *que* expresses “that”:

*Escribió que no podría venir.*

He wrote that he couldn't come.

## SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

*Subordinating conjunctions* connect subordinate clauses with main clauses. In Spanish these conjunctions are *apenas* (“as soon as”); *así pues* and *luego que* (“so”); *así que*, *de modo que*, and *de manera que* (“so that”); *aunque* (“although”); *como* (“like,” “since,” “as”); *conque* (“so,” “so . . . then”); *cuando* (“when”); *luego* (“therefore”); *mientras* (“while”); *porque* (“because”); *pues* (“then”); *puesto que* (“since,” “as”); *si* (“if”); and *ya que* (“since”). Some coordinating conjunctions in Spanish require the subjunctive if doubt, uncertainty, anticipation, or indefiniteness is implied.

## **Apenas**

*Apenas* means “as soon as” and takes the indicative:

*Apenas salí, el teléfono sonó.*      As soon as I went out, the telephone rang.

## **Así Pues, Luego Que**

*Así pues* and *luego que* mean “so.” They take the indicative for present and past actions, and they take the subjunctive for future actions:

*Tengo que ir al centro, así pues (luego que), decide si quieres acompañarme.*      I have to go to the city, so decide if you want to go with me.

*Recibieron una herencia, así pues (luego que) hagan un viaje.*      They received an inheritance, so they will take a trip.

## **Así Que, De Modo Que, De Manera Que**

*Así que*, *de modo que*, and *de manera que* mean “so (that).” They take the indicative for present and past actions, and they take the subjunctive for future actions:

*No llevó su abrigo así que ahora está enfermo.*      He didn’t wear his coat, so now he is sick.

*Hablaré despacio de modo que (de manera que) puedas comprenderme.*      I will speak slowly so that you can understand me.

## **Aunque**

*Aunque* means “although.” It takes the indicative for present and past actions, and it takes the subjunctive for future actions:

*Aunque es español, habla muy bien el inglés.*      Although he is Spanish, he speaks English well.

*Yo lo haré aunque no me guste.*      I will do it although I won’t like it.

## **Como**

*Como* means “like,” “as,” or “since” and takes the indicative:

*Como todavía no han llegado, no podemos comenzar la conferencia.*      Since they haven’t arrived yet, we can’t begin the conference.

**Conque**

*Conque* means “so” and takes the indicative:

*Conque ¿lo harás o no lo harás?* So, will you do it or not?

**Cuando**

*Cuando* means “when.” It takes the indicative for present and past actions, and it takes the subjunctive for future actions:

<i>Ella preparó la cena cuando llegó a casa.</i>	She prepared dinner when she arrived home.
<i>Te ayudaré con tus tareas cuando regrese.</i>	I'll help you with your homework when I return.

**Luego**

*Luego* means “therefore” and is followed by the indicative:

*Pienso, luego existo.* I think, therefore I am.

**Mientras**

*Mientras* means “while.” It takes the indicative for present and past actions, and it takes the subjunctive for future actions:

<i>Él dormía mientras el profesor hablaba.</i>	He was sleeping while the teacher was speaking.
<i>Yo trabajaré mientras yo pueda.</i>	I will work while (for as long as) I can.

**Porque**

*Porque* means “because” and takes the indicative:

*No salí porque estaba cansada.* I didn't go out because I was tired.

**Pues**

*Pues* means “then” and takes the indicative:

*¿No te gustan películas de ciencia ficción? Pues, mira una comedia.* You don't like science fiction movies? Then watch a comedy.

**Puesto Que**

*Puesto que* means “since” or “as” and takes the indicative:

*No te hablaré puesto que estás ocupado.* I won't talk to you since you are busy.

**Si**

*Si* means “if” and follows the rules for conditional sentences [*see Conditional Sentences in Part VII*]:

*Si hace mal tiempo me quedaré en casa.* If the weather is bad, I will stay home.

**Ya Que**

*Ya que* means “since” and takes the indicative:

*Ya que está nevando, no tomo el coche.* Since it’s snowing, I’m not taking the car.

**CONJUNCTIVE EXPRESSIONS**

A *conjunctive expression* is a group of words used together in a sentence to act as a conjunction. The following are some conjunctive expressions in Spanish:

- *A pesar de* (“in spite of”):  

<i>A pesar de todo, lo quiero mucho.</i>	In spite of everything, I love him a lot.
--	---
- *Con todo* (“in spite of”):  

<i>Con todo (y con eso), me divertí a la fiesta.</i>	In spite of everything, I had fun at the party.
--	---
- *Excepto que* (“except that”):  

<i>Acepto todo excepto que me digas mentiras.</i>	I accept everything except that you lie to me.
---	--
- *Fuera de* (“aside from”):  

<i>Fuera de eso, yo no tenía ningunos problemas.</i>	Aside from that, I didn’t have any problems.
--	--
- *No obstante* (“however,” “nonetheless”):  

<i>No tenía mucho dinero, no obstante se compró un coche nuevo.</i>	He didn’t have a lot of money; nonetheless, he bought himself a new car.
---	--
- *Por consiguiente* (“consequently,” “therefore”):  

<i>Tenía que estudiar, por consiguiente no miró la televisión.</i>	He had to study; consequently, he didn’t watch television.
--	--
- *Por lo tanto* (“so,” “therefore”):  

<i>No tenía hambre, por lo tanto no comí nada.</i>	I wasn’t hungry, so I didn’t eat anything.
--	--
- *Sin embargo* (“however,” “nevertheless”):  

<i>Estoy cansado, sin embargo continuaré a trabajar.</i>	I’m tired; however, I’ll continue working.
--	--

# **INTERROGATIVES AND EXCLAMATIONS**

## **Interrogatives**

---

*Interrogatives* are used to ask questions. There are two types of questions:

- Those that require a *yes* or *no* answer.
- Those that ask for information.

### **YES/NO QUESTIONS**

Yes/no questions can be asked in four ways:

- **By using intonation:** This is accomplished by raising one's voice at the end of a sentence to which an imaginary question mark has been added. When writing a question, Spanish requires an upside-down question mark at the beginning of the sentence and a regular question mark at the end of the sentence:

<i>¿Tú quieres ir al cine conmigo?</i>	Do you want to go to the movies with me?
<i>¿Ud. no va al centro en tren?</i>	Don't you go to the city by train?

- **By using the tag *¿(no es) verdad?*:** The tag *¿(no es) verdad?* is placed at the end of or after a sentence and can have the following meanings:

Is(n't) that true (so, right)?  
Is(n't) he/she?  
Are(n't) you/we/they?  
Does(n't) he/she?  
Do(n't) you/we/they?

#### **Examples:**

<i>Él sabe hablar español, ¿no es verdad?</i>	He knows how to speak Spanish, right?
<i>Nosotros cantamos bien, ¿no es verdad?</i>	We sing well, isn't that so (don't we)?

- **By using the tag *¿está bien?*:** The tag *¿está bien?* is placed at the end of or after a sentence and can have the following meanings:

Is that true all right?

Is that okay?

Okay?

**Example:**

*Me voy. ¿Está bien?*

I'm going. Is that all right? (okay)?

- **By using inversion:** *Inversion* refers to switching the word order of the subject noun or pronoun (when used) and the conjugated verb to form a question:

*Ud. es americano. ¿Es Ud. americano?*

You are American. Are you American?

*Linda viene tarde. ¿Viene Linda tarde?*

Linda is coming late. Is Linda coming late?

*Uds. se levantaron tarde. ¿Se levantaron Uds. tarde?*

You got up late. Did you get up late?

In most cases, the subject pronoun is omitted:

*Necesitas algo. ¿Necesitas algo?*

You need something. Do you need something?

When a conjugated verb is followed by an infinitive, the subject noun or pronoun usually follows the infinitive. To negate the question, put *no* before the conjugated verb or before any pronouns that precede the verb:

*Ud. (no) debe trabajar esta noche. ¿(No) Debe trabajar Ud. esta noche?*

You do(n't) have to work tonight. Do(n't) you have to work tonight?

*Arturo (no) va a patinar ¿(No) Va a patinar Arturo?*

Arturo is(n't) going to skate. Is(n't) Arturo going to skate?

*Ella (no) te habla. ¿No te habla ella?*

She (doesn't) speak(s) to you. Does(n't) she speak to you?

## INFORMATION QUESTIONS

Interrogative adjectives, interrogative adverbs, and interrogative pronouns are words that allow you to ask questions when you need information.

## Using Interrogative Adjectives

An *interrogative adjective* is a word that asks a question and is followed by a noun. The interrogative adjective *¿qué?* means “what?” or “which?” *¿Qué?* is invariable and precedes a noun whose number is not counted:

<i>¿Qué programa estás mirando?</i>	What program are you watching?
<i>¿Qué libro lees?</i>	Which book are you reading?

*Qué* may be preceded by a preposition:

<i>¿Para qué sirve este cuchillo?</i>	What is this knife used for?
<i>¿De qué hablan?</i>	What are they speaking about?
<i>¿A qué hora vienen?</i>	At what time are they coming?

The interrogative adjective *¿cuánto?* means “how much/many?” *¿Cuánto?* must agree in number and gender with the noun it modifies, and it precedes a noun that is counted or measured. The following table shows the forms of *¿cuánto?*:

### *¿Cuánto?*

	Singular	Plural
Masculine	<i>¿cuánto?</i>	<i>¿cuántos?</i>
Feminine	<i>¿cuánta?</i>	<i>¿cuántas?</i>

### Examples:

<i>¿Cuánto tiempo necesitas?</i>	How much time do you need?
<i>¿Cuántos países luchan?</i>	How many countries are fighting?
<i>¿Cuánta nieve cayó?</i>	How much snow fell?
<i>¿Cuántas preguntas tienes?</i>	How many questions do you have?

The forms of *¿cuánto?* may also be preceded by prepositions:

<i>¿Para cuántas personas cocina?</i>	For how many people are you cooking?
<i>¿Con cuánto dinero puedes comprar esta compañía?</i>	With how much money can you buy this company?
<i>¿De cuántos restaurantes hablas?</i>	How many restaurants are you speaking about?

## Using Interrogative Adverbs

An *interrogative adverb* is a word that asks a question and is followed by a verb. Interrogative adverbs are most often used with inversion to seek information:



- *¿Cómo?* means “how?”:
 

<i>¿Cómo estás?</i>	How are you?
<i>¿Cómo se escribe su nombre?</i>	How is your name written?
- *¿Cuándo?* means “when?”:
 

<i>¿Cuándo va a llegar Papá Noel?</i>	When is Santa Claus going to come?
<i>¿Cuándo piensas regresar?</i>	When do you intend to return?
- *¿Dónde?* means “where?”:
 

<i>¿Dónde nació Ud.?</i>	Where were you born?
<i>¿Dónde trabajas?</i>	Where do you work?
- *¿Por qué?* means “why?”:
 

<i>¿Por qué lloras?</i>	Why are you crying?
<i>¿Por qué no lo saludó?</i>	Why didn't you greet him?
- *¿Para qué* means “why?” in the sense of “for what purpose or reason?”:
 

<i>¿Para qué necesitas este papel?</i>	Why do you need this paper?
<i>¿Para qué empleas esa máquina?</i>	Why do you use that machine?

Interrogative adverbs can be preceded by prepositions, where they make sense:

<i>¿Adónde (A dónde) va Ud.?</i>	Where are you going?
<i>¿De dónde vienen?</i>	Where do they come from?
<i>¿Por dónde caminan?</i>	Where do they walk?
<i>¿Hasta cuándo trabaja?</i>	Until when do you work?
<i>¿Para cuándo necesita ese libro?</i>	For when do you need this book?

### ***¿Por Qué? vs. ¿Para Qué?***

*¿Por qué?* asks for a reason and requires an answer with *porque* (“because”):

<i>¿Por qué no va Jorge a la escuela?</i>	Why isn't Jorge going to school?
<i>Porque está enfermo.</i>	Because he is sick.

*¿Para qué?* asks about a purpose or a reason and requires an answer with *para* (“for,” “to,” “in order to”):

<i>¿Para qué necesitas mi pluma?</i>	Why do you need my pen?
<i>Para escribir una nota a mi amiga.</i>	To write a note to my friend.

## Using Interrogative Pronouns

An *interrogative pronoun* is a word that asks a question and takes the place of a noun. Interrogative pronouns ask the following questions:

“Who(m)?”

“What?”

“Which one(s)?”

“How much?”

“How many?”

An interrogative pronoun is generally followed by a verb.

The interrogative pronoun *¿quien(es)?* asks “who?” or “whom?” and refers to people. *¿Quien?* agrees in number (singular or plural) with the noun it replaces:

<i>Carlota se cayó. ¿Quién se cayó?</i>	Carlota fell. Who fell?
<i>Luz y Ana fueron a España.</i>	Luz and Ana went to Spain.
<i>¿Quiénes fueron a España?</i>	Who went to Spain?

The interrogative pronoun *¿qué?* asks “what?” and refers to things. *¿Qué?* is invariable:

<i>¿Qué vas a hacer?</i>	What are you going to do?
<i>¿Qué necesita Ud.?</i>	What do you need.

### Prepositions + *¿Quién?* and *¿Qué?*

A preposition may precede *¿quién(es)?* and asks “whom?”:

<i>¿A quién telefoneaste?</i>	Whom did you call?
<i>¿Con quiénes contaban?</i>	Whom were they counting on?

A preposition may precede *¿qué?* and asks “what?”:

<i>¿A qué hora vienen?</i>	At what time are they coming?
<i>¿Con qué escribes?</i>	What are you writing with?

The interrogative pronoun *¿cuál(es)?* asks “which one(s)?” or “what?” *¿Cuál(es)?* agrees in number (singular or plural) with the noun to which it refers. *¿Cuál(es)?* is usually followed by the third person singular or plural of the verb *ser* or by the preposition *de*:

¿Cuál es la fecha de hoy?  
 ¿Cuáles son los días de la semana?  
 ¿Cuál de los muchachos ganó?  
 ¿Cuáles de los muchachos ganaron?

What is today's date?  
 What are the days of the week?  
 Which one of the boys won?  
 Which ones of the boys won?

### ¿Qué? vs. ¿Cuál(es)?

When it precedes a verb, *¿Qué?* means "what?" and inquires about a definition, a description, an opinion, or an explanation:

¿Qué piensas de mi idea?                      What do you think of my idea?

When it precedes a noun, *¿Qué?* means "which?" or "what?":

¿Qué CD estás escuchando?                      What (Which) CD are you listening to?

When it is followed by the verb *ser* or by a preposition, *¿Cuál(es)?* means "what?" or "which one?" and inquires about a choice or a selection or is used to distinguish one person or thing from another:

¿Cuál es su número de teléfono?                      What is your phone number?

¿Cuáles son los mejores?                      Which ones are the best?

¿Cuál de esas muchachas habla español?                      Which one of those girls speaks Spanish?

¿Cuáles de esas camisas son más baratas?                      Which (ones) of those shirts is less expensive?

The interrogative pronoun *¿cuánto?* asks "how much?" and is invariable. The verb that follows *¿cuánto?* agrees in number with the noun to which *¿cuánto?* refers:

¿Cuánto cuesta ese coche?                      How much does that car cost?  
 ¿Cuánto valen esas joyas?                      How much are those jewels worth?

The interrogative pronoun *¿cuántos(as)?* asks "how many?" and agrees in gender (masculine or feminine) with the noun to which it refers:

¿Los muchachos? ¿Cuántos participan al concurso?                      The boys? How many are participating in the race?  
 ¿Las tazas? ¿Cuántas quedan?                      The cups? How many remain?

## USING HAY

*Hay* is a very versatile form of the verb *haber* (“to have”) and is used in an impersonal manner to ask “Is (Are) there?” and to answer “There is (are).” *Hay* can be used alone to ask a yes/no question or with a preceding question word to get information. When a question contains *hay*, so does its answer:

*¿Hay un restaurante español en esta ciudad? Sí, hay un restaurante español allá.*

*¿Qué hay en su bolsillo? No hay nada.*

*¿Cuántos miembros hay en el club? Hay más o menos veinte miembros.*

Is there a Spanish restaurant in this city? Yes, there is a Spanish restaurant over there.

What is (there) in your pocket? There is nothing.

How many members are there in the club? There are twenty members, more or less.

## How to Answer Questions

---

It is important to know key words and phrases that enable you to answer yes/no and information questions.

### ANSWERING YES/NO QUESTIONS

To answer a question “yes,” use the word *sí*:

*¿Quieres acompañarme al cine? Sí, con mucho gusto.*

Do you want to go with me to the movies? Yes, I’d love to.

To answer a question “no,” use the word *no* or any of the negative words or expressions [see Negative Words in Part XII]. *No* is generally placed before the conjugated verb. When a pronoun precedes the verb, *no* is placed before the pronoun:

*¿Quieres acompañarme al cine? No, lo siento mucho. Tengo que estudiar.*

Do you want to go with me to the movies? No, I’m very sorry. I have to study.

## ANSWERING INFORMATION QUESTIONS

Understanding exactly what information is being requested allows you to answer information questions correctly:

- To answer a question that contains *¿Cuánto(a/os/as)?* (“how much?” or “how many?”), give a quantity or an amount:

*¿Cuántos alumnos están ausentes?* How many students are absent?  
*Cuatro (Muchos) alumnos están ausentes.* Four (Many) students are absent.

- To answer a question that contains *¿Qué?* (interrogative adjective; “what?” or “which?”) or *¿Cuál?* (“which one(s)?” or “what?”), you may use the definite article + an appropriate adjective (there must be agreement of gender and number with the noun in question) to express “the . . . one(s)” when speaking about color, size, or nationality:

*¿Qué vestido prefieres?* *El rojo.* Which dress do you prefer?  
 The red one.  
*¿Cuál de las camisas vas a comprar?* Which one of the shirts are you  
*La grande.* going to buy? The big one.  
*¿Cuáles de las muchachas no* Which ones of the girls don’t speak  
*hablan inglés?* *Las francesas.* English? The French ones.

- To answer a question that contains *¿Cómo?* (“how?”), give an explanation:

*¿Cómo viajas?* *En avión.* How are you traveling? By plane.  
*¿Cómo está Ud.?* *Muy bien, gracias.* How are you? Very well, thank you.

- To answer a question that contains *¿Cuándo?* (“when?”), give a time:

*¿Cuándo puede Ud. venir?* When can you come?  
*Mañana por la tarde.* Tomorrow afternoon.

- To answer a question that contains *¿Dónde?* (“where?”), give a place or a location:

*¿Dónde están mis zapatos?* Where are my shoes?  
*Debajo de su cama.* Under your bed.

- To answer a question that contains *¿Quién(es)?* (“who(m)?”), give a person:

*¿Quiénes trabajan hoy?* Who is working today?  
*Clara y Manuel trabajan.* Clara and Manuel are working.

- To answer a question that contains *¿Por qué?* (“why?”), answer with *porque* (“because”):

*¿Por qué no me ayudas?* Why don’t you help me?  
*Porque estoy cansado.* Because I am tired.

## Questions with Prepositions

When a question contains a preposition, that preposition must also be used in the answer:

<i>¿Para quién esperas? Para mis amigos.</i>	For whom are you waiting? For my friends.
<i>¿Adónde vas? Al teatro.</i>	Where are you going? To the theater.
<i>¿Con qué juegan los niños? Con una pelota.</i>	What are the children playing with? With a ball.

## Exclamations

*Exclamations* express sentiments and feelings. In Spanish, an upside-down exclamation point precedes the exclamation, and a regular exclamation point follows the exclamation. Exclamations are expressed as follows:

- *¡Qué!* (“what a!” “how!”) expresses a quality:

<i>¡Qué bonita es!</i>	How beautiful she is!
<i>¡Qué sorpresa!</i>	What a surprise!

## Adding Emphasis

To make an exclamation even more emphatic, use *más* or *tan* after the noun and before the adjective:

<i>¡Qué muchacha tan (más) bonita!</i>	What a beautiful girl!
<i>¡Qué sorpresa tan interesante!</i>	What an interesting surprise!

- *¡Cuánto(a)!* (“how [much]!”) is used in the singular and expresses a quantity or an amount:

<i>¡Cuánto tiempo han gastado!</i>	How much time they wasted!
<i>¡Cuánto me gusta esa casa!</i>	How I like that house!
<i>¡Cuánta habilidad tiene!</i>	How much skill he has!

### **¡Qué De!**

*¡Qué de!* (“how many!”) can be used to express a quantity or an amount and is the equivalent of *¡cuánto!*:

*¡Qué de hombres van a la guerra!*      How many men go to war!

- *¡Cuántos(as)!* (“how many!”) is used in the plural and expresses a quantity or an amount:

*¡Cuántos amigos tiene!*      How many friends you have!  
*¡Cuántas camisas compraste!*      How many shirts you bought!

- *¡Cómo!* (“how!”) expresses means or manner:

*¡Cómo cantan esos muchachos!*      How those boys sing!

- *¡Cuán!* (“how!”) is used with adjectives and adverbs in a literary sense:

*¡Cuán rápido cambian las estaciones!*      How fast the seasons change!

# **NEGATIVES, INDEFINITES, AND RELATIVE PRONOUNS**

## **Negatives**

---

There are several words in Spanish, in addition to *no*, that express *negative* actions, thoughts, or feelings.

### **NEGATIVE WORDS**

The most common negative words used in Spanish include

- *No* (“no,” “not”):  
*No comprendo.* I don’t understand.
- *Nada* (“nothing”):  
*Nada me enfada.* Nothing makes me angry.
- *Nadie* (“nobody,” “no one”):  
*Nadie te telefoneó.* Nobody called you.
- *Ni . . . ni* (“neither . . . nor”):  
*No como ni manzanas ni peras.* I eat neither apples nor pears.
- *Ningún(a/os/as)* (“not any,” “none”):  
*Ningunos muchachos sabían hacerlo.* None of the boys knew how to do it.
- *Nunca* or *jamás* (“never,” “not ever”):  
*Nunca fui a España.* I never went to Spain.  
*¿Fumabas? ¡Jamás!* Did you used to smoke? Never
- *Tampoco* (“neither,” “not either”):  
*No voy a leer ese libro.* I’m not going to read that book.  
*Tampoco voy a comprarlo.* I’m not going to buy it either.



## USING NEGATIVES

The following rules apply when using negatives:

- The adverb *no* is placed before the conjugated verb:

*No quiero levantarme.*                      I don't want to get up.

- *No* may be repeated for stress or emphasis:

*No, no quiero hacerlo.*                      No, I don't want to do it.

- If a pronoun precedes the conjugated verb, the negative is placed before the pronoun:

*No se quedarán aquí.*                      They will not stay here.

*Nunca te dije eso.*                      I never said that to you.

*Nadie lo ha visto.*                      Nobody has seen him.

- Spanish allows for double and triple negatives. If one of the negatives is *no*, it is placed before the conjugated verb. If *no* is not used, then the other negative word precedes the verb:

*No come nada.* or *Nada come.*                      He's not eating anything.

*No lo encontré tampoco.* or                      I didn't find it either.

*Tampoco no lo encontré.*

*No viene nadie.* or *Nadie viene.*                      Nobody is coming.

*No escribió nunca a nadie.* or                      He never wrote to anyone.

*Nunca escribió a nadie.*

### Negatives and Prepositions

A negative that is preceded by a preposition must keep that preposition when it is placed before a verb:

*No busco a nadie.* or *A nadie busco.*                      I'm not looking for anyone.

*No hablaban de nada.* or *De nada hablaban.*                      They weren't speaking about anything.

- When a single subject is followed by two verbs, *no* is placed before the conjugated verb and the other negative is placed after the infinitive or the negative word is placed before the conjugated verb:

*No quería beber nada.* or                      She didn't want to drink anything.

*Nada quería beber.*

- Negative words may stand alone, without *no*:

*¿Que quieres hacer? Nada.*  
*¿Salen por la noche? Nunca.*

What do you want to do? Nothing.  
Do they go out at night? Never.

- Infinitives may be negated:

*Es mejor no decirle nada.*

It is better not to tell her anything.

- The negatives *nadie*, *nada*, *ninguno*, *nunca*, and *jamás* are used after comparatives, in phrases that begin with *sin* (“without”) or *antes* (*de* or *que*) (“before”), or in questions where negative answers are anticipated:

*Él quiere hacerse rico más  
que nada.*  
*Ella escribe mejor que nadie.*  
*Te quiero más que nunca.*  
*Ella se durmió sin hacer nada.*

He wants to become rich more than  
anything else.  
She writes better than anybody else.  
I love you more than ever.  
She fell asleep without doing  
anything.  
Before eating anything, you have to  
make your bed.  
He went out before anyone else.  
Have you ever heard a more ridiculous  
story?

*Antes de comer nada, tienes  
que hacer tu cama.*  
*Salió antes que nadie.*  
*¿Has entendido jamás una  
historia más ridícula?*

- When used as an adjective, *ninguno(a)* may be replaced by *alguno(a)*, which follows the noun and is more emphatic:

*No tenemos ninguna solución.*  
*No tenemos solución alguna.*

We have no solution.  
We don't have any solution.

## NEGATIVE EXPRESSIONS

Commonly used negative expressions include the phrases listed in the following table:

### Commonly Used Negative Expressions

Spanish	English
<i>ahora no</i>	not now
<i>creo que no</i>	I don't believe so
<i>de nada</i>	you're welcome
<i>de ningún modo</i>	certainly not
<i>de ninguna manera</i>	by no means

(continues)

## Commonly Used Negative Expressions (*continued*)

Spanish	English
<i>más que nada</i>	more than anything
<i>más que nunca</i>	more than ever
<i>ni</i> + subject pronoun + <i>tampoco</i>	neither do(es) + subject
<i>ni siquiera</i>	not even
<i>no cabe duda</i>	there's no doubt
<i>no es así</i>	it's not so
<i>no es para tanto</i>	it's not such a big deal
<i>no hay remedio</i>	it can't be helped
<i>no importa</i>	it doesn't matter
<i>no obstante</i>	however
<i>no puede ser</i>	it (that) can't be
<i>¿no te parece?</i>	don't you think so?
<i>no . . . más que</i>	no more than
<i>no . . . sino que</i>	no more than
<i>¿por qué no?</i>	why not
<i>sin novedad</i>	nothing new
<i>todavía no</i>	not yet
<i>ya no</i>	no longer

### Examples:

*No me gusta ese plato. Ni yo tampoco.  
Ella es muy simpática. ¿No te parece?  
No cabe duda que saldrás bien.*

I don't like that dish. Me either.  
She is very nice. Don't you think so?  
There is no doubt that you will  
succeed.

## NEGATIVE PREFIXES

The following prefixes can be attached to words to give them a negative meaning or connotation:

- *Anti*
- *Contra*
- *Des*
- *Dis*
- *In* (which becomes *im* before the letter *p*)

The following table shows how these prefixes can be added to affirmative words:

## Negative Prefixes

Affirmative	English	Negative	English
<i>accesible</i>	accessible	<i>inaccesible</i>	inaccessible
<i>armar</i>	to arm	<i>desarmar</i>	to disarm
<i>capacidad</i>	ability	<i>discapacidad</i>	disability
<i>cargar</i>	to load	<i>descargar</i>	to unload
<i>cómodo</i>	comfortable	<i>incómodo</i>	uncomfortable
<i>democrático</i>	democratic	<i>antidemocrático</i>	undemocratic
<i>el espionaje</i>	espionage	<i>el contraespionaje</i>	counterespionage
<i>estético</i>	aesthetic	<i>antiestético</i>	ugly, unsightly
<i>gustar</i>	to be pleasing	<i>disgustar</i>	to be displeasing
<i>la paciencia</i>	patience	<i>la impaciencia</i>	impatience
<i>penetrable</i>	penetrable	<i>impenetrable</i>	impenetrable
<i>poner</i>	to put	<i>contraponer</i>	to oppose

### Examples:

*Me disgusta su actitud.*

His attitude displeases me.

*Esta silla es incómoda.*

This chair is uncomfortable.

*Los hombres descargan el camión.*

The men unload the truck.

## Indefinites and Their Negatives

*Indefinites* refer to no particular person or thing specifically but to people or things in general.

### INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

The following are some *indefinite pronouns* and their negative counterparts:

- *Alguien* (“someone”) vs. *nadie* (“no one,” “anyone,” “nobody,” “anybody”):

*¿Ves a alguien?*

Do you see someone?

*No veo a nadie.*

I don't see anyone.

- *Algo* (“something”) vs. *nada* (“nothing”):

<i>¿Quieres algo?</i>	Do you want something?
<i>No quiero nada.</i>	I want nothing. <i>or</i> I don't want anything.

- *Alguno(a/os/as)* (“some”) vs. *ninguno(a/os/as)* (“not any,” “none”):

<i>¿Invitaste a algunos?</i>	Did you invite some of them?
<i>No invité a ningunos.</i>	I didn't invite any of them.

- *Cualquiera* (“anyone,” “anybody,” “any one,” “anything”) vs. *nadie* (“no one,” “nobody”)/*ninguno* (“none,” “neither one”):

<i>Cualquiera puede entender ese poema.</i>	Anyone can understand that poem.
<i>Nadie puede hacer la tarea de biología.</i>	No one can do the biology homework.
<i>¿Te gusta el rojo o el verde?</i>	Do you like the red one or the green one? Neither one.
<i>Ninguno.</i>	

- *Quien(es)quiera* (“whoever”) vs. *nadie* (“no one,” “nobody”)/*ninguno* (“none,” “neither one”):

<i>Quienesquiera sean responsables pagarán.</i>	Whoever is guilty will pay.
<i>Nadie es responsable.</i>	Nobody is responsible.
<i>Ninguno de los dos es responsable.</i>	Neither of the two is responsible.

- *Todo* (“all”) vs. *nada* (“nothing”):

<i>Todo está bien.</i>	Everything is all right.
<i>Nada está bien.</i>	Nothing is all right.

- *Todo el mundo* (“everyone,” “everybody”) vs. *nadie* (“no one,” “nobody”)/*ninguno* (“none,” “neither one”):

<i>Todo el mundo se queja.</i>	Everyone complains.
<i>Nadie se queja.</i>	No one complains.

## INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES

The following *indefinite adjectives* all have *ninguno* (*ningún* before a masculine, singular noun) or *ninguna*, *ningunos*, or *ningunas* as their negative counterparts:

- *Alguno* (*algún* before a masculine, singular noun) or *alguna*, *algunos*, or *algunas* (“some,” “any”):

<i>Tiene algunos problemas.</i>	He has some problems.
<i>No tiene ningunos problemas.</i>	He doesn't have any problems.

- *Cierto(a/os/as)* (“certain”):
 

<i>Ciertas cosas son imposibles.</i>	Certain things are impossible.
<i>Ninguna cosa es imposible.</i>	Nothing is impossible.
- *Uno (un before a masculine, singular noun) or una, unos, or unas* (“one,” “some”):
 

<i>Una mujer está hablando.</i>	A woman is speaking.
<i>Ninguna mujer está hablando.</i>	No woman is speaking.
- *Mucho(a/os/as)* (“many,” “much”):
 

<i>Muchos alumnos estudian.</i>	Many students study.
<i>Ningunos alumnos estudian.</i>	No students study.
- *Tal(es)* (“such”):
 

<i>A tales hombres les gusta la política.</i>	Such men like politics.
<i>A ningunos hombres les gusta la política.</i>	No men like politics.
- *Cada* (“each,” “every”):
 

<i>Cada persona recibe una flor.</i>	Each person receives a flower.
<i>Ninguna persona recibe una flor.</i>	Nobody receives a flower.
- *Cualquier(a)* (“any,” “some”):
 

<i>Cualquier día será médico.</i>	One day he will be a doctor.
<i>Ningún día será médico.</i>	At no time will he be a doctor.
- *Todo(a/os/as)* (“all,” “every”):
 

<i>Todos los empleados reciben un regalo.</i>	All the employees receive a gift.
<i>Ningunos de los empleados reciben un regalo.</i>	None of the employees receives a gift.
- *Otro(a/os/as)* (“other,” “another”):
 

<i>Otra ocasión será mejor.</i>	Another time will be better.
<i>Ninguna ocasión será mejor.</i>	No other time will be better.

## INDEFINITE ADVERBS

The following are *indefinite adverbs* and their negative counterparts:

- *Ya* (“already”) vs. *todavía no* (“not yet”):
 

<i>Ya he visto esta película.</i>	I have already seen this film.
<i>Todavía no he visto esta película.</i>	I haven’t seen this film yet.

- *Todavía* or its synonym *aún* (“still”) vs. *ya no* (“no longer,” “anymore”):
 

<i>¿Todavía estudias el español?</i>	Are you still studying Spanish?
<i>Ya no lo estudio.</i>	I am no longer studying it.
<i>Aún lo está estudiando.</i>	She is still studying it.
- *Siempre* (“always”) vs. *nunca/jamás* (“never”):
 

<i>Siempre trabaja hasta la medianoche.</i>	He always works until midnight.
<i>Nunca trabaja hasta la medianoche.</i>	He never works until midnight.
- *También* (“also,” “too”) vs. *tampoco* or *ni . . . tampoco* (“not either,” “neither . . . nor”):
 

<i>Bebo café y también té.</i>	I drink coffee and tea, too.
<i>No bebo ni café ni té tampoco.</i>	I drink neither coffee nor tea.
- *Más de* (+ quantity) (“more than”) vs. *no . . . más de* (+ quantity) (“not more than”):
 

<i>Esta composición tiene más de diez errores.</i>	This composition has more than ten mistakes.
<i>Esta composición no tiene más de diez errores.</i>	This composition doesn't have more than ten mistakes.

## NEGATIVE CONJUNCTIONS

The following are *conjunctions* and their negative counterparts:

- *O . . . o* (“either . . . or”) vs. *ni . . . ni* (“neither . . . nor”):
 

<i>¿Tiene (o) limón o azúcar?</i>	Do you take (either) lemon or sugar?
<i>No tomo (ni) limón ni azúcar.</i>	I take neither lemon nor sugar.

### Using *O . . . o* and *Ni . . . ni*

Each part of *o . . . o* and *ni . . . ni* precedes the stressed word or words. The use of the first *o* and the first *ni* is optional:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>¿Quieres (o) mirar la televisión o escuchar la radio?</i>    | Do you want to watch television or listen to the radio?  |
| <i>No quiero (ni) mirar la televisión ni escuchar la radio.</i> | I don't want to watch television or listen to the radio. |

- *Pero* (“but”) vs. *sino* (“but”):

*Él quiere ganar mucho dinero pero  
no quiere trabajar duro.  
No llevo una falda verde sino negra.*

He wants to earn a lot of money,  
but he doesn’t want to work hard.  
I’m not wearing a green skirt but  
(rather) a black one.

*Pero* is used in a general sense and can also mean “however.” *Sino* is used only in a negative statement to show contrasting ideas or to show “on the contrary.”

## Comparisons

When using *sino*, comparisons are made with parallel parts of speech—nouns are compared to other nouns, adjectives to other adjectives, and infinitives to other infinitives:

*No como carne sino pollo.*

I don’t eat meat but rather chicken.

*No compré los pequeños sino  
los grandes.*

I didn’t buy the little ones but rather the  
big ones.

*No me gusta patinar sino esquiar.*

I don’t like to skate but rather to ski.

## Relative Pronouns

A *relative pronoun* (for example, “who,” “which,” “that”) joins a main clause to a dependent clause. A relative pronoun introduces the dependent clause, which refers to someone or something mentioned in the main clause. The person or thing to which the relative pronoun refers is called the *antecedent*. The clause introduced by the relative pronoun is called the *relative clause*. Consider this example:

Here is the book that you need.

In this example, *the book* is the antecedent, *that* is the relative pronoun, and *you need* is the relative clause.

A relative clause may serve as a subject, a direct object, or an object of a preposition. The following table lists the relative pronouns that are used in Spanish:



## Relative Pronouns

When the Antecedent Is:	Use This:	Which Means:
a person (subject) a thing (object) the object of the preposition <i>a, en, con,</i> or <i>de</i> (when referring only to things)	<i>que</i>	who(m) that which
a person (subject or direct/indirect object) an object of the prepositions <i>a, en, con,</i> or <i>de</i>	<i>quien/quienes</i>	who(m)
a person or a thing	<i>el (la, los, las) cual(es)</i> <i>el (la, los, las) que</i>	who which
used after a preposition (except <i>a, en, con,</i> and <i>de</i> )	<i>el (la, los, las) cual(es)</i> <i>el (la, los, las) que</i>	which
implied but not mentioned	<i>el (la, los, las) que</i> <i>quien/quienes</i>	those
neuter (an object or an idea)	<i>lo que</i>	that which, what
neuter (and previously mentioned)	<i>lo cual</i>	which

### Examples:

<i>El Señor Rueda es un profesor que enseña bien.</i>	Mr. Rueda is a teacher who teaches well.
<i>Elena es la muchacha con quien Miguel sale.</i>	Elena is the girl with whom Michael goes out.
<i>Los que estudian reciben buenas notas.</i>	Those who study get good grades.
<i>No entiendo lo que él dijo.</i>	I don't understand what he said.
<i>La muchacha la cual llora es mi hermana.</i>	The girl who is crying is my sister.

## QUE

*Que* (“who,” “whom,” “which,” “that”), which is the most commonly used relative pronoun in Spanish, refers to both people and things. Although *que* must be expressed in Spanish, it is frequently omitted in English. *Que* can serve as the subject or object of a relative clause or as the object of the prepositions *a, en, con,* or *de* when they refer to things (these prepositions precede the relative pronoun):

- *Que* as a subject:

<i>¿Dónde está el hombre que me ayudaba?</i>	Where is the man who was helping me?
--	--------------------------------------

- *Que* as an object:

*El Prado es un museo que  
visito a menudo.*

El Prado is a museum (that) I  
visit often.

- *Que* as the object of a preposition that refers to a thing(s):

*Es la pintura de que hablaba  
la profesora.*

That's the picture (that) the  
teacher was speaking about.

## **De + Que**

*Que* can be used after the preposition *de* to refer to people:

*El ingeniero de que le hablé es  
muy inteligente.*

The engineer about whom I spoke to you  
is very intelligent.

## **QUIEN/QUIENES**

*Quien/quienes* (“who,” “whom”) can refer to the subject or to the direct or indirect object of the main clause. *Quien/quienes* can also serve as the object of the prepositions *a*, *en*, *con*, or *de* when they refer to people. Note that when used as relative pronouns, *quien* and *quienes* do not have accents:

- *Quien* as a subject:

*La mujer quien ríe es mi madre.*

The woman who is laughing is my  
mother.

- *Quien* as an object:

*Es la niña a quien él busca.*

That's the child he is looking for.

- *Quien* as the object of a preposition that refers to people:

*Son los muchachos de quienes  
ella hablaba.*

Those are the boys she was talking  
about.

## **Other Applications of *Quien/Quienes***

*Quien/quienes* is used as a subject (when no antecedent exists in the sentence) to express “he (she, those, the one, the ones) who”:

*Quien trabaja duro gana mucho.*

He who works hard earns a lot.

*Quien/quienes* can replace *que* to introduce a clause that is not necessary to the meaning of the sentence:

*El muchacho, quien me escribió cartas de amor, está en mi clase de español.* The boy, who writes love letters to me, is in my Spanish class.

*Quien/quienes*, when used as a direct object referring to people, requires the personal *a* and may replace *que* in more formal sentences:

*Es la muchacha (que) a quien el miraba.* That's the girl he was looking at.

## EL (LOS, LA, LAS) CUAL(ES)/QUE

*El (los, la, las) cual* and *el (los, la, las) que* (“who,” “which”) refer to people or things and are used primarily after prepositions that are longer than one syllable to refer to things. They are also used to avoid confusion when there is more than one antecedent or for emphasis. *De* and *el* combine to become *del* before *que* and *cual*:

*Subimos al techo del edificio, desde lo cual (el cual) vimos toda la ciudad.* We went up to the roof of the building, from which we saw all of the city.

*El padre de María, el cual (el que) es profesor, es muy simpático.* Maria's father, who is a teacher, is very nice.

## Antecedents and No Antecedents

When there are two antecedents, *el (los, la, las) cual(es)* or *el (los, la, las) que* refers to “the former,” and *quien(es)* or *que* refers to “the latter”:

*La hermana de María, la cual (la que) es profesora, es muy simpática.* The sister of María, who is a teacher, is very nice. (The sister is the teacher.)

*La hermana de María, quien (que) es profesora, es muy simpática.* The sister of María, a teacher, is very nice. (María is the teacher.)

When there is no antecedent, *el (los, la, las) que* may be used to replace *quien* as a subject:

*El que trabaja duro gana mucho.* He who works hard earns a lot.

*Los que viajan aprenden mucho de la cultura de un país.* Those who travel learn a lot about the culture of a country.

## Lo QUE

*Lo que* (“that which,” “what”) is the neuter form of *el que* and is used when there is no antecedent mentioned. *Lo que* can be used as follows:

- As the subject of a verb to express “what” or “that which”:

<i>¿Sabe Ud. lo que pasó?</i>	Do you know what happened?
<i>Lo que me aburro es un día en casa.</i>	What bores me is a day at home.

- As the object of a verb to express “what” or “that which”:

<i>No comprendí lo que me explicó.</i>	I didn’t understand what (that which) you explained to me.
<i>Dígame lo que piensa de mi traje nuevo.</i>	Tell me what you think of my new suit.

- After *todo* to express “everything that” or “all that”:

<i>No oí todo lo que ella dijo.</i>	I didn’t hear everything (all) that she said.
-------------------------------------	---

### Lo Que with Ideas and Concepts

*Lo que* can refer to a previously mentioned idea or concept:

<i>Ella siempre llega a tiempo, lo que no me sorprende.</i>	She always arrives on time, which doesn’t surprise me.
---	--

*Lo que* (not *lo cual*) can also refer to an understood or implicit idea or concept that was not mentioned:

<i>Lo que me gusta es comer en un restaurante.</i>	What I like is to eat in a restaurant.
--	--

## Lo CUAL

*Lo cual* (“that,” “which”), which is not used as frequently as *lo que*, is usually found in a dependent clause after a prepositional phrase:

<i>Este coche cuesta demasiado, en vista de lo cual, no puedo comprarlo.</i>	This car costs too much; in view of that, I can’t buy it.
--	---

### Popular Usage of Relative Pronouns

Popular usage allows for the substitution of the adverbs *como* (“how”), *donde* (“where”), *cuanto* (“how much”), and sometimes *cuando* (“when”) for the relative pronouns *que*, *lo que*, and *el cual*:

<i>Esta es la escuela en que (donde) estudié.</i>	That is the school where I studied.
<i>No me gusta la manera en que (como) cocina.</i>	I don't like the way she cooks.
<i>Todo lo que (cuanto) escribía nos parecía bien.</i>	All that he wrote seemed good to us.
<i>Ella lo conoció en el momento en el cual (el que, cuando) era profesora.</i>	She met him at the time when she was a teacher.

### THE RELATIVE ADJECTIVE **CUYO**

*Cuyo(a/os/as)* means “whose” and is possessive in nature. *Cuyo(a/os/as)* is used as an adjective and agrees in number and gender with the object that is possessed and not with the possessor. *Cuyo(a/os/as)* may refer to objects or people:

<i>Ese muchacho, cuya novia habla, es mi primo.</i>	That boy, whose girlfriend is speaking, is my cousin.
<i>La casa, cuyos dormitorios son grandes, es la nuestra.</i>	The house, whose bedrooms are big, is ours.

# **REFLEXIVE VERBS**

## **Reflexive and Non-reflexive Verbs**

---

A *reflexive verb* is different from a non-reflexive verb in that it needs a reflexive pronoun to show that the action of the verb is performed upon the subject. The subject and the reflexive pronoun refer to the same person or thing. In English, the words “myself,” “yourself,” “himself,” “herself,” “ourselves,” “yourselves,” and “themselves” show reflexive action. All verbs in Spanish end in *-ar*, *-er*, or *-ir*. Reflexive verbs have these endings but also have *-se* attached to that ending (for example, *lavarse* [“to wash oneself”]).

Some Spanish verbs have reflexive and non-reflexive forms, depending on whether the subject is the recipient of the action. When the action is performed for or upon someone or something else, the verb is no longer reflexive:

<i>Me lavo.</i>	I wash myself. (reflexive)
<i>Lavo mi coche.</i>	I wash my car. (non-reflexive)

Some verbs that are usually not reflexive may be made reflexive by adding the appropriate reflexive pronoun:

<i>Hablo a mi amiga.</i>	I talk to my friend. (non-reflexive)
<i>Me hablo.</i>	I talk to myself. (reflexive)

# Common Reflexive Verbs

---

Common high-frequency reflexive verbs are listed in the following table:

## Common Reflexive Verbs

Verb	English
<i>abonarse</i>	to subscribe
<i>abrazarse</i>	to hug each other
<i>abrocharse</i>	to fasten
<i>aburrirse</i>	to become bored
<i>acordarse (de)</i>	to remember
<i>acostarse</i>	to go to bed, to lie down
<i>afeitarse</i>	to shave
<i>aficionarse (a)</i>	to become fond (of)
<i>ahogarse</i>	to drown, to suffocate
<i>alegrarse (de)</i>	to be glad
<i>alejarse (de)</i>	to get away from
<i>aplicarse</i>	to apply oneself
<i>apoderarse (de)</i>	to take possession (of)
<i>apresurarse (a)</i>	to hurry
<i>aprovecharse (de)</i>	to avail oneself (of), to profit (by)
<i>apurarse</i>	to get upset, to worry, to hurry (Latin American countries)
<i>arrepentirse (de)</i>	to repent
<i>asegurarse (de)</i>	to make sure
<i>asustarse</i>	to become frightened
<i>atreverse (a)</i>	to dare
<i>ausentarse</i>	to absent oneself
<i>bañarse</i>	to bathe oneself
<i>besarse</i>	to kiss each other
<i>burlarse (de)</i>	to make fun of
<i>callarse</i>	to be silent

<b>Verb</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>cambiarse</i>	to change (clothing)
<i>cansarse</i>	to become tired
<i>casarse</i>	to get married
<i>cepillarse</i>	to brush one's hair or teeth
<i>colocarse</i>	to place oneself
<i>concentrarse</i>	to concentrate, to be focused
<i>conducirse (comportarse)</i>	to behave
<i>contentarse</i>	to be contented
<i>convencerse (de)</i>	to convince oneself (of)
<i>cuidarse (de)</i>	to take care of (to worry about)
<i>darse</i>	to give in
<i>decidirse (a)</i>	to make up one's mind
<i>desanimarse</i>	to get discouraged
<i>desayunarse</i>	to have breakfast
<i>desmayarse</i>	to faint
<i>despedirse</i>	to say goodbye, to take leave of
<i>despertarse</i>	to wake up
<i>detenerse (a)</i>	to stop
<i>dirigirse (a)</i>	to address
<i>divertirse</i>	to have fun
<i>dormirse</i>	to fall asleep
<i>ducharse</i>	to take a shower
<i>ejercitarse (en)</i>	to train (in)
<i>empeñarse (en)</i>	to insist (on)
<i>encontrarse</i>	to be located, to meet
<i>enfadarse (con)</i>	to get angry (with)
<i>engañarse</i>	to be mistaken; to kid, to delude, to deceive oneself
<i>enojarse</i>	to become angry
<i>enterarse (de)</i>	to find out about

(continues)



## Common Reflexive Verbs (*continued*)

<b>Verb</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>equivocarse</i>	to be mistaken
<i>escaparse</i>	to escape
<i>escondarse (de)</i>	to hide (from)
<i>esforzarse</i>	to force oneself, to try hard
<i>familiarse</i>	to familiarize oneself
<i>fiarse (de)</i>	to trust
<i>figurarse</i>	to imagine
<i>fijarse (en)</i>	to notice
<i>hacerse (a) (con)</i>	to become
<i>impacientarse</i>	to lose patience
<i>irse</i>	to go away, to leave
<i>lavarse</i>	to wash oneself
<i>levantarse</i>	to get up (when the entire body is involved)
<i>llamarse</i>	to be called, to be named
<i>llevarse</i>	to take away
<i>maquillarse</i>	to apply makeup
<i>marcharse</i>	to go away
<i>mojarse</i>	to get wet
<i>moverse</i>	to move
<i>negarse (de)</i>	to refuse (to)
<i>olvidarse (de)</i>	to forget
<i>pararse (a)</i>	to stop
<i>parecerse (a)</i>	to resemble
<i>pasearse</i>	to go for a walk
<i>peinarse</i>	to comb one's hair
<i>pelearse (con)</i>	to fight (with)
<i>ponerse</i>	to put on, to become, to place oneself, to become
<i>preocuparse</i>	to worry
<i>probarse</i>	to try on

Verb	English
<i>protegerse</i>	to protect oneself
<i>quedarse</i>	to remain
<i>quejarse (de)</i>	to complain (about)
<i>quitarse</i>	to remove, to take off (one's clothes)
<i>reírse (de)</i>	to laugh at
<i>relajarse</i>	to relax
<i>reprocharse</i>	to reproach oneself
<i>resfriarse</i>	to catch a cold
<i>romperse</i>	to break (a part of one's body)
<i>secarse</i>	to dry oneself
<i>sentarse</i>	to sit down
<i>sentirse</i>	to feel
<i>tratarse (de)</i>	to concern
<i>vestirse</i>	to get dressed
<i>volverse</i>	to become, to turn around

## Reflexive Pronouns

A reflexive verb or a verb conjugated reflexively requires a specific *reflexive pronoun* that refers the action of the verb back to the subject noun or pronoun. The reflexive pronoun is generally, but not always, placed before the conjugated form of the verb and serves as a direct or indirect object, indicating that the subject and object of the verb are one and the same. The verb that follows the reflexive pronoun is then conjugated accordingly, as shown in the following table:

### Reflexive Pronouns

Reflexive Verb	English	Subject	Reflexive Pronoun	Conjugation
<i>levantarse</i>	to get up	<i>yo</i>	<i>me</i>	<i>me levanto</i>
<i>vestirse</i>	to get dressed	<i>tú</i>	<i>te</i>	<i>te vistes</i>
<i>divertirse</i>	to have fun	<i>él, ella, Ud.</i>	<i>se</i>	<i>se divierte</i>
<i>irse</i>	to go away	<i>nosotros</i>	<i>nos</i>	<i>nos vamos</i>
<i>dormirse</i>	to fall asleep	<i>vosotros</i>	<i>os</i>	<i>os dormís</i>
<i>sentarse</i>	to sit	<i>ellos, ellas, Uds.</i>	<i>se</i>	<i>se sientan</i>

**Examples:**

*Generalmente, me levanto temprano.* I generally wake up early.  
*Ella se divierte a la fiesta.* She has fun at the party.  
*Ellos no se sientan.* They don't sit down.

**POSITIONING OF REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS**

Reflexive pronouns have different positions, depending on the tense and the mood of the sentence in which they are used. The rules for the placement of reflexive pronouns are as follows:

- In simple tenses and moods (except for the imperative and the indicative), the reflexive pronoun is placed before the conjugated verb:

<b>Tense or Mood</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>
Present	<i>Me divierto.</i>	I have fun.
Preterit	<i>Me divertí.</i>	I had fun.
Imperfect	<i>Me divertía.</i>	I was having fun.
Future	<i>Me divertiré.</i>	I will have fun.
Conditional	<i>Me divertiría.</i>	I would have fun.
Present subjunctive	<i>Él espera que me divierta.</i>	He hopes I have fun.
Imperfect subjunctive	<i>Él esperaba que me divirtiera (divirtiese).</i>	He hoped I had fun.

**Expressing Possession**

Because the reflexive pronoun clearly identifies who is performing the action, possession is understood. A definite article, rather than a possessive adjective, is used to show possession:

*Se lava las manos a menudo.* He washes his hands often.  
*Nos cepillamos los dientes.* We brush our teeth.

- In compound tenses and moods, the reflexive pronoun precedes the conjugated form of the helping verb, *haber* (“to have”):

<b>Tense or Mood</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>
Present perfect	<i>Me he divertido.</i>	I had fun.
Preterit perfect	<i>Me hube divertido.</i>	I had had fun.
Pluperfect	<i>Me había divertido.</i>	I had had fun.
Future perfect	<i>Me haré divertido.</i>	I will have had fun.
Conditional perfect	<i>Me haría divertido.</i>	I would have had fun.
Present perfect subjunctive	<i>Él espera que me haya divertido.</i>	He hopes that I had fun.
Pluperfect subjunctive	<i>Él esperaba que me hubiera (hubiese) divertido.</i>	He hoped that I had had fun.

- With an infinitive, the reflexive pronoun may follow the infinitive and be attached to it or may precede the conjugated verb:

*Quiero divertirme.*      I want to have fun.  
*Me quiero divertir.*      I want to have fun.

- With a gerund, the reflexive pronoun may follow the gerund and be attached to it or may precede the conjugated verb. When it is attached to the gerund, it is necessary to count back three vowels and add an accent to maintain proper stress:

*Estoy divirtiéndome.*      I’m having a good time.  
*Me estoy divirtiendo.*      I’m having a good time.

- In negative commands, the reflexive pronoun precedes the conjugated verb:

*¡No te levantes!*      Don’t get up!

- In affirmative commands, the reflexive pronoun follows the verb and is attached to it. It is necessary to count back three vowels and add an accent to maintain proper stress:

*¡Diviértase!*      Have fun!  
*¡Levántate!*      Get up!

## Subject Pronouns

Subject pronouns are generally not used in reflexive constructions (except when clarification is needed) because the reflexive pronoun identifies the subject:

*Me acuesto temprano.*      I go to bed early.  
*Ella se peina.*      She is combing her hair.

## Uses of Reflexive Verbs

Reflexive verbs may have different meanings from their non-reflexive counterparts, they may be reflexive in Spanish but non-reflexive in English, they may be used to express reciprocal actions, or they may be used to express passive actions.

### VERBS WITH DIFFERENT REFLEXIVE AND NON-REFLEXIVE MEANINGS

A verb may have different meanings, depending on whether it is used reflexively or non-reflexively, as shown in the following table:

#### Verbs with Different Reflexive and Non-reflexive Meanings

Infinitive	English	Reflexive Verb	English
<i>aburrir</i>	to bore	<i>aburrirse</i>	to become bored
<i>acordar</i>	to agree	<i>acordarse de</i>	to remember
<i>acostar</i>	to put to bed	<i>acostarse</i>	to go to bed, to lie down
<i>alegrar</i>	to cheer up	<i>alegrarse</i>	to be glad, to rejoice
<i>asustar</i>	to frighten	<i>asustarse</i>	to become frightened
<i>bañar</i>	to bathe (someone)	<i>bañarse</i>	to bathe oneself
<i>burlar</i>	to mock, to deceive	<i>burlarse</i>	to make fun of
<i>cansar</i>	to tire	<i>cansarse</i>	to become tired
<i>casar</i>	to marry	<i>casarse</i>	to get married
<i>colocar</i>	to place (something)	<i>colocarse</i>	to place oneself, to get a job
<i>conducir</i>	to drive	<i>conducirse</i>	to behave
<i>dirigir</i>	to direct	<i>dirigirse a</i>	to address
<i>dormir</i>	to sleep	<i>dormirse</i>	to fall asleep
<i>encontrar</i>	to meet, to find	<i>encontrarse</i>	to be located
<i>enfadar</i>	to anger, to irritate	<i>enfadarse (con)</i>	to get angry, to get annoyed
<i>engañar</i>	to deceive	<i>engañarse</i>	to be mistaken; to kid, to delude, or to deceive oneself
<i>esconder</i>	to hide (something)	<i>escondarse</i>	to hide oneself
<i>hacer</i>	to make, to do	<i>hacerse</i>	to become

<b>Infinitive</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Reflexive Verb</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>ir</i>	to go	<i>irse</i>	to go away
<i>levantar</i>	to raise (something)	<i>levantarse</i>	to get up
<i>llamar</i>	to call	<i>llamarse</i>	to be called, to call oneself
<i>marchar</i>	to walk, to march	<i>marcharse</i>	to leave
<i>negar</i>	to deny	<i>negarse</i>	to refuse
<i>parar</i>	to stop (something)	<i>pararse</i>	to stop oneself, to get up
<i>parecer</i>	to seem, to appear	<i>parecerse</i>	to look like
<i>poner</i>	to put (something)	<i>ponerse</i>	to put (something on), to become, to place oneself
<i>probar</i>	to prove	<i>probarse</i>	to try on
<i>quitar</i>	to remove	<i>quitarse</i>	to take off
<i>sentar</i>	to seat	<i>sentarse</i>	to sit down
<i>volver</i>	to return	<i>volverse</i>	to become, to turn around

**Examples:**

*El profesor sienta los alumnos  
por orden alfabético.*

*El profesor se sienta.*

*Este producto quita el polvo.*

*Me quito el sombrero.*

The teacher seats the students in  
alphabetical order.

The teacher sits.

This product removes dust.

I take off my hat.

## **VERBS USED REFLEXIVELY IN SPANISH AND NON-REFLEXIVELY IN ENGLISH**

Some verbs are used reflexively in Spanish but are non-reflexive in English, as shown in the following table:

### **Verbs That Are Reflexive in Spanish and Non-reflexive in English**

<b>Verb</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>abalanzarse</i>	to rush forward
<i>abstenerse (de)</i>	to abstain (from)
<i>acercarse (a)</i>	to approach
<i>acordarse (de)</i>	to remember

(continues)

**Verbs That Are Reflexive in Spanish and Non-reflexive in English (*continued*)**

<b>Verb</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>adueñarse (de)</i>	to take possession (of)
<i>apoderarse de</i>	to take possession (of)
<i>apresurarse (a)</i>	to hurry
<i>aprovecharse (de)</i>	to take advantage of
<i>arrepentirse (de)</i>	to repent, to regret
<i>asustarse</i>	to get frightened
<i>atreverse (a)</i>	to dare (to)
<i>burlarse de</i>	to make fun of
<i>desayunarse</i>	to eat breakfast
<i>desmayarse</i>	to faint
<i>empeñarse en</i>	to insist (on)
<i>enterarse de</i>	to find out about
<i>escaparse (de)</i>	to escape (from)
<i>fiarse de</i>	to trust
<i>figurarse</i>	to imagine
<i>fijarse (en)</i>	to notice
<i>irse</i>	to go away
<i>negarse (a)</i>	to refuse (to)
<i>olvidarse (de)</i>	to forget
<i>parecerse (a)</i>	to resemble
<i>pasearse</i>	to stroll
<i>quejarse (de)</i>	to complain (about)
<i>reírse de</i>	to laugh at
<i>sincerarse (con)</i>	to be honest (with)
<i>suicidarse</i>	to commit suicide
<i>tratarse (de)</i>	to be a matter of

## RECIPROCAL ACTIONS

Plural reflexive constructions can be used to express reciprocal actions that correspond to the English “each other” or “one another”:

<i>Se escriben todas las noches por correo electrónico.</i>	They e-mail each other (one another) every night.
<i>Ellos se abrazaron.</i>	They hugged each other (one another).

For purposes of clarification, or to stress the meaning of the reflexive pronoun, *uno a otro* (*una a otra*) or *el uno al otro* (*la una a la otra*), meaning “each other,” may be used:

<i>Se miraban uno a otro (la una a la otra).</i>	They were looking at each other.
<i>Se aman uno a otro (el uno al otro).</i>	They love each other.

## PASSIVE ACTIONS

Reflexive verbs are often used in the third person singular or plural to express a passive action when the subject is a thing (not a person) and when the agent (the person performing the action) is not mentioned:

<i>Aquí se habla español.</i>	Spanish is spoken here.
<i>Los vestidos se venderán en esa tienda.</i>	Clothing will be sold in that store.

## Idioms with Reflexive Verbs

---

Reflexive verbs are used to form some idiomatic expressions, as shown in the following table:

### Idiomatic Expressions That Use Reflexive Verbs

Spanish	English
<i>aburrirse como una ostra</i>	to be bored stiff
<i>acostarse con las gallinas</i>	to go to bed early
<i>ahogarse en un vaso de agua</i>	to make a mountain out of a molehill
<i>andarse con chiquitas</i>	to beat around the bush
<i>andarse por las ramas</i>	to go off on tangents
<i>calentarse la cabeza por</i>	to agonize about something

(continues)



## Idiomatic Expressions That Use Reflexive Verbs (*continued*)

Spanish	English
<i>darse cuenta de</i>	to realize something
<i>darse la mano</i>	to shake hands
<i>darse por vencido</i>	to throw in the towel
<i>darse prisa</i>	to hurry
<i>dársela (con queso) a alguien</i>	to fool someone
<i>desahogarse</i>	to let off steam
<i>enamorarse perdidamente de alguien</i>	to fall head over heels in love with someone
<i>encogerse de hombros</i>	to shrug one's shoulders
<i>encontrarse con la horma de su zapato</i>	to meet one's match
<i>estrujarse el cerebro (la mollera)</i>	to rack one's brain
<i>guardarse un as en la manga</i>	to have an ace up one's sleeve
<i>hacerse amigos</i>	to become friends
<i>hacerse tarde</i>	to become late
<i>hacerse una idea de algo</i>	to imagine what something is like
<i>hacérsele agua la boca a (alguien)</i>	to make someone's mouth water
<i>meterse en belenes</i>	to get into trouble
<i>quedarse tan ancho</i>	to feel pleased with oneself
<i>partirse de risa</i>	to laugh one's head off
<i>ponerse de mil colores</i>	to become bright red
<i>romperse la cabeza</i>	to rack one's brain
<i>soltarse la melena</i>	to let one's hair down
<i>tenerse por muy listo</i>	to think oneself very clever
<i>traerse algún manejo sucio</i>	to be up to something shady
<i>venderse como rosquilla</i>	to sell like hotcakes

# **ADJECTIVES, ADVERBS, AND COMPARISONS**

## **Adjectives**

---

An *adjective* is a descriptive word that modifies a noun. Spanish adjectives differ from those in English in that they must agree in gender (masculine or feminine) and number (singular or plural) with the nouns they modify. They also generally, but not always, follow the noun they describe.

### **GENDER OF ADJECTIVES**

Some adjectives in Spanish require a change in letter to show that the adjective is masculine or feminine, while other adjectives are the same for both genders.

### **Adjectives That Require a Change in Letter**

Most masculine adjectives end in *-o*, and their feminine counterparts end in *-a*, as shown in the following table:

#### **Adjectives That End in *-o***

<b>Masculine</b>	<b>Feminine</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>aburrido</i>	<i>aburrida</i>	boring
<i>afortunado</i>	<i>afortunada</i>	fortunate
<i>alto</i>	<i>alta</i>	tall
<i>ambicioso</i>	<i>ambiciosa</i>	ambitious
<i>amplio</i>	<i>amplia</i>	wide
<i>antiguo</i>	<i>antigua</i>	old

*(continues)*

**Adjectives That End in -o (continued)**

<b>Masculine</b>	<b>Feminine</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>atractivo</i>	<i>atractiva</i>	attractive
<i>bajo</i>	<i>baja</i>	short
<i>barato</i>	<i>barata</i>	cheap
<i>bonito</i>	<i>bonita</i>	pretty
<i>bueno</i>	<i>buena</i>	good
<i>caro</i>	<i>cara</i>	expensive
<i>cómico</i>	<i>cómica</i>	funny
<i>cómodo</i>	<i>cómoda</i>	comfortable
<i>contento</i>	<i>contenta</i>	happy
<i>dedicado</i>	<i>dedicada</i>	dedicated
<i>delgado</i>	<i>delgada</i>	thin
<i>delicioso</i>	<i>deliciosa</i>	delicious
<i>deprimado</i>	<i>deprimada</i>	depressed
<i>divertido</i>	<i>divertida</i>	fun
<i>enfermo</i>	<i>enferma</i>	sick
<i>enojado</i>	<i>enojada</i>	angry
<i>estrecho</i>	<i>estrecha</i>	narrow
<i>famoso</i>	<i>famosa</i>	famous
<i>feo</i>	<i>fea</i>	ugly
<i>flaco</i>	<i>flaca</i>	thin
<i>furioso</i>	<i>furiosa</i>	furious
<i>generoso</i>	<i>generosa</i>	generous
<i>gordo</i>	<i>gorda</i>	fat
<i>guapo</i>	<i>guapa</i>	pretty, good-looking
<i>limpio</i>	<i>limpia</i>	clean
<i>listo</i>	<i>lista</i>	ready
<i>magnífico</i>	<i>magnífica</i>	magnificent

<b>Masculine</b>	<b>Feminine</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>malo</i>	<i>mala</i>	bad
<i>moderno</i>	<i>moderna</i>	modern
<i>moreno</i>	<i>morena</i>	dark-haired
<i>necesario</i>	<i>necesaria</i>	necessary
<i>negro</i>	<i>negra</i>	black
<i>nervioso</i>	<i>nerviosa</i>	nervous
<i>nuevo</i>	<i>nueva</i>	new
<i>ordinario</i>	<i>ordinaria</i>	ordinary
<i>orgullosa</i>	<i>orgullosa</i>	proud
<i>pardo</i>	<i>parda</i>	brown
<i>pequeño</i>	<i>pequeña</i>	small
<i>perezoso</i>	<i>perezosa</i>	lazy
<i>perfecto</i>	<i>perfecta</i>	perfect
<i>preocupado</i>	<i>preocupada</i>	worried
<i>rico</i>	<i>rica</i>	rich
<i>romántico</i>	<i>romántica</i>	romantic
<i>rubio</i>	<i>rubia</i>	blond
<i>serio</i>	<i>seria</i>	serious
<i>simpático</i>	<i>simpática</i>	nice
<i>sincero</i>	<i>sincera</i>	sincere
<i>sucio</i>	<i>sucia</i>	dirty
<i>tímido</i>	<i>tímida</i>	shy
<i>todo</i>	<i>toda</i>	all
<i>tonto</i>	<i>tonta</i>	foolish
<i>viejo</i>	<i>vieja</i>	old

**Examples:**

*La alumna tímida es muy  
ambiciosa.*

The shy student is very ambitious.

*Mi coche nuevo es muy moderno.*

My new car is very modern.

Adjectives that end in *-dor* also add *-a* to form the feminine. Adjectives that end in *án*, *-ón*, or *-ín* drop their accent if one is present and add *-a* to form the feminine, as shown in the following table:

### Adjectives That End in *-dor*, *-án*, *-ón*, or *-ín*

Masculine	Feminine	English
<i>amenazador</i>	<i>amenazadora</i>	threatening
<i>conservador</i>	<i>conservadora</i>	conservative
<i>encantador</i>	<i>encantadora</i>	enchanted
<i>hablador</i>	<i>habladora</i>	talkative
<i>trabajador</i>	<i>trabajadora</i>	hardworking
<i>haragán</i>	<i>haragana</i>	lazy
<i>holgazán</i>	<i>holgazana</i>	lazy
<i>picarón</i>	<i>picarona</i>	naughty (roguish)
<i>chiquitín</i>	<i>chiquitina</i>	tiny

#### Examples:

*El hombre conservador  
es trabajador.*

The conservative man is hardworking.

*La muchacha habladora  
es chiquitina.*

The talkative girl is tiny.

### Adjectives of Nationality

Some adjectives of nationality that end in a consonant drop their accent if one is present and add *-a* to form the feminine:

*Juan es portugués (alemán, francés,  
inglés, japonés).*

Juan is Portuguese (German, French,  
English, Japanese).

*María es portuguesa (alemana,  
francesa, inglesa, japonesa).*

María is Portuguese (German, French,  
English, Japanese).

## Adjectives That Do Not Require Changes

Masculine adjectives that end in *-e*, *-a*, or a consonant remain invariable in their feminine forms, as shown in the following table:

### Adjectives That Do Not Require Changes

Adjective	English
<i>agradable</i>	pleasant
<i>alegre</i>	happy
<i>amable</i>	nice
<i>arrogante</i>	arrogant
<i>azul</i>	blue
<i>brillante</i>	brilliant, bright
<i>caliente</i>	hot
<i>cortés</i>	courteous
<i>débil</i>	weak
<i>diferente</i>	different
<i>diligente</i>	diligent
<i>egoísta</i>	selfish
<i>elegante</i>	elegant
<i>excelente</i>	excellent
<i>fácil</i>	easy
<i>feliz</i>	happy
<i>feroz</i>	ferocious
<i>fiel</i>	faithful
<i>fuerte</i>	strong
<i>genial</i>	brilliant, great
<i>grande</i>	big
<i>horrible</i>	horrible
<i>importante</i>	important
<i>impresionante</i>	impressive

(continues)

## Adjectives That Do Not Require Changes (*continued*)

Adjective	English
<i>independiente</i>	independent
<i>insoportable</i>	unbearable
<i>inteligente</i>	intelligent
<i>interesante</i>	interesting
<i>joven</i>	young
<i>leal</i>	loyal
<i>materialista</i>	materialistic
<i>optimista</i>	optimistic
<i>pesimista</i>	pessimistic
<i>pobre</i>	poor
<i>popular</i>	popular
<i>puntual</i>	punctual
<i>realista</i>	realistic
<i>responsable</i>	responsible
<i>sagaz</i>	wise
<i>sociable</i>	sociable
<i>triste</i>	sad
<i>tropical</i>	tropical
<i>valiente</i>	brave

### Examples:

*La casa azul es elegante.*

The blue house is elegant.

*Esta isla tropical es popular.*

That tropical island is popular.

## Invariable Adjectives

Some adjectives, despite their endings, are used for both genders, as shown in the following table:

### Invariable Adjectives

Adjective	English
<i>alerta</i>	alert

Adjective	English
<i>azteca</i>	Aztec
<i>belga</i>	Belgian
<i>hipócrita</i>	hypocritical
<i>iraní</i>	Irani
<i>marrón</i>	brown
<i>marroquí</i>	Moroccan
<i>maya</i>	Mayan
<i>rosa</i>	pink
<i>sefardita</i>	Sephardic

**Examples:**

*Compré el vestido rosa y la falda marrón.*

*Hablé con el hombre sefardita y la mujer iraní.*

I bought the pink dress and the brown skirt.

I spoke with the Sephardic man and the Irani woman.

**PLURALS OF ADJECTIVES**

Spanish adjectives agree in number with the nouns they modify. A noun that ends in a vowel is made plural by adding an -s to the singular form, as shown in the following table:

**Plurals of Nouns That End in Vowels**

Singular	Plural	English
<i>divertido</i>	<i>divertidos</i>	fun
<i>famosa</i>	<i>famosas</i>	famous
<i>interesante</i>	<i>interesantes</i>	interesting

**Examples:**

*Esos deportes son muy divertidos.  
Esas mujeres bonitas son famosas.  
Yo vi muchas películas interesantes.*

Those sports are a lot of fun.  
Those beautiful women are famous.  
I saw many interesting films.



## Modifying Nouns of Different Genders

When two or more nouns of different genders are modified by an adjective, the masculine, plural form is always used:

*Su hijo y su hija son rubios.* Her son and her daughter are blond.

*El golf y la natación son divertidos.* Golf and swimming are fun.

A noun that ends in a consonant is made plural by adding *-es* to the singular form, as shown in the following table:

## Plurals of Nouns That End in Consonants

Singular	Plural	English
<i>fácil</i>	<i>fáciles</i>	easy
<i>hablador</i>	<i>habladores</i>	talkative
<i>popular</i>	<i>populares</i>	popular

### Examples:

*Los exámenes eran fáciles.* The tests were easy.  
*Esos niños son habladores.* Those children are talkative.  
*Leí muchos libros populares.* I read many popular books.

## Exceptions to Plural Adjective Rules

For an adjective whose singular form ends in *-z*, change *-z* to *-c* before adding the *-es* plural ending:

*Ana es feliz.* Ana is happy.

*Ana y Luisa son felices.* Ana and Luisa are happy.

In order to maintain the original stress, some adjectives gain or lose an accent in their plural form:

<i>Él es joven.</i>	He is young.
<i>Ellos son jóvenes.</i>	They are young.
<i>Él es francés.</i>	He is French.
<i>Ellos son franceses.</i>	They are French.
<i>Él es alemán.</i>	He is German.
<i>Ellos son alemanes.</i>	They are German.
<i>Él es cortés.</i>	He is polite.
<i>Ellos son corteses.</i>	They are courteous.

## POSITIONING OF ADJECTIVES

Spanish adjectives may either precede or follow the nouns they modify, depending on the type of adjective used, the meaning and intent of the speaker, and the amount of emphasis being used.

### Adjectives That Follow the Noun

In Spanish, unlike in English, descriptive adjectives normally follow the nouns they modify:

<i>Tengo una casa grande.</i>	I have a big house.
<i>Fui a un restaurante romántico.</i>	I went to a romantic restaurant.

### Adjectives That Precede the Noun

A descriptive adjective that emphasizes an inherent characteristic or the quality of a noun precedes that noun:

<i>La blanca nieve cubrió las montañas.</i>	The white snow covered the mountains. (Whiteness is an inherent characteristic of snow.)
<i>Nadé en el mar a pesar de sus fuertes olas.</i>	I swam in the sea despite its strong waves. (Emphasis is on the strength of the waves.)

An adjective that imposes a limit (for example, numbers, possessive and demonstrative adjectives, adjectives of quantity) generally precedes the noun it modifies. Common adjectives of quantity are shown in the following table:

## Common Adjectives of Quantity

Adjective	English
<i>alguno(as)</i>	some
<i>cada</i>	each, every
<i>uanto(a/-os/as)</i>	as much
<i>más</i>	more
<i>menos</i>	less
<i>ningunos(as)</i>	no, not any
<i>numerosos(as)</i>	numerous
<i>otro(a/os/as)</i>	other, another
<i>poco(a/os/as)</i>	few, little
<i>tanto(a/os/as)</i>	so many, much
<i>todo(a/os/as)</i>	all, every
<i>unos(as)</i>	some
<i>varios(as)</i>	several

The following examples show the placement of limiting adjectives before the nouns they modify:

<i>Leí dos artículos interesantes.</i>	I read two interesting articles.
<i>¿Dónde está mi sombrero?</i>	Where is my hat?
<i>Esa muchacha es bonita.</i>	That girl is pretty.
<i>Varios alumnos están ausentes.</i>	Several students are absent.
<i>No tengo otra pluma.</i>	I don't have another pen.
<i>Hay muchos problemas.</i>	There are a lot of problems.
<i>Nunca entendí tales cosas.</i>	I never understood such things.

### Two Adjectives Modifying One Noun

In certain cases, a noun may be modified by more than one adjective. Each adjective is put in its proper position based on the rules of placement described previously. When two adjectives follow the noun, they are joined by *y* ("and"):

<i>Necesito otro coche nuevo.</i>	I need another new car.
<i>Tres otras personas vienen.</i>	Three other people are coming.
<i>Tu hermana es sincera y generosa.</i>	Your sister is sincere and generous.

## ADJECTIVES WHOSE MEANING CHANGES

Some adjectives change meaning depending on whether they precede or follow the noun they modify. Adjectives that precede the noun generally have a more literal meaning, while those that follow the noun are more figurative:

<i>una costumbre antigua</i>	an old (ancient) custom
<i>una antigua costumbre</i>	an old (former) custom
<i>un amor cierto</i>	a true love
<i>un cierto amor</i>	a certain (indefinite) love
<i>una persona grande</i>	a tall (large, big in size) person
<i>una gran persona</i>	a great person (in moral character)
<i>el problema mismo</i>	the problem itself
<i>el mismo problema</i>	the same problem
<i>un barco nuevo</i>	a new boat (brand new)
<i>un nuevo barco</i>	a new boat (new to the owner, different)
<i>la mujer pobre</i>	the poor woman (without money)
<i>la pobre mujer</i>	the unfortunate woman
<i>una solución simple</i>	a silly solution
<i>una simple solución</i>	a simple solution
<i>un perro triste</i>	a sad (unhappy) dog
<i>un triste perro</i>	a sad (sorry, wretched) dog
<i>un conocido viejo</i>	an old acquaintance (elderly)
<i>un viejo conocido</i>	an old acquaintance (dear, long-time)

The adjective *bueno* has the same meaning whether it is used before or after the noun it modifies; the same is true of *malo*:

<i>unas ideas buenas</i> or <i>unas buenas ideas</i>	some good ideas
<i>unos años malos</i> or <i>unos malos años</i>	some bad years

## SHORTENED FORMS OF ADJECTIVES

Certain Spanish adjectives have shortened forms in the following instances:

- Some masculine, singular adjectives drop their final *-o* when used directly before a masculine, singular noun. An accent is placed on the *u* of *algún* (“some,” “any,” “not any”) and *ningún* (“no,” “not any”) when there is no *-o*:

Adjective	Shortened Form	English
<i>uno</i>	<i>un muchacho</i>	a boy
<i>bueno</i>	<i>un buen libro</i>	a good book
<i>malo</i>	<i>un mal ejemplo</i>	a bad example

<b>Adjective</b>	<b>Shortened Form</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>primero</i>	<i>el primer piso</i>	the first floor
<i>tercero</i>	<i>el tercer mes</i>	the third month
<i>alguno</i>	<i>algún día</i>	some day
<i>ninguno</i>	<i>ningún problema</i>	no problem

An exception to this rule is that when an adjective is separated from the noun it modifies by a preposition, the original form of the adjective is used:

<i>Uno de mis amigos me espera.</i>	One of my friends is waiting for me.
<i>Es el primero de enero.</i>	It's January first.

- *Grande* (“great,” “important,” “famous”) becomes *gran* when used before (but not after) a noun of either gender:

<i>Una gran señora viene a hablarnos.</i>	A great woman is coming to speak to us.
<i>Esa señora es grande.</i>	That woman is big.

- *Ciento* (“one hundred”) becomes *cien* when used before a noun of either gender and before the numbers *mil* and *millones*. This shortened form is not used when any other number follows it or with numbers that are multiples of one hundred:

<i>Cien hombres y cien mujeres participaron al concurso.</i>	One hundred men and one hundred women participated in the race.
<i>Necesito ciento cincuenta dólares.</i>	I need one hundred fifty dollars.
<i>Hay cien mil doscientos habitantes en ese país.</i>	There are one hundred thousand, two hundred inhabitants in that country.

- *Santo* becomes *San* before the name of a masculine saint, except for those beginning with *To-* or *Do-*:

<i>San José está en California.</i>	San José is in California.
<i>Vamos a Santo Domingo.</i>	We are going to Santo Domingo.

## **Lo + Adjective**

The neuter article, *lo*, can be used before a masculine, singular noun to create an abstract subject:

<i>Lo importante es aprender una lengua extranjera.</i>	The important thing is to learn a foreign language.
<i>Lo necesario es estudiar mucho.</i>	What is necessary is to study a lot.

# Adverbs

---

An *adverb* is a word that modifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb and expresses “how” or “in what manner” the subject performs the action. English adverbs often end in *-ly*, and their Spanish counterparts often end in *-mente*. Adverbs do not require any changes for agreement according to gender and number because they do not modify nouns.

## FORMATION OF ADVERBS

Spanish adverbs are formed by adding *-mente* to the feminine form of an adjective. When there is no distinct feminine form, as in the case where an adjective ends in *-e* or a consonant, *-mente* is added to the singular form of the adjective, as shown in the following table:

### Formation of Adverbs

Masculine Adjective	Feminine Adjective	Adverb	English
<i>claro</i>	<i>clara</i>	<i>claramente</i>	clearly
<i>cortés</i>	<i>cortés</i>	<i>cortésmente</i>	politely
<i>diligente</i>	<i>diligente</i>	<i>diligentemente</i>	diligently
<i>especial</i>	<i>especial</i>	<i>especialmente</i>	especially
<i>feroz</i>	<i>feroz</i>	<i>ferozmente</i>	ferociously
<i>final</i>	<i>final</i>	<i>finalmente</i>	finally
<i>frecuente</i>	<i>frecuente</i>	<i>frecuentemente</i>	frequently
<i>rápido</i>	<i>rápida</i>	<i>rapidamente</i>	rapidly
<i>recién</i>	<i>recién</i>	<i>recientemente</i> ( <i>recién</i> before a past participle)	recently

### Examples:

<i>Voy a la piscina frecuentemente.</i>	I go to the pool frequently.
<i>Ellos trabajaron diligentemente.</i>	They worked diligently.
<i>Ella siempre habla cortésmente.</i>	She always speaks politely.
<i>El recién nacido lloró recientemente.</i>	The newborn cried recently.

## More Than One Adverb

When a verb is modified by more than one adverb, only the last adverb uses the *-mente* ending, and the other adverbs use the feminine, singular form of the adjective:

*El profesor enseña clara, paciente,  
y lentamente.*

The teacher teaches clearly,  
patiently, and slowly.

## ADVERBIAL PHRASES

An *adverbial phrase* is composed of a group of words that work together as an adverb. Adverbial phrases are formed as follows:

- By using the preposition *con* (“with”), *en* (“in”), or *por* (“by”) + noun
- By using the expressions *de manera* (“in a . . . way”) or *de modo* (“in a . . . way”) + adjective

The following table illustrates how this is done:

### Adverbial Phrases

Phrase	Adverb	English
<i>con claridad</i>	<i>claramente</i>	clearly
<i>de manera profunda</i>	<i>profundamente</i>	profoundly
<i>de modo cuidado</i>	<i>cuidadosamente</i>	carefully
<i>en silencio</i>	<i>silenciosamente</i>	silently
<i>por instinto</i>	<i>instintivamente</i>	instinctively

### Examples:

<i>Ella habla claramente.</i>	She speaks clearly.
<i>Ella habla con claridad.</i>	She speaks clearly.
<i>Ella habla de manera clara.</i>	She speaks clearly
<i>Ella habla de modo claro.</i>	She speaks clearly.

## ADVERBS NOT FORMED FROM ADJECTIVES

Some Spanish adverbs and adverbial expressions are not formed from adjectives. These adverbs generally express time, order, location, and quantity and answer the questions “How?” “Where?” “When?” and “How much?” The following adverbs are distinct and totally unrelated to any Spanish adjective:

<b>Adverb</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>a fondo</i>	thoroughly
<i>a menudo, muchas veces</i>	often
<i>a veces</i>	sometimes
<i>abajo</i>	downstairs
<i>acá</i>	here
<i>ahí</i>	there
<i>ahora</i>	now
<i>ahora mismo</i>	right now
<i>al fin</i>	finally
<i>algo</i>	something
<i>allá</i>	there
<i>allí</i>	there
<i>anoche</i>	last night
<i>anteayer</i>	day before yesterday
<i>antes</i>	before
<i>apenas</i>	hardly
<i>aquí</i>	here
<i>arriba</i>	upstairs
<i>aún</i>	still
<i>ayer</i>	yesterday
<i>bastante</i>	quite, enough, rather
<i>bien</i>	well
<i>casi</i>	almost
<i>cerca</i>	near
<i>cuando</i>	when
<i>cuanto antes</i>	as soon as possible
<i>de buena gana</i>	willingly
<i>de mala gana</i>	unwillingly
<i>de nuevo</i>	again

(continues)



**(continued)**

<b>Adverb</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>de pronto</i>	suddenly
<i>de repente</i>	suddenly
<i>de vez en cuando</i>	from time to time
<i>demasiado, excesivamente</i>	too, excessively
<i>dentro de poco</i>	shortly
<i>derecho</i>	straight ahead
<i>despacio</i>	slowly
<i>después</i>	afterward
<i>enfrente</i>	in front of, opposite
<i>enseguida</i>	immediately
<i>entonces</i>	then
<i>esta noche</i>	tonight
<i>hoy</i>	today
<i>hoy (en) día</i>	nowadays
<i>jamás</i>	never
<i>lejos</i>	far
<i>luego</i>	then
<i>mal</i>	badly
<i>mañana</i>	tomorrow
<i>más</i>	more
<i>más tarde</i>	later
<i>mejor</i>	better
<i>menos</i>	less
<i>mientras</i>	meanwhile
<i>muchas veces</i>	often
<i>mucho</i>	a lot
<i>muy</i>	very
<i>nada</i>	nothing
<i>nunca</i>	never

<b>Adverb</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>peor</i>	worse
<i>pocas veces</i>	seldom
<i>poco</i>	little
<i>por consiguiente</i>	consequently
<i>por supuesto</i>	of course
<i>primero</i>	first
<i>pronto</i>	soon
<i>rara vez</i>	seldom
<i>siempre</i>	always
<i>sin duda</i>	undoubtedly
<i>sin embargo</i>	however, nevertheless
<i>tal vez</i>	perhaps
<i>también</i>	also, too
<i>tan</i>	as, to
<i>tanto</i>	so much
<i>tarde</i>	late
<i>temprano</i>	soon, early
<i>todavía</i>	still, yet
<i>todos los días</i>	every day
<i>ya</i>	already
<i>ya no</i>	no longer

**Examples:**

*¿Tiene Ud. bastante dinero?*

*Tè adoro tanto.*

*Ya no fumo.*

Do you have enough money?

I adore you so much.

I no longer smoke.

## Lo + Adverb

The neuter article, *lo*, can be used before an adverb of quantity to form a noun:

*Lo poco que me dieron no es suficiente.* The little that they gave me isn't enough.

*Lo más que haces, lo más aprendes.* The more you do, the more you learn.

## ADJECTIVES VS. ADVERBS

The Spanish words in the following table serve as both adjectives and adverbs. As adverbs, the words remain invariable. As adjectives, however, the following should be noted:

- *Mucho*, *poco*, and *demasiado* agree in number and gender with the nouns they modify.
- *Mejor* and *peor* agree in number only with *-es* added to form the plural.
- *Más* and *menos* are invariable.

## Words Used as Both Adjectives and Adverbs

Word		Used As Adjective		Used as Adverb	
Spanish	English	Spanish	English	Spanish	English
<i>más</i>	more	<i>Tengo más oportunidades.</i>	I have more opportunities.	<i>Hablo más rápidamente.</i>	I speak more.
<i>menos</i>	less, fewer	<i>Tengo menos oportunidades.</i>	I have fewer opportunities.	<i>Hablo menos rápidamente.</i>	I speak less quickly.
<i>poco</i>	few, little	<i>Tengo pocas oportunidades.</i>	I have few opportunities.	<i>Hablo poco.</i>	I speak a little.
<i>mucho</i>	much, many	<i>Tengo muchas oportunidades.</i>	I have many opportunities.	<i>Hablo mucho.</i>	I speak a lot.
<i>mejor</i>	better	<i>Tengo mejores oportunidades.</i>	I have better opportunities.	<i>Hablo mejor.</i>	I speak better.
<i>peor</i>	worse	<i>Tengo peores oportunidades.</i>	I have worse opportunities.	<i>Hablo peor.</i>	I speak worse.
<i>demasiado</i>	too much, too many	<i>Tengo demasiadas oportunidades.</i>	I have too many opportunities.	<i>Hablo demasiado.</i>	I speak too much.

## Distinct Forms

The following distinctions are important:

- *Bueno* (“good”) and *malo* (“bad”) are adjectives and agree in number and gender with the nouns they modify:

*Tengo buenas notas.*                      I have good grades.

*Ella tuvo malos sueños.*                She had bad dreams.

- *Bien* (“well”) and *mal* (“badly”) are adverbs and show no agreement:

*Ud. baila bien.*                              You dance well.

*Cantamos mal.*                              We sing badly.

## POSITIONING OF ADVERBS

An adverb is generally placed after the verb it modifies. Sometimes, however, the position of an adverb in a sentence is variable, and the adverb may be placed where it would logically be placed in English:

*Ella trabaja pacientemente.*              She works patiently.

*Claramente, Ud. no comprende bien.*    Clearly, you don’t understand well.

Two adverbs that have the *-mente* ending cannot appear in the same sentence. To avoid this problem, use *con* + noun, *de manera* + noun, or *de modo* + noun for one of the adverbs. In a series of adverbs, add *-mente* only to the last adverb:

*Generalmente, los alumnos contestan*    Generally, the students answer politely.  
*con cortesía (de manera cortés, de*  
*modo cortés).*

*Ella piensa profunda e intensamente.*    She thinks profoundly and intensely.

## Comparisons

Two types of *comparisons* can be made: a comparison showing inequality, where two things are deemed to be of greater or lesser superiority, and a comparison of equality, where things are deemed to be equal. Comparisons are most often made using adjectives and adverbs, but they may also be made using nouns or verbs.

## COMPARISONS OF EQUALITY

Comparisons of equality show that two things are equal. Comparisons of equality are made in the following manner:

- Adjectives and adverbs are compared by using *tan* + adjective or adverb + *como* (“as . . . as”):

<i>Ella es tan inteligente como yo.</i>	She is as smart as I am.
<i>Él habla tan fluentemente como tú.</i>	He speaks as fluently as you.

- Nouns are compared by using *tanto(a/os/as)* + noun + *como* (“as much/many . . . as”):

<i>Hice tantas faltas como Ud.</i>	I made as many mistakes as you.
------------------------------------	---------------------------------

- Verbs are compared by using *tanto como* (“as much as”):

<i>Ella estudia tanto como su hermana.</i>	She studies as much as her sister.
--	------------------------------------

## COMPARISONS OF INEQUALITY

Comparisons of inequality show that two things are unequal. Comparisons of inequality are made in the following manner:

- Adjectives, adverbs, and nouns are compared to show superiority by using *más* + (adjective, adverb, or noun) + *que* + (name, noun, or subject pronoun):

<i>Mi hermana es más alta que yo.</i>	My sister is taller than I am.
<i>Julio trabaja más hábilmente que Juan.</i>	Julio works more skillfully than Juan.
<i>Hay más calorías en chocolate que en pan.</i>	There are more calories in chocolate than in bread.

- Adjectives, adverbs, and nouns are compared to show inferiority by using *menos* + adverb + *que* + (name, noun, or subject pronoun):

<i>Soy menos optimista que él.</i>	I am less optimistic than he.
<i>Llora menos amargamente que Ana.</i>	She cries less bitterly than Ana.
<i>Mi composición tiene menos faltas que la tuya.</i>	My composition has fewer mistakes than yours.

## EXPRESSING “THAN” IN COMPARATIVE SENTENCES

“Than” is usually expressed with *que* in a comparison:

<i>Él es más fuerte que yo.</i>	He is stronger than I am.
---------------------------------	---------------------------

If a number is used in a negative comparative sentence, *que* expresses “than.” If, however, the sentence is affirmative, *de* is used to express “than”:

*No recibí más (menos) que cien dólares.* I didn’t receive more (less) than one hundred dollars.

*Recibí más (menos) de cincuenta dólares.* I received more than fifty dollars.

If the comparison uses one verb for both clauses, *que* expresses “than.” If, however, the sentence contains two different verbs, and the noun in question is the object of both verbs, *de* + definite article (*el, la, los, las*) + *que* is used to express “than”:

*Ahorro más (menos) dinero que mi hermano.* I save more (less) money than my brother.

*Ahorro más dinero del que gana mi hermano.* I save more money than my brother earns. (“Money” is the object of the verb “save” and the verb “earns.”)

If the noun in question is not the object of both verbs, or if an adjective or an adverb is being compared, *de lo que*, which is invariable, is used to express “than”:

*Ahorro más dinero de lo que se imaginan mis padres.* I save more money than my parents imagine. (“Money” is the object of the verb “save,” but “money” is not the object of the verb “imagine.”)

*Ella es más inteligente de lo que piensa Ud.* She is more intelligent than you think.

*Naturalmente, él corre más rápido de lo que camina.* Naturally, he runs more quickly than he walks.

## The Superlative

---

Unlike the comparative, which compares things, the *superlative* shows that something is the best of its kind. Whereas the English comparative generally ends in -er, the superlative ends in -est.

### THE RELATIVE SUPERLATIVE

The *relative superlative* shows the superiority of someone or something with relation to some other people or things. It is formed in one of the following ways:

- Subject + verb + *el (la, los, las)* + *más (menos)* + adjective + *de*:

*Ella es la más inteligente de la clase.* She is the smartest in the class.

- Subject + verb + *el (la, los, las)* + noun + *más (menos)* + adjective + *de*:

*Ella es la alumna más inteligente  
de la clase.*

She is the smartest student in  
the class.

## THE ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE

The *absolute superlative* expresses the best of its kind. It is formed in one of the following ways:

- Add *-ísimo, -ísima, -ísimos, or -ísimas* to the adjective, according to the gender and number of the noun it is modifying. An adjective or adverb that ends in a vowel drops the final vowel before adding the absolute superlative ending. The meaning of the absolute superlative is the same as *muy* + adjective (“very” + adjective):

*Tus perros son gordísimos.  
Ella es bellísima.  
Te quiero muchísimo.*

Your dogs are very fat.  
She is very beautiful.  
I love you a lot.

### Irregularities in Superlatives

Adjectives that end in *-co(a), -go(a), -ble, or -z* change *c* to *qu*, *g* to *gu*, *ble* to *bil*, and *z* to *c*, respectively, before adding the absolute superlative ending:

*Uds. son comiquísimos.*

You are very funny.

*La piscina es grandísima.*

The pool is very large.

*La profesora es amabilísima.*

The teacher is very friendly.

*Ellas son felicísimas.*

They are very happy.

- For adverbs, add *-mente* to the feminine, singular absolute superlative of the adjective (*-ísima* ending):

*Él conduce lentísimamente.*

He drives very slowly.

*Ella piensa profundísimamente.*

She thinks very profoundly.

- For adverbs in a phrase that expresses possibility, use the neuter article, *lo*, in the formula subject + verb + *lo* + *más (menos)* + adverb (+ *de* + noun):

*Él corre lo más rápido.*

He runs the fastest.

*Esa muchacha habla lo menos  
cortésmente de todas.*

That girl speaks the least courteously  
of all.

## IRREGULAR COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

Some Spanish adjectives and adverbs have irregular forms in the comparative and the superlative, as shown in the following table:

### Comparison of Adjectives

Adjective		Comparative		Superlative	
Spanish	English	Spanish	English	Spanish	English
<i>bueno(a/os/as)</i>	good	<i>mejor(es)</i>	better	<i>el (la) mejor, los (las) mejores</i>	the best
<i>malo(a/os/as)</i>	bad	<i>peor(es)</i>	worse	<i>el (la) peor, los (las) peores</i>	the worst
<i>viejo(a/os/as)</i>	old	<i>mayor(es)</i>	greater, older	<i>el (la) mayor,</i>	the greatest, the oldest
<i>grande(s)</i>	great, big	<i>más grande(s)</i>	larger	<i>los (las) mayores, el (la) más grande, los (las) más grandes</i>	the largest
		<i>menos grande(s)</i>	less large	<i>el (la) menos grande, los (las) menos grandes</i>	the least large
<i>joven (jóvenes)</i>	young	<i>menor(es)</i>	younger, minor, lesser	<i>el (la) menor, los (las) menores</i>	the least, the youngest
<i>pequeño (a/os/as)</i>	small	<i>más pequeño (a/os/as)</i>	smaller	<i>el (la) más pequeño(a), los (las) más pequeños(as)</i>	the smallest
		<i>menos pequeño (a/os/as)</i>	less small	<i>el (la) menos pequeño(a), los (las) menos pequeños(as)</i>	the least small

### Examples:

- Mis ideas son buenas pero las tuyas son las mejores.* My ideas are good, but yours are the best.
- Sus notas son malas pero las mías son peores.* Your grades are bad, but mine are worse.
- Mi abuelo es el mayor de la familia.* My grandfather is the oldest in the family.
- Tu primo es más pequeño que tú.* Your cousin is smaller than you.



### **Mejor and Peor/Mayor and Menor**

The adjectives *mejor* (“better”) and *peor* (“worse”) generally precede the noun they modify, whereas *mayor* (“older”) and *menor* (“younger”) generally follow the noun:

*Eres mi mejor amiga.*                      You are my best friend.

*Mi hermana menor es artista.*      My younger sister is an artist.

The irregular adverbs *bien* (“well”) and *mal* (“badly”) compare as follows:

### **Comparison of Adverbs**

Adverb		Comparative		Superlative	
Spanish	English	Spanish	English	Spanish	English
<i>bien</i>	well	<i>mejor</i>	better	<i>el mejor</i>	the best
<i>mal</i>	badly	<i>peor</i>	worse	<i>el peor</i>	the worst

#### **Examples:**

*Tú bailas bien pero yo bailo mejor.*      You dance well, but I dance better.

*Él nada el peor de todos.*                      He swims the worst of everyone.

### **Grande and Pequeño vs. Mayor and Menor**

The adjectives *grande* (“big”) and *pequeño* (“little”) have comparative forms with different meanings. *Más grande* and *más pequeño* compare differences in physical height and size, whereas *mayor* (“older”) and *menor* (“younger”) compare differences in age or status:

*Soy más pequeña que mi hermana.*                      I’m smaller than my sister.

*Mi hermana mayor no viene a la fiesta.*      My older sister isn’t coming to the party.

*Es un problema de menor importancia.*      It’s a minor problem.

# THE PASSIVE VOICE

## The Passive Voice Defined

---

The *active voice* is the voice that is normally used in conversation and writing. In the active voice, the subject noun or pronoun performs the action. In contrast, in the *passive voice*, the subject or subject pronoun is acted upon by another agent, either a person or a thing. The passive voice is not generally used and is, in fact, avoided in conversation. It is, however, seen in writing:

<b>Voice</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>
Active	<i>La muchacha lavó el coche.</i>	The girl washed the car.
Passive	<i>El coche fue lavado por la muchacha.</i>	The car was washed by the girl.

### Active vs. Passive

The subject and object in a sentence in the active voice become the object (the agent) and the subject, respectively, in a passive sentence:

<b>Voice</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>
Active	<i>La muchacha leyó el poema.</i>	The girl (subject) read the poem (object).
Passive	<i>El poema fue leído por la muchacha.</i>	The poem (subject) was read by the girl (object/agent).

## The Passive Voice with **Ser**

---

The passive construction in Spanish is similar to the English passive construction if the agent (the one performing the action) is mentioned or implied, and it follows this formula: subject + *ser* (“to be,” in the appropriate tense) + past participle + *por* (“by”) + agent:

*Este libro fue escrito por Gail Stein.*      This book was written by Gail Stein.

In the passive voice, the past participle acts as an adjective and, therefore, must agree in number and gender with the subject of the sentence:

*Estas tortas fueron preparadas por mi padre.*      These pies were prepared by my father.

## THE PASSIVE VOICE IN SIMPLE TENSES AND MOODS

The passive voice in simple tenses and moods is formed by using the simple forms of *ser* as shown in the following table:

### The Passive Voice in Simple Tenses and Moods

Tense or Mood	Example	English
Present	<i>La profesora <b>es</b> respetada por sus colegas.</i>	The teacher is respected by her colleagues.
Preterit	<i>El regalo no <b>fue</b> recibido por Julio.</i>	The gift was not received by Julio.
Imperfect	<i>Las reglas <b>eran</b> repetidas por los alumnos.</i>	The rules were repeated by the students.
Future	<i>Los obradores <b>serán</b> pagados por su jefe.</i>	The workers will be paid by their boss.
Conditional	<i>La música <b>sería</b> apreciado por todo el mundo.</i>	The music would be appreciated by everyone.

### Pronouns After *Por*

The following prepositional pronouns are used after *por*: *mí, ti, él, ella, Ud., nosotros, vosotros, ellos, ellas, and Uds.*:

<i>La carta fue escrita por mí.</i>	The letter was written by me.
<i>El coche será comprado por ti.</i>	The car will be bought by you.
<i>¿Es celebrada esa fiesta por Uds.?</i>	Is that holiday celebrated by you?

## THE PASSIVE VOICE IN COMPOUND TENSES AND MOODS

The passive voice in compound tenses and moods is formed by using the compound forms of *ser* (which remain invariable) followed by the past participle of the action (which agrees in number and gender with the subject), as shown in the following table:

### The Passive Voice in Compound Tenses and Moods

Tense or Mood	Example	English
Present perfect	<i>Ese trabajo <b>ha sido</b> terminado por esas mujeres.</i>	That work has been finished by those women.
Pluperfect	<i>Las camas <b>habían sido</b> hechos por mis hijos.</i>	The beds had been made by my children.
Future perfect	<i>Los edificios <b>habrán sido</b> construidos por esa compañía.</i>	The buildings will have been built by that company.
Conditional perfect	<i>La mesa <b>habría sido</b> puesto por ellos.</i>	The table would have been set by them.

### Using *De* Before an Agent

The preposition *por* (“by”) generally precedes the agent in a sentence in the passive voice. *De* (which also means “by” when used in the passive voice) may be used, however, if the past participle expresses feeling or emotion, as opposed to action:

*La obra fue apreciada del público.*

The play was appreciated by the public.

*El presidente era temido de todo el mundo.*

The president was feared by everyone.

## Substitute Constructions for the Passive

---

Substitute constructions for the passive include the following:

- A reflexive construction with *se* is preferred when the agent isn't mentioned or implied and when the subject is a thing. When *se* is used, the verb agrees with the noun subject, which generally follows the verb:

<i>Se vende este coche.</i>	This car is for sale.
<i>Aquí se venden periódicos.</i>	Newspapers are sold here.

- The pronoun *se* may also be used as an indefinite subject, meaning “one,” “people,” “they,” or “you.” In this construction, *se* is not reflexive in nature, and it is used only in the third person singular form (*él*):

- *se dice* (“it is said,” “one says,” “people say,” “they say,” “you say”):

<i>Se dice que saber es poder.</i>	It is said that knowledge is power.
------------------------------------	-------------------------------------

- *se cree* (“it is believed,” “one believes,” “people believe,” “they believe,” “you believe”):

<i>Se cree que la vida no existe en la luna.</i>	People believe that life doesn't exist on the moon.
--	---

- *se sabe* (“it is known,” “one knows,” “people know,” “they know,” “you know”):

<i>Se sabe que la tierra es redonda.</i>	One knows that the earth is round.
--	------------------------------------

- Without *se*, the third person plural forms of the verbs are used:

<i>Dicen que saber es poder.</i>	It is said that knowledge is power.
<i>Creen que la vida no existe en la luna.</i>	People believe that life doesn't exist on the moon.
<i>Saben que la tierra es redonda.</i>	One knows that the earth is round.

- The pronoun *se* is also used when the agent isn't mentioned or implied and a person is acted upon. Although the person acted upon is a direct object, the forms *le* and *les* (instead of *lo* and *los*) are used for masculine, singular and masculine, plural subjects, respectively. *La* and *las* are used for feminine, singular and feminine, plural subjects:

<i>Se ayudará al hombre.</i>	The man will be helped. (Someone will help the man.)
------------------------------	--

<i>Se le ayudará.</i>	He will be helped. (Someone will help him.)
<i>Se sorprendió a los niños.</i>	The children were surprised. (Someone surprised the children.)
<i>Se les sorprendió.</i>	They were surprised. (Someone surprised them.)
<i>Se obedece a la profesora.</i>	The teacher is obeyed. (Someone will obey the teacher.)
<i>Se la obedece.</i>	She is obeyed. (Someone will obey her.)
<i>Se acusarán a las mujeres.</i>	The women will be accused. (Someone will accuse them.)
<i>Se las acusarán.</i>	They will be accused. (Someone will accuse them.)

### Using an Active Construction

The active third person plural form (*ellos*) is often preferred to the indefinite *se* construction:

<i>Ayudarán al hombre.</i>	They will help the man.
<i>Sorprendieron a los niños.</i>	They surprised the children.
<i>Obedecen a la profesora.</i>	They obey the teacher.
<i>Acusarán a las mujeres.</i>	They will accuse the women.



## GLOSSARY

---

### A

**absolute superlative** A construction that expresses the best in a category. [*See Part XIV for more information.*]

**active voice** A voice in which the subject acts. [*See Part XV for more information.*]

**adjective** A word that modifies a noun or a pronoun. [*See Part XIV for more information.*]

**adverb** A word that modifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb. [*See Part XIV for more information.*]

**antecedent** A word or group of words to which a relative pronoun refers. [*See Part XII for more information.*]

**articles** Small words that are generally classified as adjectives. They indicate that a noun or noun substitute will follow. [*See Part II for more information.*]

**auxiliary verb** *See* helping verb. [*See Parts VI and VII for more information.*]

### C

**cardinal number** A number used for counting (for example, one, two, three). [*See Part I for more information.*]

**cognate** A word that is the same or similar in both Spanish and English (for example, *el hospital* is a hospital and *un automóvil* is an automobile). [*See Part II for more information.*]

**comparative** A construction that compares two things and ranks one as better or worse than the other. [*See Part XIV for more information.*]

**compound mood** A mood that requires a helping verb. [*See Part VII for more information.*]

**compound tense** A past, present, or future tense that requires a helping verb plus a past participle. [*See Part VI for more information.*]

**conditional** A mood that expresses what the subject *would* do under certain circumstances or conditions. [*See Part IV for more information.*]

**conditional perfect** A mood that expresses what the subject *would have done* under certain circumstances or conditions. [*See Part VII for more information.*]

**conjugation** The action of changing the ending of a verb (in the correct tense or mood) so that it agrees with the subject noun or pronoun performing the task. [*See Part III for more information.*]



**conjunction** A word that is used to connect words, phrases, or clauses. [*See Part X for more information.*]

**contraction** The combination of two words into one. [*See Part II for more information.*]

**coordinating conjunction** A conjunction that connects words, phrases, and clauses that are of equal rank. [*See Part X for more information.*]

## D

**definite article** An article—in Spanish, *el* or *la* (“the”)—or *los* and *las* (“the”)—that indicates a specific person or thing (for example, the car). [*See Part II for more information.*]

**demonstrative adjective** An adjective that precedes a noun in order to indicate or point out the person, place, or thing referred to. In Spanish *este, estos, esta, estas* (“this/these”) and *ese, esos, esa, esas* and *aquel, aquellos, aquella, aquellas* (“that/those”) are demonstrative adjectives. [*See Part II for more information.*]

**demonstrative pronoun** A pronoun that stands alone to indicate or point out the person or thing referred to. In Spanish *éste, éstos, ésta, éstas* (“this/these”) and *ése, esos, esa, esas* and *aquél, aquéllos, aquella, aquellas* (“that/those”) are demonstrative pronouns. [*See Part II for more information.*]

**direct object** A noun or pronoun that answers the question “whom” or “what” the subject is acting upon. A direct object may refer to a person, a place, a thing, or an idea. [*See Part II for more information.*]

## E

**exclamation** A word or phrase used to show surprise, delight, incredulity, emphasis, or other strong emotion. [*See Part XI for more information.*]

## F

**first person** The *yo* singular form of a verb or the *nosotros* plural form of a verb. [*See Part III for more information.*]

**formal command** The *Ud.* singular command form or the *Uds.* plural command form of a verb. [*See Part VIII for more information.*]

**future** A tense that expresses what the subject will do or is going to do or what action will or is going to take place in a future time. [*See Part III for more information.*]

**future perfect** A tense that expresses what the subject will have done by a future time. [*See Part VI for more information.*]

**G**

**gender** A classification that indicates whether a word is masculine or feminine.

[See Part II for more information.]

**gerund** A verb form that expresses an action that is taking place. In English, a gerund ends in *-ing*. [See Part V for more information.]

**H**

**helping verb** Also called an *auxiliary verb*, one of two elements needed to form a compound tense or mood. In Spanish, the auxiliary verb is *haber* (“to have”). [See Parts VI and VII for more information.]

**I**

**idiom** A word or an expression whose meaning cannot be readily understood by either its grammar or the words used (for example, *Llueve a cántaros*. [“It’s raining cats and dogs.”]). [See Part II for more information.]

**imperative** A verb form used to give commands or make requests. [See Part VIII for more information.]

**imperfect** A past tense that expresses a continuous, repeated, habitual, or incomplete action, situation, or event in the past that *was* going on at an indefinite time or that used to happen in the past. [See Part III for more information.]

**imperfect subjunctive** A mood that has the same applications as the present subjunctive but refers to an action that has already occurred or that would or would not occur under certain circumstances. [See Part IV for more information.]

**indefinite adjective** An adjective that expresses “any” (*alguno [algún]-a, -os, -as*); “any, some” (*cualquier[-a]*); *no* (*ninguno [ningún], ninguna, ningunos, ningunas*); “other, another” (*otro[-a, -os, -as]*); “certain” (*cierto[-a, -os, -as]*); “one” (*uno [un]*), “some” (*unos, unas*); “each, every” (*cada*); “every, all” (*todo[-a, -os, -as]* “many, much” (*mucho[-a, -os, -as]*); “such” (*tal[-es]*); and so on. [See Part XII for more information.]

**indefinite adverb** An adverb that expresses “already” (*ya*); “not yet” (*todavía no*); “still” (*todavía*); “no longer” (*ya no*); “always” (*siempre*); “never” (*nunca, jamás*); “also” (*también*); “neither” (*tampoco, ni . . . [tampoco]*); “more than” (*más de*); “not more than” (*no más de*). [See Part XII for more information.]

**indefinite article** An article—in Spanish, *un* or *una* (“a,” “an”) or *unos* and *unas* (“some”)—that refers to persons and objects not specifically identified (for example, a city). [See Part II for more information.]

**indefinite pronoun** A pronoun that expresses “any,” “no one” (*nadie*); “none” (*ninguno [-a, -os, -as]*); “some” (*alguno[-a, -os, -as]*); “everyone” (*todo el mundo*); “someone” (*alguien*); “anyone” (*nadie* or *cualquiera*); “something” (*algo*); “anything” (*cualquiera*); “nothing” (*nada*); “whoever” (*quien[es]quiera*); “all” (*todo*); and so on. [See Part XII for more information.]

**indicative** A verb tense (past, present, or future) that states a fact. [*See Part III for more information.*]

**indirect command** A command form that expresses “let” or “let’s.” [*See Part VIII for more information.*]

**indirect object** A noun or pronoun that refers only to people and that tells “to whom” or “for whom” the subject is doing something. [*See Part II for more information.*]

**infinitive** The basic “to” form of a verb (for example, *hablar* [“to speak”]). [*See Part IX for more information.*]

**informal command** The *tú* singular command form or the *vosotros* plural command form. [*See Part VIII for more information.*]

**interrogative** A word that asks a question (for example, *¿qué?* [“what”], *¿cómo?* [“how”]). [*See Part XI for more information.*]

**intonation** The action of asking a question by inserting a rising inflection at the end of the statement. [*See Part XI for more information.*]

**invariable** A word that does not change. [*See Part XIV for more information.*]

**inversion** The reversal of the word order of the subject pronoun and the conjugated verb in order to form a question. [*See Part XI for more information.*]

**irregular verb** A verb that doesn’t follow the regular rules of conjugation. [*See Part III for more information.*]

## M

**marker** An article or adjective that indicates the gender (masculine or feminine) and the number (singular or plural) of a noun. [*See Part II for more information.*]

**mood** The manner in which the action or state of a verb is perceived or how the speaker envisions the action or state being expressed. In Spanish there are five moods: the indicative, the conditional, the subjunctive, the imperative, and the infinitive. [*See Part IV for more information.*]

## N

**neuter** A word that has no gender (that is, no masculine or feminine form). [*See Part II for more information.*]

**noun** A word used to name a person, a place, a thing, an idea, or a quality. [*See Part II for more information.*]

**number** A classification that indicates whether a word is singular or plural. [*See Part II for more information.*]

## O

**object pronoun** A word that takes the place of a direct or indirect object noun.

[See Part II for more information.]

**ordinal number** A number that is used to express rank order (for example, first, second, third). [See Part I for more information.]

## P

**passive** A voice in which the subject is acted upon. [See Part XV for more information.]

**past conditional** A tense that expresses what the subject *would have done* under certain conditions. [See Part VII for more information.]

**past participle** A verb form that expresses an action that *has occurred* in the past. [See Part VI for more information.]

**perfect infinitive** A verb form that uses the infinitive of the helping verb *haber* and the past participle. [See Part X for more information.]

**personal pronoun** A subject, prepositional, or object pronoun. [See Part II for more information.]

**pluperfect** A tense that expresses what the subject had done. [See Part VI for more information.]

**pluperfect subjunctive** A mood that expresses an action or event that occurred and was completed in the past. [See Part VII for more information.]

**plural** A word that expresses more than one. [See Part II for more information.]

**possessive adjective** An adjective that shows that something belongs to someone (for example, *mi* [“my”], *tu* [“your”]). Spanish possessive adjectives have short and long forms. [See Part II for more information.]

**possessive pronoun** A pronoun that replaces a possessive adjective and its accompanying noun (for example, *el mío*, *los míos*, *la mía*, *las mías* [“mine”]). [See Part II for more information.]

**preposition** A word used to relate elements in a sentence: noun to noun, verb to verb, or verb to noun/pronoun (for example, *a* [“to”], *de* [“of”], *por* [“for”]). [See Part X for more information.]

**prepositional pronoun** A pronoun used after a preposition. [See Part II for more information.]

**present** A tense that expresses what is happening now. [See Part III for more information.]

**present perfect** A tense that expresses an action that began in the past and continues up to the present or an action that was completed at an unspecified time in the past but is somehow connected to the present. [See Part VI for more information.]

**present perfect subjunctive** A mood that expresses an action or event that occurred and was completed in the past in the dependent clause before the action of the main clause took place. [See Part VII for more information.]

**present subjunctive** A mood that expresses unreal, hypothetical, theoretical, imaginary, uncorroborated, or unconfirmed conditions or situations that result from doubts, emotions, wishes, wants, needs, desires, feelings, speculations, and suppositions. [See Part IV for more information.]

**preterit** A tense that expresses a *completed* past action or event. [See Part XIV for more information.]

**preterit perfect** A tense that expresses an action or event that had ended in the past. [See Part III for more information.]

**progressive tense** A past, present, or future form of a verb that shows what the subject is in the act of doing at the time mentioned. [See Part V for more information.]

**pronoun** A word that is used to replace a noun (a person, a place, a thing, an idea, or a quality). [See Part II for more information.]

## R

**reflexive pronoun** A pronoun that is used with a reflexive verb. [See Part XIII for more information.]

**reflexive verb** A verb that shows that the subject is performing the action upon itself. [See Part XIII for more information.]

**regular verb** A verb that follows the regular rules for conjugation. [See Part III for more information.]

**relative pronoun** A pronoun that joins a main clause (that is, a clause that can stand alone) to a dependent clause (for example, *que* [“who,” “whom,” “that,” “which”] *quien/quienes* [“who,” “whom”]). [See Part XII for more information.]

## S

**second person** The *tú* singular form of a verb or the *vosotros* plural form of a verb. [See Part III for more information.]

**simple tense** A tense in which only one verb form is needed to express when the action occurs. [See Part III for more information.]

**spelling-change verb** A verb that has a spelling change before certain letters to preserve the original sound of the verb, in accordance with the rules for Spanish pronunciation. [See Part III for more information.]

**stem-changing verb** A verb that has a change in the stem vowel when it is conjugated. [See Part III for more information.]

**subject** A noun or pronoun that performs the action of the verb. [*See Part II for more information.*]

**subject pronoun** A pronoun that replaces a noun subject, whether it is a person or a thing (for example, *él* [“he,” “it”]). [*See Part II for more information.*]

**subjunctive** A mood that expresses wishing, emotion, doubt, or denial. [*See Parts IV and VII for more information.*]

**subordinating conjunction** A conjunction that connects subordinate clauses with main clauses (for example, *aunque* [“although”], *apenas* [“as soon as”]). [*See Part X for more information.*]

**superlative** A construction that indicates that something is the best or worst in its category. [*See Part XIV for more information.*]

## T

**tense** The time in which the action of a verb takes place. [*See Parts III and VI for more information.*]

**third person** The *él*, *ella*, or *Ud.* singular form of a verb or the *ellos*, *ellas*, or *Uds.* plural forms of a verb. [*See Part III for more information.*]

## V

**verb** A word that shows an action or a state of being. [*See Part III for more information.*]

**verbal** A word that is derived from a verb but used as a noun or as an adjective (or sometimes as an adverb). The three verbals are gerunds, participles, and infinitives. [*See Parts V, VI, and IX for more information.*]



## **APPENDIX A**

# **VERB CHARTS**

Use the charts that follow as a quick reference tool for verb conjugation in all tenses and moods. Verbs are separated as regular (*-ar, -er, -ir*), stem-changing, spelling-change, those with both stem and spelling changes, and irregular.



# Regular Verbs

## -AR VERBS

*amar* (“to love”)

### Gerund

amando

### Past Participle

amado

### Commands

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	ame	no ame
Uds.	amen	no amen
tú	ama	no ames
vosotros	amad	no améis
nosotros	amemos	no amemos

Mood	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Indicative	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	amo amas ama	amamos amáis aman	he amado has amado ha amado	hemos amado habéis amado han amado
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	amé amaste amó	amamos amasteis amaron	hube amado hubiste amado hubo amado	hubimos amado hubisteis amado hubieron amado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	amaba amabas amaba	amábamos amabais amaban	había amado habías amado había amado	habíamos amado habíais amado habían amado
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	amaré amarás amará	amaremos amaréis amarán	habré amado habrás amado habrá amado	habremos amado habréis amado habrán amado
<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>		
amaría amarías amaría	amaríamos amaríais amarían	habría amado habrías amado habría amado	habríamos amado habrías amado habrían amado	
Subjunctive	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	ame ames ame	amemos améis amen	haya amado hayas amado haya amado	hayamos amado hayáis amado hayan amado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
amara amaras amara	amáramos amarais amaran	hubiera amado hubieras amado hubiera amado	hubiéramos amado hubierais amado hubieran amado	

**-ER VERBS****correr** (“to run”)**Gerund**

corriendo

**Past Participle**

corrido

**Commands****Pronoun**

Ud.

Uds.

tú

vosotros

nosotros

**Affirmative**

corra

corran

corre

corred

corramos

**Negative**

no corra

no corran

no corras

no corráis

no corramos

Mood	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Indicative	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	corro corres corre	corremos corréis corren	he corrido has corrido ha corrido	hemos corrido habéis corrido han corrido
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	corrí corriste corrió	corrimos corristeis corrieron	hube corrido hubiste corrido hubo corrido	hubimos corrido hubisteis corrido hubieron corrido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	corría corrías corría	corríamos corríais corrían	había corrido habías corrido había corrido	habíamos corrido habíais corrido habían corrido
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	correré correrás correrá	correremos correréis correrán	habré corrido habrás corrido habrá corrido	habremos corrido habréis corrido habrán corrido
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
correría correrías correría	correríamos correríais correrían	habría corrido habrías corrido habría corrido	habríamos corrido habrías corrido habrían corrido	
Subjunctive	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	corra corras corra	corramos corráis corran	haya corrido hayas corrido haya corrido	hayamos corrido hayáis corrido hayan corrido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
corriera corrieras corriera	corriéramos corrierais corrieran	hubiera corrido hubieras corrido hubiera corrido	hubiéramos corrido hubierais corrido hubieran corrido	

**-IR VERBS****decidir** (“to decide”)**Gerund**

decidiendo

**Past Participle**

decidido

**Commands**

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	decida	no decida
Uds.	decidan	no decidan
tú	decide	no decidas
vosotros	decidid	no decidáis
nosotros	decidamos	no decidamos

Mood	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Indicative	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	decido decides decide	decidimos decidís deciden	he decidido has decidido ha decidido	hemos decidido habéis decidido han decidido
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	decidí decidiste decidió	decidimos decidisteis decidieron	hube decidido hubiste decidido hubo decidido	hubimos decidido hubisteis decidido hubieron decidido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	decidía decidías decidía	decidíamos decidíais decidían	había decidido habías decidido había decidido	habíamos decidido habíais decidido habían decidido
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	decidiré decidirás decidirá	decidiremos decidiréis decidirán	habré decidido habrás decidido habrá decidido	habremos decidido habréis decidido habrán decidido
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
decidiría decidirías decidiría	decidiríamos decidiríais decidirían	habría decidido habrías decidido habría decidido	habríamos decidido habríais decidido habrían decidido	
Subjunctive	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	decida decidas decida	decidamos decidáis decidan	haya decidido hayas decidido haya decidido	hayamos decidido hayáis decidido hayan decidido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
decidiera decidieras decidiera	decidiéramos decidierais decidieran	hubiera decidido hubieras decidido hubiera decidido	hubiéramos decidido hubierais decidido hubieran decidido	

# Spelling-Change Verbs

## -CAR VERBS

**secar** (“to dry”)

**Gerund**

secando

**Past Participle**

secado

### Commands

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	seque	no seque
Uds.	sequen	no sequen
tú	seca	no seques
vosotros	secad	no sequéis
nosotros	sequemos	no sequemos

	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	seco secas seca	secamos secáis secan	he secado has secado ha secado	hemos secado habéis secado han secado
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	sequé secaste secó	secamos secasteis secaron	hube secado hubiste secado hubo secado	hubimos secado hubisteis secado hubieron secado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	secaba secabas secaba	secábamos secabais secaban	había secado habías secado había secado	habíamos secado habíais secado habían secado
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	secaré secarás secará	secaremos secaréis secarán	habré secado habrás secado habrá secado	habremos secado habréis secado habrán secado
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
secaría secarías secaría	secaríamos secaríais secarían	habría secado habrías secado habría secado	habríamos secado habrías secado habrían secado	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	seque seques seque	sequemos sequéis sequen	haya secado hayas secado haya secado	hayamos secado hayáis secado hayan secado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
secara secaras secara	secáramos secarais secaran	hubiera secado hubieras secado hubiera secado	hubiéramos secado hubierais secado hubieran secado	

**Other High-Frequency -car Verbs**

<b>Verb</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>acercar</i>	to bring near
<i>aplicar</i>	to apply
<i>arrancar</i>	to pull out
<i>buscar</i>	to look for
<i>chocar</i>	to collide
<i>colocar</i>	to put, to place
<i>comunicar</i>	to communicate
<i>criticar</i>	to criticize
<i>educar</i>	to educate
<i>equivocar</i>	to be wrong
<i>explicar</i>	to explain
<i>identificar</i>	to identify
<i>indicar</i>	to indicate
<i>marcar</i>	to note
<i>modificar</i>	to modify
<i>notificar</i>	to notify
<i>pescar</i>	to fish
<i>picar</i>	to prick, to pierce
<i>platicar</i>	to chat
<i>practicar</i>	to practice
<i>rectificar</i>	to rectify
<i>revocar</i>	to revoke
<i>significar</i>	to mean
<i>tocar</i>	to touch
<i>verificar</i>	to verify

**-GAR VERBS****apagar (“to extinguish”)****Gerund**

apagando

**Past Participle**

apagado

**Commands**

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	apague	no apague
Uds.	apaguen	no apaguen
tú	apaga	no apagues
vosotros	apagad	no apaguéis
nosotros	apaguemos	no apaguemos

	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	apago apagas apaga	apagamos apagáis apagan	he apagado has apagado ha apagado	hemos apagado habéis apagado han apagado
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	apagué apagaste apagó	apagamos apagasteis apagaron	hube apagado hubiste apagado hubo apagado	hubimos apagado hubisteis apagado hubieron apagado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	apagaba apagabas apagaba	apagábamos apagabais apagaban	había apagado habías apagado había apagado	habíamos apagado habíais apagado habían apagado
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	apagaré apagarás apagará	apagaremos apagaréis apagarán	habré apagado habrás apagado habrá apagado	habremos apagado habréis apagado habrán apagado
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
apagaría apagarías apagaría	apagaríamos apagaríais apagarían	habría apagado habrías apagado habría apagado	habríamos apagado habrías apagado habrían apagado	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	apague apagues apague	apaguemos apaguéis apaguen	haya apagado hayas apagado haya apagado	hayamos apagado hayáis apagado hayan apagado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	apagara apagaras apagara	apagáramos apagarais apagaran	hubiera apagado hubieras apagado hubiera apagado	hubiéramos apagado hubierais apagado hubieran apagado

***Other High-Frequency -gar Verbs***

**Verb**

*abrigar*

*cargar*

*encargar*

*llegar*

*pagar*

**English**

to shelter

to load

to order

to arrive

to pay

## **-GUAR VERBS**

### **atestiguar** (“to testify”)

**Gerund**

atestiguando

**Past Participle**

atestiguado

**Commands**

**Pronoun**

Ud.

Uds.

tú

vosotros

nosotros

**Affirmative**

atestigüe

atestigüen

atestigua

atestiguad

atestigüemos

**Negative**

no atestigüe

no atestigüen

no atestigües

no atestigüéis

no atestigüemos

Mood	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	atestiguo atestiguas atestigua	atestiguamos atestiguáis atestiguan	he atestiguado has atestiguado ha atestiguado	hemos atestiguado habéis atestiguado han atestiguado
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	atestigüé atestiguaste atestiguó	atestiguamos atestiguasteis atestiguaron	hube atestiguado hubiste atestiguado hubo atestiguado	hubimos atestiguado hubisteis atestiguado hubieron atestiguado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	atestiguaba atestiguabas atestiguaba	atestiguábamos atestiguabais atestiguaban	había atestiguado habías atestiguado había atestiguado	habíamos atestiguado habíais atestiguado habían atestiguado
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	atestiguaré atestiguarás atestiguará	atestiguaremos atestiguaréis atestiguarán	habré atestiguado habrás atestiguado habrá atestiguado	habremos atestiguado habréis atestiguado habrán atestiguado
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
atestiguaría atestiguarías atestiguaría	atestiguaríamos atestiguaríais atestiguarían	habría atestiguado habrías atestiguado habría atestiguado	habríamos atestiguado habríais atestiguado habrían atestiguado	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	atestigüe atestigües atestigüe	atestigüemos atestigüéis atestigüen	haya atestiguado hayas atestiguado haya atestiguado	hayamos atestiguado hayáis atestiguado hayan atestiguado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	atestiguara atestiguaras atestiguara	atestiguáramos atestiguarais atestiguaran	hubiera atestiguado hubieras atestiguado hubiera atestiguado	hubiéramos atestiguado hubierais atestiguado hubieran atestiguado



**-ZAR VERBS****avanzar** (“to advance”)**Gerund**

avanzando

**Past Participle**

avanzado

**Commands**

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	avance	no avance
Uds.	avancen	no avancen
tú	avanza	no avances
vosotros	avancad	no avancéis
nosotros	avancemos	no avancemos

Mood	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Indicative	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	avanzo avanzas avanza	avanzamos avanzáis avanzan	he avanzado has avanzado ha avanzado	hemos avanzado habéis avanzado han avanzado
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	avancé avanzaste avanzó	avanzamos avanzasteis avanzaron	hube avanzado hubiste avanzado hubo avanzado	hubimos avanzado hubisteis avanzado hubieron avanzado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	avanzaba avanzabas avanzaba	avanzábamos avanzabais avanzaban	había avanzado habías avanzado había avanzado	habíamos avanzado habíais avanzado habían avanzado
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	avanzaré avanzarás avanzará	avanzaremos avanzaréis avanzarán	habré avanzado habrás avanzado habrá avanzado	habremos avanzado habréis avanzado habrán avanzado
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
avanzaría avanzarías avanzaría	avanzaríamos avanzaríais avanzarían	habría avanzado habrías avanzado habría avanzado	habríamos avanzado habrías avanzado habrían avanzado	
Subjunctive	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	avance avances avance	avancemos avancéis avancen	haya avanzado hayas avanzado haya avanzado	hayamos avanzado hayáis avanzado hayan avanzado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	avanzara avanzaras avanzara	avanzáramos avanzarais avanzaran	hubiera avanzado hubieras avanzado hubiera avanzado	hubiéramos avanzado hubierais avanzado hubieran avanzado

**Other High-Frequency -zar Verbs**

<b>Verb</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>alcanzar</i>	to reach
<i>aterrizar</i>	to land
<i>autorizar</i>	to authorize
<i>cruzar</i>	to cross
<i>enlazar</i>	to tie up
<i>especializar</i>	to specialize
<i>gozar</i>	to enjoy
<i>lanzar</i>	to throw
<i>memorizar</i>	to memorize
<i>organizar</i>	to organize
<i>realizar</i>	to fulfill
<i>rizar</i>	to curl
<i>utilizar</i>	to utilize

**-IAR VERBS****guiar** (“to guide”)**Gerund**

guiando

**Past Participle**

guiado

**Commands**

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	guíe	no guíe
Uds.	guíen	no guíen
tú	guía	no guíes
vosotros	guiad	no guíéis
nosotros	guíemos	no guíemos

	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	guío guías guía	guiamos guiáis guían	he guiado has guiado ha guiado	hemos guiado habéis guiado han guiado
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	guíe guiaste guió	guiamos guiasteis guiaron	hube guiado hubiste guiado hubo guiado	hubimos guiado hubisteis guiado hubieron guiado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	guiaba guiabas guiaba	guiábamos guiabais guiaban	había guiado habías guiado había guiado	habíamos guiado habíais guiado habían guiado
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	guiaré guiarás guiará	guiaremos guiaréis guiarán	habré guiado habrás guiado habrá guiad	habremos guiado habréis guiado habrán guiado
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
guiaría guiarías guiaría	guiaríamos guiaríais guiarían	habría guiado habrías guiado habría guiado	habríamos guiado habrías guiado habrían guiado	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	guíe guíes guíe	guiemos guíéis guíen	haya guiado hayas guiado haya guiado	hayamos guiado hayáis guiado hayan guiado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
guiara guiaras guiara	guiáramos guiarais guiaran	hubiera guiado hubieras guiado hubiera guiado	hubiéramos guiado hubierais guiado hubieran guiado	

**Other High-Frequency -iar Verbs**

<b>Verb</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>criar</i>	to raise
<i>desviar</i>	to divert
<i>enviar</i>	to send
<i>espiar</i>	to spy
<i>esquiar</i>	to ski
<i>fiar</i>	to trust
<i>fotografiar</i>	to photograph
<i>liar</i>	to tie up
<i>rociar</i>	to spray
<i>vaciar</i>	to empty
<i>variar</i>	to vary

**-UAR VERBS****actuar** (“to act”)**Gerund**

actuando

**Past Participle**

actuado

**Commands**

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	actúe	no actúe
Uds.	actúen	no actúen
tú	actúa	no actúes
vosotros	actuad	no actuéis
nosotros	actuemos	no actuemos

Mood	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Indicative	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	actúo actúas actúa	actuamos actuáis actúan	he actuado has actuado ha actuado	hemos actuado habéis actuado han actuado
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	actué actuaste actuó	actuamos actuasteis actuaron	hube actuado hubiste actuado hubo actuado	hubimos actuado hubisteis actuado hubieron actuado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	actuaba actuabas actuaba	actuábamos actuabais actuaban	había actuado habías actuado había actuado	habíamos actuado habíais actuado habían actuado
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	actuaré actuarás actuará	actuaremos actuaréis actuarán	habré actuado habrás actuado habrá actuado	habremos actuado habréis actuado habrán actuado
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
actuaría actuarías actuaría	actuaríamos actuaríais actuarían	habría actuado habrías actuado habría actuado	habríamos actuado habríais actuado habrían actuado	
Subjunctive	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	actúe actúes actúe	actuemos actuéis actúen	haya actuado hayas actuado haya actuado	hayamos actuado hayáis actuado hayan actuado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
actuara actuaras actuara	actuáramos actuarais actuaran	hubiera actuado hubieras actuado hubiera actuado	hubiéramos actuado hubierais actuado hubieran actuado	

**Other High-Frequency -uar Verbs**

<b>Verb</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>acentuar</i>	to accentuate
<i>continuar</i>	to continue
<i>evaluar</i>	to evaluate
<i>habituár</i>	to accustom someone to
<i>perpetuar</i>	to perpetuate
<i>situár</i>	to situate

## VOWEL + -CER VERBS

### parecer (“to seem”)

#### Gerund

pareciendo

#### Past Participle

parecido

#### Commands

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	parezca	no parezca
Uds.	parezcan	no parezcan
tú	parece	no parezcas
vosotros	pareced	no parezcáis
nosotros	parezcamos	no parezcamos

Mood	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Indicative	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	parezco pareces parece	parecemos parecéis parecen	he parecido has parecido ha parecido	hemos parecido habéis parecido han parecido
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	parecí pareciste pareció	parecimos parecisteis parecieron	hube parecido hubiste parecido hubo parecido	hubimos parecido hubisteis parecido hubieron parecido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	parecía parecías parecía	parecíamos parecíaís parecían	había parecido habías parecido había parecido	habíamos parecido habíaís parecido habían parecido
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	pareceré parecerás parecerá	pareceremos pareceréis parecerán	habré parecido habrás parecido habrá parecido	habremos parecido habréis parecido habrán parecido
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
parecería parecerías parecería	pareceríamos pareceríaís parecerían	habría parecido habrías parecido habría parecido	habríamos parecido habríaís parecido habrían parecido	
Subjunctive	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	parezca parezcas parezca	parezcamos parezcáis parezcan	haya parecido hayas parecido haya parecido	hayamos parecido hayáis parecido hayan parecido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	pareciera pareciera pareciera	pareciéramos parecieraís parecieran	hubiera parecido hubieras parecido hubiera parecido	hubiéramos parecido hubieraís parecido hubieran parecido

**Other High-Frequency Vowel + -cer Verbs**

<b>Verb</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>agradecer</i>	to thank
<i>aparecer</i>	to appear
<i>conocer</i>	to know
<i>crecer</i>	to grow
<i>desobedecer</i>	to disobey
<i>desaparecer</i>	to disappear
<i>establecer</i>	to establish
<i>merecer</i>	to merit, to deserve
<i>nacer</i>	to be born
<i>obedecer</i>	to obey
<i>oscurecer</i>	to darken
<i>ofrecer</i>	to offer
<i>padecer</i>	to suffer
<i>permanecer</i>	to remain
<i>reconocer</i>	to recognize



## CONSONANT + -CER VERBS

### convencer (“to convince”)

#### Gerund

convenciendo

#### Past Participle

convencido

#### Commands

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	convenga	no convenga
Uds.	convengan	no convengan
tú	convence	no convengas
vosotros	convenced	no convengáis
nosotros	convencamos	no convencamos

Mood	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Indicative	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	convengo convences convence	convencemos convencéis convencen	he convencido has convencido ha convencido	hemos convencido habéis convencido han convencido
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	convencí convenciste convenció	convencimos convencisteis convencieron	hube convencido hubiste convencido hubo convencido	hubimos convencido hubisteis convencido hubieron convencido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	convencía convencías convencía	convencíamos convencíais convencían	había convencido habías convencido había convencido	habíamos convencido habíais convencido habían convencido
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	convenceré convencerás convencerá	convenceremos convenceréis convencerán	habré convencido habrás convencido habrá convencido	habremos convencido habréis convencido habrán convencido
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
convencería convencerías convencería	convenceríamos convenceríais convencerían	habría convencido habrías convencido habría convencido	habríamos convencido habrías convencido habrían convencido	
Subjunctive	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	convenga convengas convenga	convencamos convengáis convengan	haya convencido hayas convencido haya convencido	hayamos convencido hayáis convencido hayan convencido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
convenciera convencieras convenciera	convenciéramos convencierais convencieran	hubiera convencido hubieras convencido hubiera convencido	hubiéramos convencido hubierais convencido hubieran convencido	

**Other High-Frequency Consonant + -cer Verbs**

**Verb**

*ejercer*

*vencer*

**English**

to exercise

to conquer

**-GER VERBS****proteger** (“to protect”)**Gerund**

protegiendo

**Past Participle**

protegido

**Commands**

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	proteja	no proteja
Uds.	protejan	no protejan
tú	protege	no protejas
vosotros	proteged	no protejáis
nosotros	protejamos	no protejamos

	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	protejo proteges protege	protegemos protegeís protegen	he protegido has protegido ha protegido	hemos protegido habéis protegido han protegido
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	protejí protejiste protejió	protegimos protejisteis protejieron	hube protegido hubiste protegido hubo protegido	hubimos protegido hubisteis protegido hubieron protegido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	protegia protejas proteja	protegíamos protejaís protejan	había protegido habías protegido había protegido	habíamos protegido habíaís protegido habían protegido
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	protegeré protegerás protegerá	protegeremos protegeréis protegerán	habré protegido habrás protegido habrá protegido	habremos protegido habréis protegido habrán protegido
<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>		
protegería protegerías protegería	protegeríamos protegeríaís protegerían	habría protegido habrías protegido habría protegido	habríamos protegido habríaís protegido habrían protegido	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	proteja protejas proteja	protejamos protejáis protejan	haya protegido hayas protegido haya protegido	hayamos protegido hayáis protegido hayan protegido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
protegiera protegieras protegiera	protegiéramos protegierais protegerían	hubiera protegido hubieras protegido hubiera protegido	hubiéramos protegido hubierais protegido hubieran protegido	

**Other High-Frequency -ger Verbs**

<b>Verb</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>coger</i>	to seize
<i>emerger</i>	to emerge
<i>escoger</i>	to choose
<i>recoger</i>	to gather, to pick up

## VOWEL + -CIR VERBS

*traducir* (“to translate”)

### **Gerund**

traduciendo

### **Past Participle**

traducido

### **Commands**

#### **Pronoun**

Ud.

Uds.

tú

vosotros

nosotros

#### **Affirmative**

traduzca

traduzcan

traduce

traducid

traduzcamos

#### **Negative**

no traduzca

no traduzcan

no traduzcas

no traduzcáis

no traduzcamos

	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	traduzco traduces traduce	traducimos traducís traducen	he traducido has traducido ha traducido	hemos traducido habéis traducido han traducido
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	traduje tradujiste tradujo	tradujimos tradujisteis tradujeron	hube traducido hubiste traducido hubo traducido	hubimos traducido hubisteis traducido hubieron traducido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	traducía traducías traducía	traducíamos traducíais traducían	había traducido habías traducido había traducido	habíamos traducido habíais traducido habían traducido
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	traduciré traducirás traducirá	traduciremos traduciréis traducirán	habré traducido habrás traducido habrá traducido	habremos traducido habréis traducido habrán traducido
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
traduciría traducirías traduciría	traduciríamos traduciríais traducirían	habría traducido habrías traducido habría traducido	habríamos traducido habríais traducido habrían traducido	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	traduzca traduzcas traduzca	traduzcamos traduzcáis traduzcan	haya traducido hayas traducido haya traducido	hayamos traducido hayáis traducido hayan traducido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	tradujera tradujeras tradujera	tradujéramos tradujerais tradujeran	hubiera traducido hubieras traducido hubiera traducido	hubiéramos traducido hubierais traducido hubieran traducido

**Other High-Frequency Vowel + -cir Verbs**

**Verb**

*conducir*

*producir*

*reproducir*

*reducir*

**English**

to drive

to produce

to reproduce

to reduce

## CONSONANT + *-CIR* VERBS

### *esparcir* (“to spread”)

#### **Gerund**

esparciendo

#### **Past Participle**

esparcido

#### **Commands**

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	esparza	no esparza
Uds.	esparzan	no esparzan
tú	esparce	no esparzas
vosotros	esparcid	no esparzáis
nosotros	esparzamos	no esparzamos

Mood	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Indicative	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	esparzo esparces esparce	esparcimos esparcís esparcen	he esparcido has esparcido ha esparcido	hemos esparcido habéis esparcido han esparcido
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	esparcí esparciste esparció	esparcimos esparcisteis esparcieron	hube esparcido hubiste esparcido hubo esparcido	hubimos esparcido hubisteis esparcido hubieron esparcido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	esparcía esparcías esparcía	esparcíamos esparcíaís esparcían	había esparcido habías esparcido había esparcido	habíamos esparcido habíaís esparcido habían esparcido
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	esparciré esparcirás esparcirá	esparciremos esparciréis esparcirán	habré esparcido habrás esparcido habrá esparcido	habremos esparcido habréis esparcido habrán esparcido
<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>		
esparciría esparcirías esparciría	esparciríamos esparciríaís esparcirían	habría esparcido habrías esparcido habría esparcido	habríamos esparcido habríaís esparcido habrían esparcido	
Subjunctive	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	esparza esparzas esparza	esparzamos esparzáis esparzan	haya esparcido hayas esparcido haya esparcido	hayamos esparcido hayáis esparcido hayan esparcido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
esparciera esparcieras esparciera	esparciéramos esparcierais esparcieran	hubiera esparcido hubieras esparcido hubiera esparcido	hubiéramos esparcido hubierais esparcido hubieran esparcido	

Another high-frequency consonant + *-cir* verb is *fruncir* (“to frown”).

## **-GIR VERBS**

### **exigir (“to demand”)**

**Gerund**

exigiendo

**Past Participle**

exigido

**Commands**

<b>Pronoun</b>	<b>Affirmative</b>	<b>Negative</b>
Ud.	exija	no exija
Uds.	exijan	no exijan
tú	exige	no exijas
vosotros	exigid	no exijáis
nosotros	exijamos	no exijamos

	<b>Mood</b>		<b>Simple Tenses</b>		<b>Compound Tenses</b>	
			<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>				<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	exijo	exigimos	he exigido	hemos exigido	exiges	habéis exigido
	exige	exigís	has exigido	habéis exigido	exige	han exigido
	exigen	exigen	ha exigido	han exigido		
	<b>Preterit</b>				<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	exigí	exigimos	hube exigido	hubimos exigido	exigiste	hubiste exigido
	exigiste	exigisteis	hubiste exigido	hubisteis exigido	exigió	hubieron exigido
	exigió	exigieron	hubo exigido	hubieron exigido		
	<b>Imperfect</b>				<b>Pluperfect</b>	
exigía	exigíamos	había exigido	habíamos exigido	exigías	habíais exigido	
exigían	exigíais	habías exigido	habíais exigido	exigía	habían exigido	
exigían	exigían	había exigido	habían exigido			
<b>Future</b>				<b>Future Perfect</b>		
exigiré	exigiremos	habré exigido	habremos exigido	exigirás	habréis exigido	
exigirán	exigiréis	habrás exigido	habréis exigido	exigirá	habrán exigido	
exigirá	exigirán	habrá exigido	habrán exigido			
<b>Conditional</b>				<b>Conditional Perfect</b>		
exigiría	exigiríamos	habría exigido	habríamos exigido	exigirías	habríais exigido	
exigirían	exigiríais	habrías exigido	habríais exigido	exigiría	habrían exigido	
exigirían	exigirían	habría exigido	habrían exigido			
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>				<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	exija	exijamos	haya exigido	hayamos exigido	exijas	hayáis exigido
	exijan	exijáis	hayas exigido	hayáis exigido	exija	hayan exigido
	exijan	exijan	haya exigido	hayan exigido		
<b>Imperfect</b>				<b>Pluperfect</b>		
exigiera	exigiéramos	hubiera exigido	hubiéramos exigido	exigieras	hubierais exigido	
exigieran	exigierais	hubieras exigido	hubierais exigido	exigiera	hubieran exigido	
exigieran	exigieran	hubiera exigido	hubieran exigido			



**Other High-Frequency -gir Verbs**

<b>Verb</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>dirigir</i>	to direct
<i> fingir</i>	to pretend
<i>surgir</i>	to appear

## **-UIR VERBS (BUT NOT -GUIR VERBS)**

**destruir** (“to destroy”)

**Gerund**

destruyendo

**Past Participle**

destruido

**Commands**

<b>Pronoun</b>	<b>Affirmative</b>	<b>Negative</b>
Ud.	destruya	no destruya
Uds.	destruyan	no destruyan
tú	destruye	no destruyas
vosotros	destruid	no destruyáis
nosotros	destruyamos	no destruyamos

	<b>Mood</b>		<b>Simple Tenses</b>		<b>Compound Tenses</b>	
			<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>			
			destruyo destruyes destruye	destruimos destruís destruyen	he destruído has destruído ha destruído	hemos destruído habéis destruído han destruído
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>			
			destruí destruiste destruyó	destruimos destruisteis destruyeron	hube destruído hubiste destruído hubo destruído	hubimos destruído hubisteis destruído hubieron destruído
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>			
			destruía destruías destruía	destruíamos destruíais destruían	había destruído habías destruído había destruído	habíamos destruído habíais destruído habían destruído
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>			
			destruiré destruirás destruirá	destruiremos destruiréis destruirán	habré destruído habrás destruído habrá destruído	habremos destruído habréis destruído habrán destruído
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>			
		destruiría destruirías destruiría	destruiríamos destruiríais destruirían	habría destruído habrías destruído habría destruído	habríamos destruído habrías destruído habrían destruído	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>			
			destruya destruyas destruya	destruyamos destruyáis destruyan	haya destruído hayas destruído haya destruído	hayamos destruído hayáis destruído hayan destruído
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>			
		destruyera destruyeras destruyera	destruyéramos destruyerais destruyeran	hubiera destruído hubieras destruído hubiera destruído	hubiéramos destruído hubierais destruído hubieran destruído	

**Other High-Frequency -uir Verbs**

<b>Verb</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>concluire</i>	to conclude
<i>construire</i>	to construct
<i>diminuire</i>	to diminish
<i>distribuire</i>	to distribute
<i>excluire</i>	to exclude
<i>fluire</i>	to flow
<i>huire</i>	to flee
<i>incluire</i>	to include
<i>instruire</i>	to instruct
<i>sustituire</i>	to substitute

## **-GUIR VERBS**

**extinguir** (“to extinguish”)

**Gerund**

extinguendo

**Past Participle**

extinguido

**Commands**

<b>Pronoun</b>	<b>Affirmative</b>	<b>Negative</b>
Ud.	extinga	no extinga
Uds.	extingan	no extingan
tú	extingue	no extingas
vosotros	extinguid	no extingáis
nosotros	extingamos	no extingamos

	<b>Simple Tenses</b>		<b>Compound Tenses</b>	
	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	extingo extingues extingue	extinguimos extinguís extinguen	he extinguido has extinguido ha extinguido	hemos extinguido habéis extinguido han extinguido
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	extinguí extinguiste extinguíó	extinguimos extinguisteis extinguieron	hube extinguido hubiste extinguido hubo extinguido	hubimos extinguido hubisteis extinguido hubieron extinguido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	extinguía extinguías extinguía	extinguíamos extinguíais extinguían	había extinguido habías extinguido había extinguido	habíamos extinguido habíais extinguido habían extinguido
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	extinguiré extinguirás extinguirá	extinguiremos extinguiréis extinguirán	habré extinguido habrás extinguido habrá extinguido	habremos extinguido habréis extinguido habrán extinguido
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
extinguiría extinguirías extinguiría	extinguiríamos extinguiríais extinguirían	habría extinguido habrías extinguido habría extinguido	habríamos extinguido habríais extinguido habrían extinguido	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	extinga extingas extinga	extingamos extingáis extingan	haya extinguido hayas extinguido haya extinguido	hayamos extinguido hayáis extinguido hayan extinguido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
extinguiera extinguieras extinguiera	extinguiéramos extinguierais extinguieran	hubiera extinguido hubieras extinguido hubiera extinguido	hubiéramos extinguido hubierais extinguido hubieran extinguido	

Another high-frequency *-guir* verb is *distinguir* (“to distinguish”).

**-EER VERBS****leer** (“to read”)**Gerund**

leyendo

**Past Participle**

leído

**Commands**

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	lea	no lea
Uds.	lean	no lean
tú	lee	no leas
vosotros	leed	no leáis
nosotros	leamos	no leamos

	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	leo lees lee	leemos leéis leen	he leído has leído ha leído	hemos leído habéis leído han leído
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	leí leíste leyó	leímos leísteis leyeron	hube leído hubiste leído hubo leído	hubimos leído hubisteis leído hubieron leído
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	leía leías leía	leíamos leíais leían	había leído habías leído había leído	habíamos leído habíais leído habían leído
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	leeré leerás leerá	leeremos leeréis leerán	habré leído habrás leído habrá leído	habremos leído habréis leído habrán leído
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
leería leerías leería	leeríamos leeríais leerían	habría leído habrías leído habría leído	habríamos leído habrías leído habrían leído	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	lea leas lea	leamos leáis lean	haya leído hayas leído haya leído	hayamos leído hayáis leído hayan leído
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	leyera leyeras leyera	leyéramos leyerais leyeran	hubiera leído hubieras leído hubiera leído	hubiéramos leído hubierais leído hubieran leído

Another high-frequency *-eer* verb is *creer* (“to believe”).

# Stem-Changing Verbs

## -AR VERBS WITH E→IE STEM CHANGES

*recomendar* (“to recommend”)

### Gerund

recomendando

### Past Participle

recomendado

### Commands

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	recomiende	no recomiende
Uds.	recomienden	no recomienden
tú	recomienda	no recomiendes
vosotros	recomendad	no recomendéis
nosotros	recomendemos	no recomendemos

	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	recomiendo recomiendas recomienda	recomendamos recomendáis recomiendan	he recomendado has recomendado ha recomendado	hemos recomendado habéis recomendado han recomendado
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	recomendé recomendaste recomendó	recomendamos recomendasteis recomendaron	hube recomendado hubiste recomendado hubo recomendado	hubimos recomendado hubisteis recomendado hubieron recomendado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	recomendaba recomendabas recomendaba	recomendábamos recomendabais recomendaban	había recomendado habías recomendado había recomendado	habíamos recomendado habíais recomendado habían recomendado
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	recomendaré recomendarás recomendará	recomendaremos recomendaréis recomendarán	habré recomendado habrás recomendado habrá recomendado	habremos recomendado habréis recomendado habrán recomendado
<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>		
recomendaría recomendarías recomendaría	recomendaríamos recomendaríais recomendarían	habría recomendado habrías recomendado habría recomendado	habríamos recomendado habrías recomendado habrían recomendado	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	recomiende recomiendes recomiende	recomendemos recomendéis recomienden	haya recomendado hayas recomendado haya recomendado	hayamos recomendado hayáis recomendado hayan recomendado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
recomendara recomendaras recomendara	recomendáramos recomendarais recomendaran	hubiera recomendado hubieras recomendado hubiera recomendado	hubiéramos recomendado hubierais recomendado hubieran recomendado	

**Other High-Frequency -ar Verbs with e→ie Stem Changes**

<b>Verb</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>asentar</i>	to seat
<i>atravesar</i>	to go through
<i>calentar</i>	to heat
<i>cerrar</i>	to close
<i>despertar</i>	to wake up
<i>encerrar</i>	to lock up
<i>encomendar</i>	to trust
<i>enterrar</i>	to bury
<i>helar</i>	to freeze
<i>nevar</i>	to snow
<i>quebrar</i>	to break
<i>remendar</i>	to mend
<i>sentar</i>	to seat
<i>temblar</i>	to tremble
<i>tentar</i>	to touch, to try

## **-AR VERBS WITH O→UE STEM CHANGES**

**encontrar** (“to meet”)

**Gerund**

encontrando

**Past Participle**

encontrado

**Commands**

<b>Pronoun</b>	<b>Affirmative</b>	<b>Negative</b>
Ud.	encuentre	no encuentre
Uds.	encuentren	no encuentren
tú	encuentra	no encuentres
vosotros	encontrad	no encontréis
nosotros	encontremos	no encontremos

<b>Mood</b>	<b>Simple Tenses</b>		<b>Compound Tenses</b>	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	encuentro encuentras encuentra	encontramos encontráis encuentran	he encontrado has encontrado ha encontrado	hemos encontrado habéis encontrado han encontrado
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	encontré encontraste encontró	encontramos encontrastéis encontraron	hube encontrado hubiste encontrado hubo encontrado	hubimos encontrado hubisteis encontrado hubieron encontrado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	encontraba encontrabas encontraba	encontrábamos encontrabais encontraban	había encontrado habías encontrado había encontrado	habíamos encontrado habíais encontrado habían encontrado
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	encontraré encontrarás encontrará	encontraremos encontraréis encontrarán	habré encontrado habrás encontrado habrá encontrado	habremos encontrado habréis encontrado habrán encontrado
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
encontraría encontrarías encontraría	encontraríamos encontrarías encontrarían	habría encontrado habrías encontrado habría encontrado	habríamos encontrado habrías encontrado habrían encontrado	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	encuentre encuentres encuentre	encontremos encontréis encuentren	haya encontrado hayas encontrado haya encontrado	hayamos encontrado hayáis encontrado hayan encontrado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	encontrara encontraras encontrara	encontráramos encontrarais encontraran	hubiera encontrado hubieras encontrado hubiera encontrado	hubiéramos encontrado hubierais encontrado hubieran encontrado



**Other High-Frequency -ar Verbs with o→ue Stem Changes**

<b>Verb</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>acordar</i>	to agree
<i>acostar</i>	to put to bed
<i>aprobar</i>	to approve
<i>consolar</i>	to console
<i>contar</i>	to tell
<i>costar</i>	to cost
<i>demostrar</i>	to demonstrate
<i>mostrar</i>	to show
<i>probar</i>	to try (on)
<i>sonar</i>	to ring
<i>soñar</i>	to dream
<i>tostar</i>	to toast
<i>tronar</i>	to thunder
<i>volar</i>	to fly

**-CAR VERBS WITH O→UE STEM CHANGES****revolcar** (“to knock down”)**Gerund**

revolcando

**Past Participle**

revolcado

**Commands****Pronoun**

Ud.

Uds.

tú

vosotros

nosotros

**Affirmative**

revuelque

revuelquen

revuelca

revolcad

revolquemos

**Negative**

no revuelque

no revuelquen

no revuelques

no revolquéis

no revolquemos

	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	revuelco revuelcas revuelca	revolcamos revolcáis revuelcan	he revolcado has revolcado ha revolcado	hemos revolcado habéis revolcado han revolcado
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	revolqué revolcaste revolcó	revolcamos revolcasteis revolcaron	hube revolcado hubiste revolcado hubo revolcado	hubimos revolcado hubisteis revolcado hubieron revolcado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	revolcaba revolcabas revolcaba	revolcábamos revolcabais revolcaban	había revolcado habías revolcado había revolcado	habíamos revolcado habíais revolcado habían revolcado
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	revolcaré revolcarás revolcará	revolcaremos revolcaréis revolcarán	habré revolcado habrás revolcado habrá revolcado	habremos revolcado habréis revolcado habrán revolcado
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
revolcaría revolcarías revolcaría	revolcaríamos revolcaríais revolcarían	habría revolcado habrías revolcado habría revolcado	habríamos revolcado habríais revolcado habrían revolcado	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	revuelque revuelques revuelque	revolquemos revolquéis revuelquen	haya revolcado hayas revolcado haya revolcado	hayamos revolcado hayáis revolcado hayan revolcado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
revolcara revolcaras revolcara	revolcáramos revolcarais revolcaran	hubiera revolcado hubieras revolcado hubiera revolcado	hubiéramos revolcado hubierais revolcado hubieran revolcado	

Another high-frequency *-car* verb with an *o→ue* stem change is *volcar* (“to overturn,” “to empty”).

**-GAR VERBS WITH I→IE STEM CHANGES****plegar** (“to fold”)**Gerund**

plegando

**Past Participle**

plegado

**Commands**

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	pliegue	no pliegue
Uds.	plieguen	no plieguen
tú	pliega	no pliegues
vosotros	plegad	no pleguéis
nosotros	pleguemos	no pleguemos

Mood	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Indicative	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	pliego pliegas pliega	plegamos plegáis plegan	he plegado has plegado ha plegado	hemos plegado habéis plegado han plegado
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	plegué plegaste plegó	plegamos plegasteis plegaron	hube plegado hubiste plegado hubo plegado	hubimos plegado hubisteis plegado hubieron plegado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	plegaba plegabas plegaba	plegábamos plegabais plegaban	había plegado habías plegado había plegado	habíamos plegado habíais plegado habían plegado
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	plegaré plegarás plegará	plegaremos plegaréis plegarán	habré plegado habrás plegado habrá plegado	habremos plegado habréis plegado habrán plegado
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
plegaría plegaríais plegaría	plegaríamos plegaríais plegarían	habría plegado habrías plegado habría plegado	habríamos plegado habrías plegado habrían plegado	
Subjunctive	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	pliegue pliegues pliegue	pleguemos pleguéis plieguen	haya plegado hayas plegado haya plegado	hayamos plegado hayáis plegado hayan plegado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
plegara plegaras plegara	plegáramos plegarais plegaran	hubiera plegado hubieras plegado hubiera plegado	hubiéramos plegado hubierais plegado hubieran plegado	

***Other High-Frequency -gar Verbs with i→ie Stem Changes***

<b>Verb</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>fregar</i>	to rub
<i>negar</i>	to deny
<i>sosegar</i>	to calm

**-GAR VERBS WITH O→UE STEM CHANGES****colgar** (“to hang up”)**Gerund**

colgando

**Past Participle**

colgado

**Commands**

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	cuelgue	no cuelgue
Uds.	cuelguen	no cuelguen
tú	cuelga	no cuelgues
vosotros	colgad	no colguéis
nosotros	colguemos	no colguemos

Mood	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Indicative	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	cuelgo cuelgas cuelga	colgamos colgáis colgan	he colgado has colgado ha colgado	hemos colgado habéis colgado han colgado
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	colgué colgaste colgó	colgamos colgasteis colgaron	hube colgado hubiste colgado hubo colgado	hubimos colgado hubisteis colgado hubieron colgado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	colgaba colgabas colgaba	colgábamos colgabais colgaban	había colgado habías colgado había colgado	habíamos colgado habíais colgado habían colgado
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	colgaré colgarás colgará	colgaremos colgaréis colgarán	habré colgado habrás colgado habrá colgado	habremos colgado habréis colgado habrán colgado
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
colgaría colgarías colgaría	colgaríamos colgaríais colgarían	habría colgado habrías colgado habría colgado	habríamos colgado habríais colgado habrían colgado	
Subjunctive	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	cuelgue cuelgues cuelgue	colguemos colguéis cuelguen	haya colgado hayas colgado haya colgado	hayamos colgado hayáis colgado hayan colgado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
colgara colgaras colgara	colgáramos colgarais colgaran	hubiera colgado hubieras colgado hubiera colgado	hubiéramos colgado hubierais colgado hubieran colgado	

**Other High-Frequency -gar Verbs with o→ue Stem Changes**

**Verb**

*descolgar*

*rogar*

**English**

to unhook

to beg

## **-GAR VERBS WITH U→UE STEM CHANGES**

### **jugar (“to play”)**

#### **Gerund**

jugando

#### **Past Participle**

jugado

#### **Commands**

<b>Pronoun</b>	<b>Affirmative</b>	<b>Negative</b>
Ud.	juegue	no juegue
Uds.	jueguen	no jueguen
tú	juega	no juegues
vosotros	jugad	no juguéis
nosotros	juguemos	no juguemos

<b>Mood</b>	<b>Simple Tenses</b>		<b>Compound Tenses</b>	
	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	juego juegas juega	jugamos jugáis juegan	he jugado has jugado ha jugado	hemos jugado habéis jugado han jugado
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	jugué jugaste jugó	jugamos jugasteis jugaron	hube jugado hubiste jugado hubo jugado	hubimos jugado hubisteis jugado hubieron jugado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	jugaba jugabas jugaba	jugábamos jugabais jugaban	había jugado habías jugado había jugado	habíamos jugado habíais jugado habían jugado
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	jugaré jugarás jugará	jugaremos jugaréis jugarán	habré jugado habrás jugado habrá jugado	habremos jugado habréis jugado habrán jugado
<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>		
jugaría jugarías jugaría	jugariamos jugaríaís jugarían	habría jugado habrías jugado habría jugado	habríamos jugado habríaís jugado habrían jugado	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	juegue juegues juegue	juguemos juguéis jueguen	haya jugado hayas jugado haya jugado	hayamos jugado hayáis jugado hayan jugado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	jugara jugaras jugara	jugáramos jugarais jugaran	hubiera jugado hubieras jugado hubiera jugado	hubiéramos jugado hubierais jugado hubieran jugado

## **-ZAR VERBS WITH I→IE STEM CHANGES**

**empezar** (“to begin”)

**Gerund**  
empezando

**Past Participle**  
empezado

### **Commands**

<b>Pronoun</b>	<b>Affirmative</b>	<b>Negative</b>
Ud.	empiece	no empiece
Uds.	empiecen	no empiecen
tú	empieza	no empieces
vosotros	empezad	no empecéis
nosotros	empecemos	no empecemos

	<b>Simple Tenses</b>		<b>Compound Tenses</b>	
	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	empiezo empiezas empieza	empezamos empezáis empiezan	he empezado has empezado ha empezado	hemos empezado habéis empezado han empezado
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	empecé empezaste empezó	empezamos empezasteis empezaron	hube empezado hubiste empezado hubo empezado	hubimos empezado hubisteis empezado hubieron empezado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	empezaba empezabas empezaba	empezábamos empezabais empezaban	había empezado habías empezado había empezado	habíamos empezado habíais empezado habían empezado
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	empezaré empezarás empezará	empezaremos empezaréis empezarán	habré empezado habrás empezado habrá empezado	habremos empezado habréis empezado habrán empezado
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
empezaría empezarías empezaría	empezaríamos empezaríais empezarían	habría empezado habrías empezado habría empezado	habríamos empezado habrías empezado habrían empezado	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	empiece empieces empiece	empecemos empecéis empiecen	haya empezado hayas empezado haya empezado	hayamos empezado hayáis empezado hayan empezado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	empezara empezaras empezara	empezáramos empezarais empezaran	hubiera empezado hubieras empezado hubiera empezado	hubiéramos empezado hubierais empezado hubieran empezado



**Other High-Frequency -zar Verbs with i→ie Stem Changes**

**Verb**

*comenzar*

*tropezar*

**English**

to begin

to hit, to stumble

## **-ZAR VERBS WITH O → UE STEM CHANGES**

**almorzar** (“to eat lunch”)

**Gerund**

almorzando

**Past Participle**

almorzado

**Commands**

<b>Pronoun</b>	<b>Affirmative</b>	<b>Negative</b>
Ud.	almuerce	no almuerce
Uds.	almuercen	no almuercen
tú	almuerza	no almuerces
vosotros	almorзад	no almorцéis
nosotros	almorcemos	no almorцemos

<b>Mood</b>	<b>Simple Tenses</b>		<b>Compound Tenses</b>	
	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	almuerzo almuerzas almuerza	almorzamos almorzáis almuerzan	he almorzado has almorzado ha almorzado	hemos almorzado habéis almorzado han almorzado
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	almorcé almorzaste almorzó	almorzamos almorzasteis almorzarón	hube almorzado hubiste almorzado hubo almorzado	hubimos almorzado hubisteis almorzado hubieron almorzado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	almorzaba almorzabas almorzaba	almorzábamos almorzabais almorzaban	había almorzado habías almorzado había almorzado	habíamos almorzado habíais almorzado habían almorzado
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	almorzaré almorzarás almorzará	almorzaremos almorzaréis almorzarán	habré almorzado habrás almorzado habrá almorzado	habremos almorzado habréis almorzado habrán almorzado
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
almorzaría almorzarías almorzaría	almorzaríamos almorzaríais almorzarían	habría almorzado habrías almorzado habría almorzado	habríamos almorzado habrías almorzado habrían almorzado	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	almuerce almuerces almuerce	almorcemos almorcéis almuercen	haya almorzado hayas almorzado haya almorzado	hayamos almorzado hayáis almorzado hayan almorzado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	almorzara almorzaras almorzara	almorzáramos almorzarais almorzarán	hubiera almorzado hubieras almorzado hubiera almorzado	hubiéramos almorzado hubierais almorzado hubieran almorzado

***Other High-Frequency -zar Verbs with o→ue Stem Changes***

<b>Verb</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>esforzar</i>	to strengthen
<i>forzar</i>	to force
<i>reforzar</i>	to reinforce

## **-ZAR VERBS WITH O → ÜE STEM CHANGES**

### **avergonzar** (“to shame”)

**Gerund**

avergonzando

**Past Participle**

avergonzado

**Commands**

**Pronoun**

Ud.

Uds.

tú

vosotros

nosotros

**Affirmative**

avergüence

avergüencen

avergüenza

avergonzad

avergoncemos

**Negative**

no avergüence

no avergüencen

no avergüences

no avergoncéis

no avergoncemos

	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	avergüenzo avergüenzas avergüenza	avergonzamos avergonzáis avergüerzan	he avergonzado has avergonzado ha avergonzado	hemos avergonzado habéis avergonzado han avergonzado
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	avergoncé avergonzaste avergonzó	avergonzamos avergonzasteis avergonzaron	hube avergonzado hubiste avergonzado hubo avergonzado	hubimos avergonzado hubisteis avergonzado hubieron avergonzado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	avergonzaba avergonzabas avergonzaba	avergonzábamos avergonzabais avergonzaban	había avergonzado habías avergonzado había avergonzado	habíamos avergonzado habíais avergonzado habían avergonzado
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	avergonzaré avergonzarás avergonzará	avergonzaremos avergonzaréis avergonzarán	habré avergonzado habrás avergonzado habrá avergonzado	habremos avergonzado habréis avergonzado habrán avergonzado
<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>		
avergonzaría avergonzarías avergonzaría	avergonzaríamos avergonzaríais avergonzarían	habría avergonzado habrías avergonzado habría avergonzado	habríamos avergonzado habrías avergonzado habrían avergonzado	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	avergüence avergüences avergüence	avergoncemos avergoncéis avergüencen	haya avergonzado hayas avergonzado haya avergonzado	hayamos avergonzado hayáis avergonzado hayan avergonzado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
avergonzara avergonzaras avergonzara	avergonzáramos avergonzarais avergonzaran	hubiera avergonzado hubieras avergonzado hubiera avergonzado	hubiéramos avergonzado hubierais avergonzado hubieran avergonzado	

**-ER VERBS WITH E→IE STEM CHANGES****entender** (“to understand”)**Gerund**

entendiendo

**Past Participle**

entendido

**Commands****Pronoun**

Ud.

Uds.

tú

vosotros

nosotros

**Affirmative**

entienda

entiendan

entiende

entended

entendamos

**Negative**

no entienda

no entiendan

no entiendas

no entendáis

no entendamos

Mood	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Indicative	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	entiendo entiendes entiende	entendemos entendéis entienden	he entendido has entendido ha entendido	hemos entendido habéis entendido han entendido
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	entendí entendiste entendió	entendimos entendisteis entendieron	hube entendido hubiste entendido hubo entendido	hubimos entendido hubisteis entendido hubieron entendido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	entendía entendías entendía	entendíamos entendíais entendían	había entendido habías entendido había entendido	habíamos entendido habíais entendido habían entendido
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	entenderé entenderás entenderá	entenderemos entenderéis entenderán	habré entendido habrás entendido habrá entendido	habremos entendido habréis entendido habrán entendido
<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>		
entendería entenderías entendería	entenderíamos entenderíais entenderían	habría entendido habrías entendido habría entendido	habríamos entendido habríais entendido habrían entendido	
Subjunctive	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	entienda entiendas entienda	entendamos entendáis entiendan	haya entendido hayas entendido haya entendido	hayamos entendido hayáis entendido hayan entendido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	entendiera entendieras entendiera	entendiéramos entendiérais entendieran	hubiera entendido hubieras entendido hubiera entendido	hubiéramos entendido hubiérais entendido hubieran entendido

***Other High-Frequency -er Verbs with e→ie Stem Changes***

<b>Verb</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>defender</i>	to defend
<i>encender</i>	to incite, to light
<i>perder</i>	to lose
<i>querer</i>	to wish, to want

**-ER VERBS WITH E→UE STEM CHANGES****morder** (“to bite”)**Gerund**

mordiendo

**Past Participle**

mordido

**Commands**

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	muerda	no muerda
Uds.	muerdan	no muerdan
tú	muerde	no muerdas
vosotros	morded	no mordáis
nosotros	mordamos	no mordamos

Mood	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Indicative	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	muerdo muerdes muerde	mordemos mordéis muerden	he mordido has mordido ha mordido	hemos mordido habéis mordido han mordido
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	mordí mordiste mordió	mordimos mordisteis mordieron	hube mordido hubiste mordido hubo mordido	hubimos mordido hubisteis mordido hubieron mordido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	mordía mordías mordía	mordíamos mordíais mordían	había mordido habías mordido había mordido	habíamos mordido habíais mordido habían mordido
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	morderé morderás morderá	morderemos morderéis morderán	habré mordido habrás mordido habrá mordido	habremos mordido habréis mordido habrán mordido
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
mordería morderías mordería	morderíamos morderíais morderían	habría mordido habrías mordido habría mordido	habríamos mordido habrías mordido habrían mordido	
Subjunctive	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	muerda muerdas muerda	mordamos mordáis muerdan	haya mordido hayas mordido haya mordido	hayamos mordido hayáis mordido hayan mordido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
mordiera mordieras mordiera	mordiéramos mordierais mordieran	hubiera mordido hubieras mordido hubiera mordido	hubiéramos mordido hubierais mordido hubieran mordido	

**Other High-Frequency -er Verbs with o→ue Stem Changes**

<b>Verb</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>doler</i>	to hurt
<i>envolver</i> (p.p. <i>envuelto</i> )	to wrap up
<i>llover</i>	to rain
<i>resolver</i> (p.p. <i>resuelto</i> )	to resolve
<i>soler</i>	to usually do something
<i>volver</i> (p.p. <i>vuelto</i> )	to return



**-IR VERBS WITH I→IE STEM CHANGES****sentir** (“to feel”)**Gerund**

sintiendo

**Past Participle**

sentido

**Commands**

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	sienta	no sienta
Uds.	sientan	no sientan
tú	siente	no sientas
vosotros	sentid	no sintáis
nosotros	sintamos	no sintamos

	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	siento sientes siente	sentimos sentís sienten	he sentido has sentido ha sentido	hemos sentido habéis sentido han sentido
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	sentí sentiste sintió	sentimos sentisteis sintieron	hube sentido hubiste sentido hubo sentido	hubimos sentido hubisteis sentido hubieron sentido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	sentía sentías sentía	sentíamos sentíais sentían	había sentido habías sentido había sentido	habíamos sentido habíais sentido habían sentido
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	sentiré sentirás sentirá	sentiremos sentiréis sentirán	habré sentido habrás sentido habrá sentido	habremos sentido habréis sentido habrán sentido
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
sentiría sentirías sentiría	sentiríamos sentiríais sentirían	habría sentido habrías sentido habría sentido	habríamos sentido habrías sentido habrían sentido	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	sienta sientas sienta	sintamos sintáis sientan	haya sentido hayas sentido haya sentido	hayamos sentido hayáis sentido hayan sentido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
sintiera sintieras sintiera	sintiéramos sintierais sintieran	hubiera sentido hubieras sentido hubiera sentido	hubiéramos sentido hubierais sentido hubieran sentido	

**Other High-Frequency -ir Verbs with e→ie Stem Changes**

<b>Verb</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>advertir</i>	to warn, to advise
<i>arrepentir</i>	to repent
<i>consentir</i>	to allow
<i>convertir</i>	to convert
<i>digerir</i>	to digest
<i>divertir</i>	to amuse
<i>herir</i>	to wound
<i>hervir</i>	to boil
<i>inferir</i>	to infer
<i>invertir</i>	to invest
<i>mentir</i>	to lie
<i>preferir</i>	to prefer
<i>referir</i>	to refer
<i>sugerir</i>	to suggest

**-IR VERBS WITH *I*→*IE* STEM CHANGES*****adquirir* (“to acquire”)*****Gerund***

adquiriendo

***Past Participle***

adquirido

***Commands***

<b>Pronoun</b>	<b>Affirmative</b>	<b>Negative</b>
Ud.	adquiera	no adquiera
Uds.	adquieran	no adquieran
tú	adquiere	no adquieras
vosotros	adquirid	no adquiráis
nosotros	adquiramos	no adquiramos

	<b>Mood</b>		<b>Simple Tenses</b>		<b>Compound Tenses</b>			
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>					
	adquiero	adquirimos	he adquirido	hemos adquirido	adquieres	adquirís	has adquirido	habéis adquirido
	adquiere	adquieren	ha adquirido	han adquirido	adquiere	adquieren	ha adquirido	han adquirido
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>					
	adquirí	adquirimos	hube adquirido	hubimos adquirido	adquiriste	adquiristeis	hubiste adquirido	hubisteis adquirido
	adquirió	adquirieron	hubo adquirido	hubieron adquirido	adquirió	adquirieron	hubo adquirido	hubieron adquirido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>					
	adquiría	adquiríamos	había adquirido	habíamos adquirido	adquirías	adquiríais	habías adquirido	habíais adquirido
adquiría	adquirían	había adquirido	habían adquirido	adquiría	adquirían	había adquirido	habían adquirido	
<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>						
adquiriré	adquiriremos	habré adquirido	habremos adquirido	adquirirás	adquirireis	habrás adquirido	habréis adquirido	
adquirirá	adquirirán	habrá adquirido	habrán adquirido	adquirirá	adquirirán	habrá adquirido	habrán adquirido	
<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>						
adquiriría	adquiriríamos	habría adquirido	habríamos adquirido	adquirirías	adquiriríais	habría adquirido	habríais adquirido	
adquiriría	adquirirían	habría adquirido	habrían adquirido	adquiriría	adquirirían	habría adquirido	habrían adquirido	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>					
	adquiera	adquiramos	haya adquirido	hayamos adquirido	adquiera	adquiráis	hayas adquirido	hayáis adquirido
	adquiera	adquieran	haya adquirido	hayan adquirido	adquiera	adquieran	haya adquirido	hayan adquirido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>					
adquiriera	adquiriéramos	hubiera adquirido	hubiéramos adquirido	adquirieras	adquirierais	hubiera adquirido	hubierais adquirido	
adquiriera	adquirieran	hubiera adquirido	hubieran adquirido	adquiriera	adquirieran	hubiera adquirido	hubieran adquirido	

Another high-frequency *-ir* verb with an *i*→*ie* stem change is *inquirir* (“to inquire”).

## **-IR VERBS WITH O→UE STEM CHANGES**

**dormir** (“to sleep”)

**Gerund**  
durmiendo

**Past Participle**  
dormido

### **Commands**

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	duerma	no duerma
Uds.	duerman	no duerman
tú	duerme	no duermas
vosotros	dormid	no durmáis
nosotros	durmamos	no durmamos

	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	duermo duermes duerme	dormimos dormís duermen	he dormido has dormido ha dormido	hemos dormido habéis dormido han dormido
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	dormí dormiste durmió	dormimos dormisteis durmieron	hube dormido hubiste dormido hubo dormido	hubimos dormido hubisteis dormido hubieron dormido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	dormía dormías dormía	dormíamos dormíais dormían	había dormido habías dormido había dormido	habíamos dormido habíais dormido habían dormido
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	dormiré dormirás dormirá	dormiremos dormiréis dormirán	habré dormido habrás dormido habrá dormido	habremos dormido habréis dormido habrán dormido
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
dormiría dormirías dormiría	dormiríamos dormiríais dormirían	habría dormido habrías dormido habría dormido	habríamos dormido habrías dormido habrían dormido	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	duerma duermas duerma	durmamos durmáis duerman	haya dormido hayas dormido haya dormido	hayamos dormido hayáis dormido hayan dormido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	durmiera durmieras durmiera	durmiéramos durmierais durmieran	hubiera dormido hubieras dormido hubiera dormido	hubiéramos dormido hubierais dormido hubieran dormido

Another high-frequency *-ir* verb with an *o→ue* stem change is *morir* (“to die”).

**-IR VERBS WITH E→I STEM CHANGES****servir** (“to serve”)**Gerund**

sirviendo

**Past Participle**

servido

**Commands**

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	sirva	no sirva
Uds.	sirvan	no sirvan
tú	sirve	no sirvas
vosotros	servid	no sirváis
nosotros	servamos	no servamos

	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	sirvo sirves sirve	servimos servís sirven	he servido has servido ha servido	hemos servido habéis servido han servido
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	serví serviste sirvió	servimos servisteis sirvieron	hube servido hubiste servido hubo servido	hubimos servido hubisteis servido hubieron servido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	servía servías servía	servíamos servíais servían	había servido habías servido había servido	habíamos servido habíais servido habían servido
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	serviré servirás servirá	serviremos serviréis servirán	habré servido habrás servido habrá servido	habremos servido habréis servido habrán servido
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
serviría servirías serviría	serviríamos serviríais servirían	habría servido habrías servido habría servido	habríamos servido habrías servido habrían servido	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	sirva sirvas sirva	servamos serváis sirvan	haya servido hayas servido haya servido	hayamos servido hayáis servido hayan servido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
serviera servieras serviera	serviéramos servierais servieran	hubiera servido hubieras servido hubiera servido	hubiéramos servido hubierais servido hubieran servido	

**Other High-Frequency -ir Verbs with e→i Stem Changes**

<b>Verb</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>competir</i>	to compete
<i>despedir</i>	to say goodbye to
<i>expedir</i>	to send
<i>gemir</i>	to moan
<i>impedir</i>	to impede
<i>medir</i>	to measure
<i>pedir</i>	to request
<i>repetir</i>	to repeat
<i>vestir</i>	to clothe

**-GIR VERBS WITH E→I STEM CHANGES****elegir** (“to elect”)**Gerund**

eligiendo

**Past Participle**

elegido

**Commands**

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	elija	no elija
Uds.	elijan	no elijan
tú	elige	no elijas
vosotros	elegid	no elijáis
nosotros	elijamos	no elijamos

	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	elijo eliges elige	elegimos eligis eligen	he elegido has elegido ha elegido	hemos elegido habéis elegido han elegido
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	elegí elegiste eligió	elegimos elegisteis eligieron	hube elegido hubiste elegido hubo elegido	hubimos elegido hubisteis elegido hubieron elegido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	elegía elegías elegía	elegíamos elegíais elegían	había elegido habías elegido había elegido	habíamos elegido habíais elegido habían elegido
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	elegiré elegirás elegirá	elegiremos elegiréis elegirán	habré elegido habrás elegido habrá elegido	habremos elegido habréis elegido habrán elegido
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
elegiría elegirías elegiría	elegiríamos elegiríais elegirían	habría elegido habrías elegido habría elegido	habríamos elegido habríais elegido habrían elegido	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	elija elijas elija	elijamos elijáis elijan	haya elegido hayas elegido haya elegido	hayamos elegido hayáis elegido hayan elegido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
eligiera eligieras eligiera	eligiéramos eligierais eligieran	hubiera elegido hubieras elegido hubiera elegido	hubiéramos elegido hubierais elegido hubieran elegido	

***Other High-Frequency -gir Verbs with e→i Stem Changes***

**Verb**

*colegir*

*corregir*

*regir*

**English**

to collect

to correct

to rule



**-GUIR VERBS WITH I→IE STEM CHANGES****seguir** (“to follow”)**Gerund**

siguiendo

**Past Participle**

seguido

**Commands**

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	siga	no siga
Uds.	sigan	no sigan
tú	sigue	no sigas
vosotros	seguid	no sigáis
nosotros	sigamos	no sigamos

Mood	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Indicative	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	sigo sigues sigue	seguimos seguís siguen	he seguido has seguido ha seguido	hemos seguido habéis seguido han seguido
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	seguí seguiste siguió	seguimos seguisteis siguieron	hube seguido hubiste seguido hubo seguido	hubimos seguido hubisteis seguido hubieron seguido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	seguía seguíais seguía	seguíamos seguíais seguían	había seguido habías seguido había seguido	habíamos seguido habíais seguido habían seguido
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	seguiré seguirás seguirá	seguiremos seguiréis seguirán	habré seguido habrás seguido habrá seguido	habremos seguido habréis seguido habrán seguido
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
seguiría seguiríais seguiría	seguiríamos seguiríais seguirían	habría seguido habrías seguido habría seguido	habríamos seguido habrías seguido habrían seguido	
Subjunctive	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	siga sigas siga	sigamos sigáis sigan	haya seguido hayas seguido haya seguido	hayamos seguido hayáis seguido hayan seguido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
siguiera siguieras siguiera	siguiéramos siguierais siguieran	hubiera seguido hubieras seguido hubiera seguido	hubiéramos seguido hubierais seguido hubieran seguido	

***Other High-Frequency -guir Verbs with e→i Stem Changes***

<b>Verb</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>conseguir</i>	to get
<i>perseguir</i>	to pursue
<i>proseguir</i>	to continue

# Irregular Verbs

## *andar* (“to walk”)

### **Gerund**

andando

### **Past Participle**

andado

### **Commands**

<b>Pronoun</b>	<b>Affirmative</b>	<b>Negative</b>
Ud.	ande	no ande
Uds.	anden	no anden
tú	anda	no andes
vosotros	andad	no andéis
nosotros	andemos	no andemos

	<b>Mood</b>		<b>Simple Tenses</b>		<b>Compound Tenses</b>	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>			
	ando andas anda	andamos andáis andan	he andado has andado ha andado	hemos andado habéis andado han andado		
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>			
	anduve anduviste anduvo	anduvimos anduvisteis anduvieron	hube andado hubiste andado hubo andado	hubimos andado hubisteis andado hubieron andado		
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>			
	andaba andabas andaba	andábamos andabais andaban	había andado habías andado había andado	habíamos andado habíais andado habían andado		
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>			
	andaré andarás andaré	andaremos andaréis andarán	habré andado habrás andado habrá andado	habremos andado habréis andado habrán andado		
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>			
andaría andarías andaría	andaríamos andaríais andarían	habría andado habrías andado habría andado	habríamos andado habríais andado habrían andado			
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>			
	ande andes ande	andemos andéis anden	haya andado hayas andado haya andado	hayamos andado hayáis andado hayan andado		
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>			
anduviera anduvieras anduviera	anduviéramos anduvierais anduvieran	hubiera andado hubieras andado hubiera andado	hubiéramos andado hubierais andado hubieran andado			

**caber (“to fit”)**

**Gerund**

cabiendo

**Past Participle**

cabido

**Commands**

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	quepa	no quepa
Uds.	quepan	no quepan
tú	cabe	no quepas
vosotros	cabed	no quepáis
nosotros	quepamos	no quepamos

Mood	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	quepo cabe cabe	cabemos cabéis caben	he cabido has cabido ha cabido	hemos cabido habéis cabido han cabido
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	cupe cupiste cupo	cupimos cupisteis cupieron	hube cabido hubiste cabido hubo cabido	hubimos cabido hubisteis cabido hubieron cabido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	cabía cabías cabía	cabíamos cabíais cabían	había cabido habías cabido había cabido	habíamos cabido habíais cabido habían cabido
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	cabré cabrás cabrá	cabremos cabréis cabrán	habré cabido habrás cabido habrá cabido	habremos cabido habréis cabido habrán cabido
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
cabría cabrías cabría	cabríamos cabrías cabrían	habría cabido habrías cabido habría cabido	habríamos cabido habrías cabido habrían cabido	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	quepa quepas quepa	quepamos quepáis quepan	haya cabido hayas cabido haya cabido	hayamos cabido hayáis cabido hayan cabido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
cupiera cupieras cupiera	cupiéramos cupierais cupieran	hubiera cabido hubieras cabido hubiera cabido	hubiéramos cabido hubierais cabido hubieran cabido	

**caer (“to fall”)****Gerund**

cayendo

**Past Participle**

caído

**Commands**

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	caiga	no caiga
Uds.	caigan	no caigan
tú	cae	no caigas
vosotros	caed	no caigáis
nosotros	caigamos	no caigamos

Mood	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Indicative	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	caigo caes cae	caemos caéis caen	he caído has caído ha caído	hemos caído habéis caído han caído
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	caí caíste cayó	caímos caísteis cayeron	hube caído hubiste caído hubo caído	hubimos caído hubisteis caído hubieron caído
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	caía caías caía	caíamos caíais caían	había caído habías caído había caído	habíamos caído habíais caído habían caído
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	caeré caerás caerá	caeremos caeréis caerán	habré caído habrás caído habrá caído	habremos caído habréis caído habrán caído
<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>		
caería caerías caería	caeríamos caeríais caerían	habría caído habrías caído habría caído	habríamos caído habríais caído habrían caído	
Subjunctive	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	caiga caigas caiga	caigamos caigáis caigan	haya caído hayas caído haya caído	hayamos caído hayáis caído hayan caído
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
cayera cayeras cayera	cayeramos cayerais cayeran	hubiera caído hubieras caído hubiera caído	hubiéramos caído hubierais caído hubieran caído	

**dar (“to give”)**

**Gerund**

dando

**Past Participle**

dado

**Commands**

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	dé	no dé
Uds.	den	no den
tú	da	no des
vosotros	dad	no deis
nosotros	demos	no demos

Mood	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	doy das da	damos dáis dan	he dado has dado ha dado	hemos dado habéis dado han dado
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	dí diste dió	dimos disteis dieron	hube dado hubiste dado hubo dado	hubimos dado hubisteis dado hubieron dado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	daba dabas daba	dábamos dabais daban	había dado habías dado había dado	habíamos dado habíais dado habían dado
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	daré darás dará	daremos daréis darán	habré dado habrás dado habrá dado	habremos dado habréis dado habrán dado
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
daría darías daría	daríamos daríais darían	habría dado habrías dado habría dado	habríamos dado habrías dado habrían dado	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	dé des dé	demos deis den	haya dado hayas dado haya dado	hayamos dado hayáis dado hayan dado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
diera dieras diera	diéramos dierais dieran	hubiera dado hubieras dado hubiera dado	hubiéramos dado hubierais dado hubieran dado	

**decir (“to say,” “to tell”)****Gerund**

diciendo

**Past Participle**

dicho

**Commands**

<b>Pronoun</b>	<b>Affirmative</b>	<b>Negative</b>
Ud.	diga	no diga
Uds.	digan	no digan
tú	di	no digas
vosotros	decid	no digáis
nosotros	digamos	no digamos

<b>Mood</b>	<b>Simple Tenses</b>		<b>Compound Tenses</b>	
	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	digo dices dice	decimos decís dicen	he dicho has dicho ha dicho	hemos dicho habéis dicho han dicho
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	dije dijiste dijo	dijimos dijisteis dijeron	hube dicho hubiste dicho hubo dicho	hubimos dicho hubisteis dicho hubieron dicho
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	decía decías decía	decíamos decíais decían	había dicho habías dicho había dicho	habíamos dicho habíais dicho habían dicho
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	diré dirás dirá	diremos diréis dirán	habré dicho habrás dicho habrá dicho	habremos dicho habréis dicho habrán dicho
<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>		
diría dirías diría	diríamos diríais dirían	habría dicho habrías dicho habría dicho	habríamos dicho habríais dicho habrían dicho	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	diga digas diga	digamos digáis digan	haya dicho hayas dicho haya dicho	hayamos dicho hayáis dicho hayan dicho
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
dijera dijeras dijera	dijéramos dijerais dijeran	hubiera dicho hubieras dicho hubiera dicho	hubiéramos dicho hubierais dicho hubieran dicho	

**estar (“to be”)**

**Gerund**

estando

**Past Participle**

estado

**Commands**

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	esté	no esté
Uds.	estén	no estén
tú	está	no estés
vosotros	estad	no estéis
nosotros	estemos	no estemos

Mood	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	estoy estás está	estamos estáis están	he estado has estado ha estado	hemos estado habéis estado han estado
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	estuve estuviste estuvo	estuvimos estuvisteis estuvieron	hube estado hubiste estado hubo estado	hubimos estado hubisteis estado hubieron estado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	estaba estabas estaba	estábamos estabais estaban	había estado habías estado había estado	habíamos estado habíais estado habían estado
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	estaré estarás estará	estaremos estaréis estarán	habré estado habrás estado habrá estado	habremos estado habréis estado habrán estado
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
estaría estarías estaría	estaríamos estaríais estarían	habría estado habrías estado habría estado	habríamos estado habrías estado habrían estado	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	esté estés esté	estemos estéis estén	haya estado hayas estado haya estado	hayamos estado hayáis estado hayan estado
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
estuviera estuvieras estuviera	estuviéramos estuvierais estuvieran	hubiera estado hubieras estado hubiera estado	hubiéramos estado hubierais estado hubieran estado	



**haber** (“to have”)**Gerund**

habiendo

**Past Participle**

habido

**Commands**

<b>Pronoun</b>	<b>Affirmative</b>	<b>Negative</b>
Ud.	haya	no haya
Uds.	hayan	no hayan
tú	hé	no hayas
vosotros	habed	no hayáis
nosotros	hayamos	no hayamos

<b>Mood</b>	<b>Simple Tenses</b>		<b>Compound Tenses</b>	
	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	he has ha	hemos habéis han	he habido has habido ha habido	hemos habido habéis habido han habido
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	hube hubiste hubo	hubimos hubisteis hubieron	hube habido hubiste habido hubo habido	hubimos habido hubisteis habido hubieron habido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	había habías había	habíamos habíais habían	había habido habías habido había habido	habíamos habido habíais habido habían habido
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	habré habrás habrá	habremos habréis habrán	habré habido habrás habido habrá habido	habremos habido habréis habido habrán habido
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
	habría habrías habría	habríamos habrías habrían	habría habido habrías habido habría habido	habríamos habido habrías habido habrían habido
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	haya hayas haya	hayamos hayáis hayan	haya habido hayas habido haya habido	hayamos habido hayáis habido hayan habido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
hubiera hubieras hubiera	hubiéramos hubierais hubieran	hubiera habido hubieras habido hubiera habido	hubiéramos habido hubierais habido hubieran habido	

**hacer** (“to make,” “to do”)

**Gerund**

haciendo

**Past Participle**

hecho

**Commands**

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	haga	no haga
Uds.	hagan	no hagan
tú	haz	no hagas
vosotros	haced	no hagáis
nosotros	hagamos	no hagamos

Mood	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	hago haces hace	hacemos hacéis hacen	he hecho has hecho ha hecho	hemos hecho habéis hecho han hecho
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	hice hiciste hizo	hicimos hicisteis hicieron	hube hecho hubiste hecho hubo hecho	hubimos hecho hubisteis hecho hubieron hecho
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	hacía hacías hacía	hacíamos hacíais hacían	había hecho habías hecho había hecho	habíamos hecho habíais hecho habían hecho
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	haré harás hará	haremos haréis harán	habré hecho habrás hecho habrá hecho	habremos hecho habréis hecho habrán hecho
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
haría harías haría	haríamos haríais harían	habría hecho habrías hecho habría hecho	habríamos hecho habrías hecho habrían hecho	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	haga hagas haga	hagamos hagáis hagan	haya hecho hayas hecho haya hecho	hayamos hecho hayáis hecho hayan hecho
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
hiciera hicieras hiciera	hiciéramos hicierais hicieran	hubiera hecho hubieras hecho hubiera hecho	hubiéramos hecho hubierais hecho hubieran hecho	

**ir (“to go”)****Gerund**

yendo

**Past Participle**

ido

**Commands**

<b>Pronoun</b>	<b>Affirmative</b>	<b>Negative</b>
Ud.	vaya	no vaya
Uds.	vayan	no vayan
tú	ve	no vayas
vosotros	id	no vayáis
nosotros	vayamos	no vayamos

	<b>Mood</b>		<b>Simple Tenses</b>		<b>Compound Tenses</b>	
	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>			
	voy	vamos	he ido	hemos ido		
	vas	vais	has ido	habéis ido		
	va	van	ha ido	han ido		
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>			
	fui	fuimos	hube ido	hubimos ido		
	fuiste	fuisteis	hubiste ido	hubisteis ido		
	fue	fueron	hubo ido	hubieron ido		
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>			
iba	íbamos	había ido	habíamos ido			
ibas	ibais	habías ido	habíais ido			
iba	iban	había ido	habían ido			
<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>				
iré	iremos	habré ido	habremos ido			
irás	iréis	habrás ido	habréis ido			
irá	irán	habrá ido	habrán ido			
<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>				
iría	iríamos	habría ido	habríamos ido			
irías	iríais	habrías ido	habríais ido			
iría	irían	habría ido	habrían ido			
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>			
	vaya	vayamos	haya ido	hayamos ido		
	vayas	vayáis	hayas ido	hayáis ido		
	vaya	vayan	haya ido	hayan ido		
<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>				
fuera	fuéramos	hubiera ido	hubiéramos ido			
fueras	fuerais	hubieras ido	hubierais ido			
fuera	fueran	hubiera ido	hubieran ido			

**oír (“to hear”)**

**Gerund**

oyendo

**Past Participle**

oído

**Commands**

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	oiga	no oiga
Uds.	oigan	no oigan
tú	oye	no oigas
vosotros	oíd	no oigáis
nosotros	oigamos	no oigamos

Mood	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	oigo oyes oye	oímos oís oyen	he oído has oído ha oído	hemos oído habéis oído han oído
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	oí oíste oyó	oímos oísteis oyeron	hube oído hubiste oído hubo oído	hubimos oído hubisteis oído hubieron oído
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	oía oías oía	oíamos oíais oían	había oído habías oído había oído	habíamos oído habíais oído habían oído
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	oiré oirás oirá	oiremos oiréis oirán	habré oído habrás oído habrá oído	habremos oído habréis oído habrán oído
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
oiría oirías oiría	oiríamos oiríais oirían	habría oído habrías oído habría oído	habríamos oído habrías oído habrían oído	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	oiga oigas oiga	oigamos oigáis oigan	haya oído hayas oído haya oído	hayamos oído hayáis oído hayan oído
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
oyera oyeras oyera	oyéramos oyerais oyeran	hubiera oído hubieras oído hubiera oído	hubiéramos oído hubierais oído hubieran oído	

**oler** (“to smell”)**Gerund**

oliendo

**Past Participle**

olido

**Commands**

<b>Pronoun</b>	<b>Affirmative</b>	<b>Negative</b>
Ud.	huela	no huela
Uds.	huelan	no huelan
tú	huele	no huelas
vosotros	oled	no oláis
nosotros	olamos	no olamos

	<b>Mood</b>		<b>Simple Tenses</b>		<b>Compound Tenses</b>	
	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>		
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>			
	huelo	olemos	he olido	hemos olido		
	hueles	oléis	has olido	habéis olido		
	huele	huelen	ha olido	han olido		
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>			
	olí	olimos	hube olido	hubimos olido		
	oliste	olisteis	hubiste olido	hubisteis olido		
	olió	olieron	hubo olido	hubieron olido		
<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>				
olía	olíamos	había olido	habíamos olido			
olías	olíais	habías olido	habíais olido			
olía	olían	había olido	habían olido			
<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>				
oleré	oleremos	habré olido	habremos olido			
olerás	oleréis	habrás olido	habréis olido			
olerá	olerán	habrá olido	habrán olido			
<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>				
olería	oleríamos	habría olido	habríamos olido			
olerías	oleríais	habrías olido	habríais olido			
olería	olerían	habría olido	habrían olido			
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>			
	huela	olamos	haya olido	hayamos olido		
	huelas	oláis	hayas olido	hayáis olido		
	huela	huelan	haya olido	hayan olido		
<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>				
oliera	oliéramos	hubiera olido	hubiéramos olido			
olieras	olierais	hubieras olido	hubierais olido			
oliera	olieran	hubiera olido	hubieran olido			

**poder (“to be able”)**

**Gerund**

pudiendo

**Past Participle**

podido

**Commands**

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	pueda	no pueda
Uds.	puedan	no puedan
tú	puede	no puedas
vosotros	poded	no podáis
nosotros	podamos	no podamos

Mood	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	puedo puedes puede	podemos podéis pueden	he podido has podido ha podido	hemos podido habéis podido han podido
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	pude pudiste pudo	podimos pudisteis pudieron	hube podido hubiste podido hubo podido	hubimos podido hubisteis podido hubieron podido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	podía podías podía	podíamos podíais podían	había podido habías podido había podido	habíamos podido habíais podido habían podido
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	podré podrás podrá	podremos podréis podrán	habré podido habrás podido habrá podido	habremos podido habréis podido habrán podido
<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>		
podría podrías podría	podríamos podrías podrían	habría podido habrías podido habría podido	habríamos podido habrías podido habrían podido	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	pueda puedas pueda	podamos podáis puedan	haya podido hayas podido haya podido	hayamos podido hayáis podido hayan podido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
puediera puedieras puediera	pudiéramos pudierais pudieran	hubiera podido hubieras podido hubiera podido	hubiéramos podido hubierais podido hubieran podido	

**poner** (“to put”)**Gerund**

poniendo

**Past Participle**

puesto

**Commands****Pronoun**

Ud.

Uds.

tú

vosotros

nosotros

**Affirmative**

ponga

pongan

pon

poned

pongamos

**Negative**

no ponga

no pongan

no pongas

no pongáis

no pongamos

Mood	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Indicative	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	pongo pones pone	ponemos ponéis ponen	he puesto has puesto ha puesto	hemos puesto habéis puesto han puesto
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	pusé pusiste puso	pusimos pusisteis pusieron	hube puesto hubiste puesto hubo puesto	hubimos puesto hubisteis puesto hubieron puesto
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	ponía ponías ponía	poníamos poníais ponían	había puesto habías puesto había puesto	habíamos puesto habíais puesto habían puesto
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	pondré pondrás pondrá	pondremos pondréis pondrán	habré puesto habrás puesto habrá puesto	habremos puesto habréis puesto habrán puesto
<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>		
pondría pondrías pondría	pondríamos pondríais pondrían	habría puesto habrías puesto habría puesto	habríamos puesto habríais puesto habrían puesto	
Subjunctive	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	ponga pongas ponga	pongamos pongáis pongan	haya puesto hayas puesto haya puesto	hayamos puesto hayáis puesto hayan puesto
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
pusiera pusieras pusiera	pusiéramos pusierais pusieran	hubiera puesto hubieras puesto hubiera puesto	hubiéramos puesto hubierais puesto hubieran puesto	

**querer (“to wish,” “to want”)**

**Gerund**

queriendo

**Past Participle**

querido

**Commands**

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	quiera	no quiera
Uds.	quieran	no quieran
tú	quiere	no quieras
vosotros	quered	no queráis
nosotros	queramos	no queramos

Mood	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	quiero quieres quiere	queremos queréis quieren	he querido has querido ha querido	hemos querido habéis querido han querido
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	quise quisiste quiso	quisimos quisisteis quisieron	hube querido hubiste querido hubo querido	hubimos querido hubisteis querido hubieron querido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	quería querías quería	queríamos queríais querían	había querido habías querido había querido	habíamos querido habíais querido habían querido
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	querré querrás querrá	querremos querréis querrán	habré querido habrás querido habrá querido	habremos querido habréis querido habrán querido
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
querría querrias querría	querriamos querriais querrían	habría querido habrías querido habría querido	habríamos querido habríais querido habrían querido	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	quiera quieras quiera	queramos queráis quieran	haya querido hayas querido haya querido	hayamos querido hayáis querido hayan querido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
quisiera quisieras quisiera	quisiéramos quisierais quisieran	hubiera querido hubieras querido hubiera querido	hubiéramos querido hubierais querido hubieran querido	



**reír** (“to laugh”)**Gerund**

riendo

**Past Participle**

reído

**Commands**

<b>Pronoun</b>	<b>Affirmative</b>	<b>Negative</b>
Ud.	ría	no ría
Uds.	rían	no rían
tú	rie	no rías
vosotros	reíd	no riáis
nosotros	riamos	no ríamos

<b>Mood</b>	<b>Simple Tenses</b>		<b>Compound Tenses</b>	
	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	río ríes ríe	reímos reís ríen	he reído has reído ha reído	hemos reído habéis reído han reído
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	reí reíste rió	reímos reísteis rieron	hube reído hubiste reído hubo reído	hubimos reído hubisteis reído hubieron reído
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	reía reías reía	reíamos reíais reían	había reído habías reído había reído	habíamos reído habíais reído habían reído
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	reiré reirás reirá	reiremos reiréis reirán	habré reído habrás reído habrá reído	habremos reído habréis reído habrán reído
<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>		
reiría reirías reiría	reiríamos reiríais reirían	habría reído habrías reído habría reído	habríamos reído habríais reído habrían reído	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	ría rías ría	riamos riáis rían	haya reído hayas reído haya reído	hayamos reído hayáis reído hayan reído
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
riera rieras riera	riéramos rierais rieran	hubiera reído hubieras reído hubiera reído	hubiéramos reído hubierais reído hubieran reído	

**saber (“to know”)**

**Gerund**

sabiendo

**Past Participle**

sabido

**Commands**

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	sepa	no sepa
Uds.	sepan	no sepan
tú	sabe	no sepa
vosotros	sabed	no sepáis
nosotros	sepamos	no sepamos

Mood	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	sé sabes sabe	sabemos sabéis saben	he sabido has sabido ha sabido	hemos sabido habéis sabido han sabido
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	supe supiste supo	supimos supisteis supieron	hube sabido hubiste sabido hubo sabido	hubimos sabido hubisteis sabido hubieron sabido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	sabía sabías sabía	sabíamos sabíais sabían	había sabido habías sabido había sabido	habíamos sabido habíais sabido habían sabido
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	sabré sabrás sabrás	sabremos sabréis sabrán	habré sabido habrás sabido habrá sabido	habremos sabido habréis sabido habrán sabido
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
sabría sabrías sabría	sabríamos sabríais sabrían	habría sabido habrías sabido habría sabido	habríamos sabido habrías sabido habrían sabido	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	sepa sepas sepa	sepamos sepáis sepan	haya sabido hayas sabido haya sabido	hayamos sabido hayáis sabido hayan sabido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
supiera supieras supiera	supiéramos supierais supieran	hubiera sabido hubieras sabido hubiera sabido	hubiéramos sabido hubierais sabido hubieran sabido	

**salir** (“to go out”)**Gerund**

saliendo

**Past Participle**

salido

**Commands**

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	salga	no salga
Uds.	salgan	no salgan
tú	sal	no salgas
vosotros	salid	no salgáis
nosotros	salgamos	no salgamos

Mood	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	salgo sales sale	salimos saléis salen	he salido has salido ha salido	hemos salido habéis salido han salido
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	salí saliste salió	salimos salisteis salieron	hube salido hubiste salido hubo salido	hubimos salido hubisteis salido hubieron salido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	salía salías salía	salíamos salíais salían	había salido habías salido había salido	habíamos salido habíais salido habían salido
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	saldré saldrás saldrá	saldremos saldréis saldrán	habré salido habrás salido habrá salido	habremos salido habréis salido habrán salido
<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>		
saldría saldrían saldría	saldríamos saldríais saldrían	habría salido habrías salido habría salido	habríamos salido habríais salido habrían salido	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	salga salgas salga	salgamos salgáis salgan	haya salido hayas salido haya salido	hayamos salido hayáis salido hayan salido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
saliera salieras saliera	saliéramos salierais salieran	hubiera salido hubieras salido hubiera salido	hubiéramos salido hubierais salido hubieran salido	

**ser (“to be”)**

**Gerund**

siendo

**Past Participle**

sido

**Commands**

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	sea	no sea
Uds.	sean	no sean
tú	sé	no seas
vosotros	sed	no seáis
nosotros	seamos	no seamos

Mood	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	soy eres es	somos sois son	he sido has sido ha sido	hemos sido habéis sido han sido
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	fui fuiste fue	fuimos fuisteis fueron	hube sido hubiste sido hubo sido	hubimos sido hubisteis sido hubieron sido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	era eras era	éramos erais eran	había sido habías sido había sido	habíamos sido habíais sido habían sido
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	seré serás será	seremos seréis serán	habré sido habrás sido habrá sido	habremos sido habréis sido habrán sido
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
sería serías sería	seríamos seríais serían	habría sido habrías sido habría sido	habríamos sido habrías sido habrían sido	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	sea seas sea	seamos seáis sean	haya sido hayas sido haya sido	hayamos sido hayáis sido hayan sido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
fuera fueras fuera	fuéramos fuerais fueran	hubiera sido hubieras sido hubiera sido	hubiéramos sido hubierais sido hubieran sido	

**tener** (“to have”)**Gerund**

teniendo

**Past Participle**

tenido

**Commands**

<b>Pronoun</b>	<b>Affirmative</b>	<b>Negative</b>
Ud.	tenga	no tenga
Uds.	tengan	no tengan
tú	ten	no tengas
vosotros	tened	no tengáis
nosotros	tengamos	no tengamos

<b>Mood</b>	<b>Simple Tenses</b>		<b>Compound Tenses</b>	
	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	tengo tienes tiene	tenemos tenéis tienen	he tenido has tenido ha tenido	hemos tenido habéis tenido han tenido
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	tuve tuviste tuvo	tuvimos tuvisteis tuvieron	hube tenido hubiste tenido hubo tenido	hubimos tenido hubisteis tenido hubieron tenido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	tenía tenías tenía	teníamos teníais tenían	había tenido habías tenido había tenido	habíamos tenido habíais tenido habían tenido
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	tendré tendrás tendrá	tendremos tendréis tendrán	habré tenido habrás tenido habrá tenido	habremos tenido habréis tenido habrán tenido
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
tendría tendrías tendría	tendríamos tendríais tendrían	habría tenido habrías tenido habría tenido	habríamos tenido habríais tenido habrían tenido	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	tenga tengas tenga	tengamos tengáis tengan	haya tenido hayas tenido haya tenido	hayamos tenido hayáis tenido hayan tenido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
tuviera tuvieras tuviera	tuviéramos tuvierais tuvieran	hubiera tenido hubieras tenido hubiera tenido	hubiéramos tenido hubierais tenido hubieran tenido	

**traer (“to bring”)**

**Gerund**

trayendo

**Past Participle**

traído

**Commands**

Pronoun	Affirmative	Negative
Ud.	traiga	no traiga
Uds.	traigan	no traigan
tú	trae	no traigas
vosotros	traed	no traigáis
nosotros	traigamos	no traigamos

Mood	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	traigo traes trae	traemos traéis traen	he traído has traído ha traído	hemos traído habéis traído han traído
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	traje trajiste trajo	trajimos trajisteis trajeron	hube traído hubiste traído hubo traído	hubimos traído hubisteis traído hubieron traído
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	traía traías traía	traíamos traíais traían	había traído habías traído había traído	habíamos traído habíais traído habían traído
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	traeré traerás traerá	traeremos traeréis traerán	habré traído habrás traído habrá traído	habremos traído habréis traído habrán traído
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
	traería traerías traería	traeríamos traeríais traerían	habría traído habrías traído habría traído	habríamos traído habrías traído habrían traído
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	traiga traigas traiga	traigamos traigáis traigan	haya traído hayas traído haya traído	hayamos traído hayáis traído hayan traído
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	trajera trajeras trajera	trajéramos trajerais trajeran	hubiera traído hubieras traído hubiera traído	hubiéramos traído hubierais traído hubieran traído

**valer (“to be worth”)****Gerund**

valiendo

**Past Participle**

valido

**Commands****Pronoun**

Ud.

Uds.

tú

vosotros

nosotros

**Affirmative**

valga

valgan

val (vale)

valed

valgamos

**Negative**

no valga

no valgan

no valgas

no valgáis

no valgamos

Mood	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Indicative	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	valgo vales vale	valemos valéis valen	he valido has valido ha valido	hemos valido habéis valido han valido
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	valí valiste valió	valimos valisteis valieron	hube valido hubiste valido hubo valido	hubimos valido hubisteis valido hubieron valido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	valía valías valía	valíamos valíais valían	había valido habías valido había valido	habíamos valido habíais valido habían valido
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	valdré valdrás valdrá	valdremos valdréis valdrán	habré valido habrás valido habrá valido	habremos valido habréis valido habrán valido
<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>		
valdría valdrías valdría	valdríamos valdríais valdrían	habría valido habrías valido habría valido	habríamos valido habríais valido habrían valido	
Subjunctive	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	valga valgas valga	valgamos valgáis valgan	haya valido hayas valido haya valido	hayamos valido hayáis valido hayan valido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
valiera valieras valiera	valiéramos valierais valieran	hubiera valido hubieras valido hubiera valido	hubiéramos valido hubierais valido hubieran valido	

**venir (“to come”)**

**Gerund**

viniendo

**Past Participle**

venido

**Commands**

**Pronoun**

Ud.

Uds.

tú

vosotros

nosotros

**Affirmative**

venga

vengan

ven

venid

vengamos

**Negative**

no venga

no vengan

no vengas

no vengáis

no vengamos

Mood	Simple Tenses		Compound Tenses	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Indicative	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	vengo vienes viene	venimos venís vienen	he venido has venido ha venido	hemos venido habéis venido han venido
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	vine viniste vino	vinimos vinisteis vinieron	hube venido hubiste venido hubo venido	hubimos venido hubisteis venido hubieron venido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	venía venías venía	veníamos veníais venían	había venido habías venido había venido	habíamos venido habíais venido habían venido
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	vendré vendrás vendrá	vendremos vendréis vendrán	habré venido habrás venido habrá venido	habremos venido habréis venido habrán venido
	<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>	
vendría vendrías vendría	vendríamos vendríais vendrían	habría venido habrías venido habría venido	habríamos venido habrías venido habrían venido	
Subjunctive	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	venga vengas venga	vengamos vengáis vengan	haya venido hayas venido haya venido	hayamos venido hayáis venido hayan venido
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
viniera vinieras viniera	viniéramos vinierais vinieran	hubiera venido hubieras venido hubiera venido	hubiéramos venido hubierais venido hubieran venido	



**ver (“to see”)****Gerund**

viendo

**Past Participle**

visto

**Commands**

<b>Pronoun</b>	<b>Affirmative</b>	<b>Negative</b>
Ud.	vea	no vea
Uds.	vean	no vean
tú	ve	no veas
vosotros	ved	no veáis
nosotros	veamos	no veamos

<b>Mood</b>	<b>Simple Tenses</b>		<b>Compound Tenses</b>	
	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>
<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	veo ves ve	veamos veis ven	he visto has visto ha visto	hemos visto habéis visto han visto
	<b>Preterit</b>		<b>Preterit Perfect</b>	
	vi viste vió	vimos visteis vieron	hube visto hubiste visto hubo visto	hubimos visto hubisteis visto hubieron visto
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
	veía veías veía	veíamos veíais veían	había visto habías visto había visto	habíamos visto habíais visto habían visto
	<b>Future</b>		<b>Future Perfect</b>	
	veré verás verá	veremos veréis verán	habré visto habrás visto habrá visto	habremos visto habréis visto habrán visto
<b>Conditional</b>		<b>Conditional Perfect</b>		
vería verías vería	veríamos veríais verían	habría visto habrías visto habría visto	habríamos visto habríais visto habrían visto	
<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Present</b>		<b>Present Perfect</b>	
	vea veas vea	veamos veáis vean	haya visto hayas visto haya visto	hayamos visto hayáis visto hayan visto
	<b>Imperfect</b>		<b>Pluperfect</b>	
viera vieras viera	viéramos vierais vieran	hubiera visto hubieras visto hubiera visto	hubiéramos visto hubierais visto hubieran visto	

## APPENDIX B

# SPANISH VOCABULARY

### The Family

Males		Females	
English	Spanish	English	Spanish
boyfriend	<i>novio</i>	girlfriend	<i>novia</i>
brother	<i>hermano</i>	sister	<i>hermana</i>
brother-in-law	<i>cuñado</i>	sister-in-law	<i>cuñada</i>
child	<i>niño</i>	child	<i>niña</i>
cousin	<i>primo</i>	cousin	<i>prima</i>
father	<i>padre</i>	mother	<i>madre</i>
father-in-law	<i>suegro</i>	mother-in-law	<i>suegra</i>
godfather	<i>padrino</i>	godmother	<i>padrina</i>
grandfather	<i>abuelo</i>	grandmother	<i>abuela</i>
grandson	<i>nieto</i>	granddaughter	<i>nieta</i>
husband	<i>esposo</i>	wife	<i>esposa</i>
nephew	<i>sobrino</i>	niece	<i>sobrina</i>
son	<i>hijo</i>	daughter	<i>hija</i>
son-in-law	<i>yerno</i>	daughter-in-law	<i>nuera</i>
stepbrother	<i>hermanastro</i>	stepsister	<i>hermanastra</i>
stepfather	<i>padrastra</i>	stepmother	<i>madrastra</i>
stepson	<i>hijastra</i>	stepdaughter	<i>hijastra</i>
uncle	<i>tío</i>	aunt	<i>tía</i>
great-grandfather	<i>bisabuelo</i>	great-grandmother	<i>bisabuela</i>

## The House

### Places

English	Spanish	English	Spanish
apartment	<i>el apartamento</i>	ground floor	<i>la planta baja</i>
apartment building	<i>el edificio de apartamentos</i>	hall	<i>el pasillo</i>
attic	<i>el desván, el ático, el entretecho</i>	house	<i>la casa</i>
backyard	<i>el jardín</i>	kitchen	<i>la cocina</i>
balcony	<i>el balcón</i>	laundry room	<i>la lavandería</i>
basement	<i>el sótano</i>	lawn	<i>el césped</i>
bathroom	<i>el (cuarto de) baño</i>	living room	<i>la sala</i>
bathtub	<i>la bañera</i>	owner	<i>el dueño</i>
bedroom	<i>el dormitorio, la habitación</i>	patio	<i>el patio</i>
ceiling	<i>el techo</i>	roof	<i>el techo</i>
closet	<i>el armario</i>	room	<i>el cuarto, la habitación</i>
courtyard	<i>el patio</i>	shower	<i>la ducha</i>
den	<i>el estudio</i>	sink (bathroom) (kitchen)	<i>el lavabo</i> <i>el fregadero</i>
dining room	<i>el comedor</i>	stair(s)	<i>la(s) escalera(s)</i>
door	<i>la puerta</i>	story (floor)	<i>el piso</i>
elevator	<i>el ascensor</i>	study	<i>el estudio</i>
fireplace	<i>la chimenea</i>	terrace	<i>la terraza</i>
floor	<i>el suelo</i>	wall	<i>la pared</i>
garage	<i>el garaje</i>	wardrobe	<i>el armario</i>
garden	<i>el jardín</i>	window	<i>la ventana</i>

### Furnishings

English	Spanish	English	Spanish
armchair	<i>el sillón</i>	mirror	<i>el espejo</i>
bed	<i>la cama</i>	nightstand	<i>el buró</i>
bookcase	<i>el librero</i>	painting	<i>el cuadro</i>

English	Spanish	English	Spanish
carpet	<i>la moqueta</i>	picture	<i>la pintura</i>
chair	<i>la silla</i>	rug	<i>la alfombra</i>
clock	<i>el reloj</i>	sofa	<i>el sofá</i>
curtain	<i>la cortina</i>	table	<i>la mesa</i>
dresser	<i>el tocador, la cómoda</i>	wardrobe	<i>el guardarropa</i>
lamp	<i>la lámpara</i>		

### Appliances and Electronics

English	Spanish	English	Spanish
camera	<i>la cámara, la máquina fotográfica</i>	monitor	<i>el monitor</i>
ceiling fan	<i>el ventilador de aspas, el ventilador hélice</i>	printer	<i>la impresora</i>
clothes dryer	<i>la secadora</i>	oven	<i>el horno</i>
computer	<i>el ordenador, la computadora</i>	refrigerator	<i>el refrigerador</i>
dishwasher	<i>el lavaplatos</i>	stereo	<i>el estéreo</i>
DVD player	<i>el lector de DVD</i>	stove	<i>la estufa</i>
fan	<i>el ventilador</i>	television set	<i>el televisor</i>
freezer	<i>el congelador</i>	VCR	<i>el video</i>
hair dryer	<i>el secador</i>	washing machine	<i>la lavadora</i>
microwave oven	<i>el horno de microondas</i>		

### Household Chores

English	Spanish	English	Spanish
to babysit	<i>cuidar/guardar a los niños</i>	to mow the lawn	<i>cortar el césped</i>
to clean the house	<i>limpiar la casa</i>	to pay the bills	<i>pagar las cuentas</i>
to clear the table	<i>quitar la mesa</i>	to prepare the meals	<i>preparar las comidas</i>
to cook	<i>cocinar</i>	to repair	<i>reparar</i>

(continues)

**Household Chores***(continued)*

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
to do housework	<i>hacer los quehaceres domésticos</i>	to set the table	<i>poner la mesa</i>
to do laundry	<i>lavar la ropa</i>	to straighten	<i>ordenar</i>
to dust	<i>sacudir los muebles</i>	to take out garbage	<i>sacar la basura</i>
to go downtown	<i>ir al centro</i>	to vacuum	<i>pasar la aspiradora</i>
to go shopping	<i>ir de compras</i>	to wash the car	<i>lavar el coche</i>
to iron	<i>planchar la ropa</i>	to wash the dishes	<i>lavar los platos</i>
to make the bed	<i>hacer la cama ender la cama</i>		

**Animals and Insects**

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
bear	<i>el oso</i>	kangaroo	<i>el canguro</i>
bee	<i>la abeja</i>	leopard	<i>el leopardo</i>
bird	<i>el pájaro, el ave</i>	lion	<i>el león</i>
bull	<i>el toro</i>	monkey	<i>el mono</i>
cat	<i>el gato</i>	mosquito	<i>el mosquito</i>
chicken	<i>el pollo</i>	panther	<i>la pantera</i>
cow	<i>la vaca</i>	pig	<i>el cochino</i>
crocodile	<i>el cocodrilo</i>	rabbit	<i>el conejo</i>
deer	<i>el ciervo</i>	rooster	<i>el gallo</i>
dog	<i>el perro</i>	shark	<i>el tiburón</i>
dolphin	<i>el delfín</i>	sheep	<i>la oveja</i>
donkey	<i>el burro</i>	snake	<i>la serpiente</i>
duck	<i>el pato</i>	spider	<i>la araña</i>
elephant	<i>el elefante</i>	squirrel	<i>la ardilla</i>
fish	<i>el pez</i>	swan	<i>el cisne</i>
fox	<i>el zorro</i>	tiger	<i>el tigre</i>
giraffe	<i>la jirafa</i>	tortoise	<i>la tortuga</i>
goat	<i>la cabra</i>	turkey	<i>el pavo</i>
gorilla	<i>el gorila</i>	turtle	<i>la tortuga</i>

English	Spanish	English	Spanish
gnat	<i>el jején</i>	whale	<i>la ballena</i>
hen	<i>la gallina</i>	wolf	<i>el lobo</i>
horse	<i>el caballo</i>	zebra	<i>la cebra</i>

## Foods

### Meats

English	Spanish	English	Spanish
bacon	<i>el tocino</i>	pork	<i>el puerco</i>
beef	<i>la carne de vaca</i>	roast beef	<i>el rosbif</i>
ham	<i>el jamón</i>	sausages	<i>las salchichas</i>
hamburger	<i>la hamburguesa</i>	steak	<i>el bistec</i>
lamb	<i>el cordero</i>	steak (BBQ)	<i>el churrasco</i>
liver	<i>el hígado</i>	stew	<i>el estofado, el guisado</i>
meat	<i>la carne</i>	veal	<i>la ternera</i>

### Poultry

English	Spanish	English	Spanish
chicken	<i>el pollo</i>	goose	<i>el ganso</i>
duck	<i>el pato</i>	turkey	<i>el pavo</i>
fowl	<i>la carne de ave</i>	venison	<i>el venado</i>

### Fish and Seafood

English	Spanish	English	Spanish
anchovy	<i>la anchoa</i>	red snapper	<i>el pargo colorado</i>
bass	<i>la merluza</i>	salmon	<i>el salmón</i>
clams	<i>las almejas</i>	sardines	<i>las sardinas</i>
codfish	<i>el bacalao</i>	scallops	<i>las vieiras</i>
crab	<i>el cangrejo</i>	seafood	<i>los mariscos</i>
fish	<i>el pescado</i>	shrimp	<i>los camarones, las gambas</i>
flounder	<i>la platija</i>	sole	<i>el lenguado</i>

(continues)

**Fish and Seafood***(continued)*

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
grouper	<i>el mero</i>	squid	<i>el calamar</i>
lobster	<i>la langosta</i>	swordfish	<i>el pez espada</i>
mussels	<i>los mejillones</i>	trout	<i>la trucha</i>
oysters	<i>las ostras</i>	tuna	<i>el atún</i>

**Vegetables**

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
artichoke	<i>la alcachofa</i>	onion	<i>la cebolla</i>
asparagus	<i>los espárragos</i>	peas	<i>las arvejas, los guisantes</i>
beans (green)	<i>las judías, las habichuelas</i>	pepper	<i>la pimienta</i>
beets	<i>las remolachas</i>	potato	<i>la papa, la patata</i>
broccoli	<i>el brócoli (el brécol)</i>	rice	<i>el arroz</i>
carrot	<i>la zanahoria</i>	salad	<i>la ensalada</i>
cauliflower	<i>la coliflor</i>	soy	<i>la soja</i>
celery	<i>el apio</i>	soybean	<i>la semilla de soja</i>
corn	<i>el maíz</i>	spinach	<i>la espinaca</i>
cucumber	<i>el pepino</i>	sweet potato	<i>la papa dulce</i>
eggplant	<i>la berenjena</i>	tomato	<i>el tomate</i>
garlic	<i>el ajo</i>	turnip	<i>el nabo</i>
green beans (Mexico)	<i>los ejotes</i>	vegetable	<i>la verdura</i>
lettuce	<i>le lechuga</i>	zucchini	<i>el calabacín</i>
mushroom	<i>el champiñón</i>		

**Fruits and Nuts**

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
almond	<i>la almendra</i>	melon	<i>el melón</i>
apple	<i>la manzana</i>	olive	<i>la oliva/la aceituna</i>
apricot	<i>el albaricoque</i>	orange	<i>la naranja</i>
avocado	<i>el aguacate</i>	peach	<i>el melocotón</i>

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
banana	<i>la banana</i>	peanut	<i>el cacahuete</i> (Spain, Mexico); <i>el maní</i> (Latin America)
blueberry	<i>el mirtilo, el arándano azul</i>	pear	<i>la pera</i>
cashew	<i>el anacardo</i>	pecan	<i>la pacana</i>
cherry	<i>la cereza</i>	pineapple	<i>la piña</i>
chestnut	<i>la castaña</i>	plantain	<i>el plátano</i>
coconut	<i>el coco</i>	plum	<i>la ciruela</i>
cranberry	<i>el arándano rojo y agrio</i>	prune	<i>la ciruela pasa</i>
fruit	<i>la fruta</i>	raisin	<i>la pasa, la uva seca</i>
grape	<i>la uva</i>	raspberry	<i>la frambuesa, la mora</i>
grapefruit	<i>la toronja, el pomelo</i>	strawberry	<i>la fresa</i>
hazelnut	<i>la avellana</i>	tangerine	<i>la mandarina</i>
lemon	<i>el limón</i>	walnut	<i>la nuez</i>
lime	<i>la lima</i>	watermelon	<i>la sandía</i>

### **Dairy Products and Condiments**

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
butter	<i>la mantequilla</i>	mayonnaise	<i>la mayonesa</i>
cheese	<i>el queso</i>	mustard	<i>la mostaza</i>
cream	<i>la crema</i>	oil	<i>el aceite</i>
eggs	<i>los huevos</i>	oregano	<i>el orégano</i>
flour	<i>la harina</i>	pepper (black) (red)	<i>la pimienta</i> <i>el pimiento, el ají</i>
garlic	<i>el ajo</i>	saccharin	<i>la sacarina</i>
honey	<i>la miel</i>	salt	<i>la sal</i>
jam, jelly	<i>la mermelada</i>	sugar	<i>el azúcar</i>
ketchup	<i>la salsa de tomate</i>	vinegar	<i>el vinagre</i>
maple syrup	<i>el jarabe de arce</i>	yogurt	<i>el yogur</i>



**Eggs**

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
fried	<i>huevos fritos</i>	scrambled	<i>huevos revueltos</i>
hard-boiled	<i>huevos duros</i>	soft-boiled	<i>huevos pasados por agua</i>
poached	<i>huevos escalfados</i>	with spicy sausage	<i>huevos con chorizo</i>
an omelette	<i>una tortilla</i>	with spicy tomato sauce (fried)	<i>huevos rancheros</i>

**Breads and Desserts**

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
caramel custard	<i>el flan</i>	meringue	<i>el merengue</i>
cracker	<i>la galleta</i>	pie	<i>el pastel</i>
bread	<i>el pan</i>	pudding	<i>la natilla, el pudín</i>
bun	<i>el bollo</i>	rice pudding	<i>el arroz con leche</i>
cake	<i>el pastel, la torta</i>	rolls	<i>los panecillos</i>
cookie	<i>la galletita</i>	sandwich	<i>el sándwich</i>
dessert	<i>el postre</i>	sponge cake	<i>el bizcocho</i>
gelatin	<i>la gelatina</i>	sundae	<i>el helado con frutas, jarabes or nueces; la copa de helado</i>
ice cream	<i>el helado</i>	tart	<i>la tarta</i>
marzipan	<i>el marzapán</i>		

**Beverages**

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
beer	<i>la cerveza</i>	lemonade	<i>la limonada</i>
champagne	<i>el champán</i>	milk	<i>la leche</i>
(hot) chocolate	<i>el chocolate</i>	milkshake	<i>la batida, la licuada</i>
cider	<i>la sidra</i>	soda	<i>la gaseosa</i>
coffee	<i>el café</i>	soup	<i>la sopa</i>
decaffeinated coffee	<i>el café descafeinado</i>	tea	<i>el té</i>
herbal tea	<i>el té herbario</i>	(mineral) water	<i>el agua (mineral)</i>
		(carbonated) water	<i>el agua (con gas)</i>
		(noncarbonated) water	<i>el agua (sin gas)</i>
juice (orange)	<i>el jugo (de naranja)</i>	wine	<i>el vino</i>

**Meals**

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
breakfast	<i>el desayuno</i>	lunch	<i>el almuerzo</i>
dinner	<i>la cena</i>	snack	<i>la merienda</i>

**Table Setting**

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
bowl	<i>el tazón</i>	pepper shaker	<i>el pimentero</i>
carafe	<i>la garrafa</i>	place setting	<i>el cubierto</i>
cup	<i>la taza</i>	salt shaker	<i>el salero</i>
dinner plate	<i>el plato</i>	saucer	<i>el platillo</i>
fork	<i>el tenedor</i>	soup dish	<i>la sopera</i>
glass	<i>el vaso</i>	soup spoon	<i>la cuchara</i>
knife	<i>el cuchillo</i>	tablecloth	<i>el mantel</i>
menu	<i>el menú</i>	teaspoon	<i>la cucharita</i>
napkin	<i>la servilleta</i>	wine glass	<i>la copa</i>
pepper mill	<i>el molinillo de pimienta</i>		

**Quantities**

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
a bag of	<i>un saco de</i>	a half pound of	<i>doscientos gramos de, una media libra de</i>
a bar of	<i>una tableta de, una barra de</i>	a jar of	<i>un pomo de, un frasco de</i>
a bottle of	<i>una botella de</i>	a package of	<i>un paquete de</i>
a box of	<i>una caja de</i>	a pound of	<i>quinientos gramos de, una libra de</i>
a can of	<i>una lata de</i>	a quart of	<i>un litro de</i>
a dozen of	<i>una docena de</i>	a slice of	<i>un trozo de</i>

## Parts of the Body

English	Spanish	English	Spanish
ankle	<i>el tobillo</i>	heart	<i>el corazón</i>
arm	<i>el brazo</i>	hip	<i>la cadera</i>
back	<i>la espalda</i>	knee	<i>la rodilla</i>
beard	<i>la barba</i>	leg	<i>la pierna</i>
blood	<i>la sangre</i>	lip	<i>el labio</i>
body	<i>el cuerpo</i>	liver	<i>el hígado</i>
brain	<i>el cerebro</i>	lung	<i>el pulmón</i>
calf	<i>la pantorrilla</i>	mouth	<i>la boca</i>
cheek	<i>la mejilla</i>	muscle	<i>el músculo</i>
chest	<i>el pecho</i>	mustache	<i>el bigote, el mostacho</i>
chin	<i>la barbilla</i>	nail	<i>la uña</i>
ear	<i>la oreja</i>	neck	<i>el cuello</i>
elbow	<i>el codo</i>	nose	<i>la nariz</i>
eye	<i>el ojo</i>	shoulder	<i>el hombro</i>
eyebrow	<i>la ceja</i>	skin	<i>la piel</i>
eyelash	<i>la pestaña</i>	stomach	<i>el estómago</i>
eyelid	<i>el párpado</i>	thigh	<i>el muslo</i>
face	<i>la cara</i>	throat	<i>la garganta</i>
finger	<i>el dedo</i>	toe	<i>el dedo del pie</i>
foot	<i>el pie</i>	tongue	<i>la lengua</i>
forehead	<i>la frente</i>	tooth	<i>el diente</i>
hair	<i>el cabello, el pelo</i>	waist	<i>la cintura, la talle</i>
hand	<i>la mano</i>	wrist	<i>la muñeca</i>
head	<i>la cabeza</i>		

## Places in Town

English	Spanish	English	Spanish
airport	<i>el aeropuerto</i>	monument	<i>el monumento</i>
avenue	<i>la avenida</i>	movie theater	<i>el cine</i>

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
bakery	<i>la panadería</i>	museum	<i>el museo</i>
bank	<i>el banco</i>	neighborhood	<i>el barrio</i>
bookstore	<i>la librería</i>	newsstand	<i>el quiosco de periódicos</i>
boulevard	<i>el bulevar; el zócalo (Mexico)</i>	park	<i>el parque</i>
building	<i>el edificio</i>	pastry shop	<i>la pastelería</i>
butcher shop	<i>la carnicería</i>	police station	<i>la comisaría</i>
cafe	<i>el café</i>	post office	<i>el correo</i>
camera shop	<i>la tienda del fotógrafo</i>	record store	<i>la tienda de discos</i>
cathedral	<i>la catedral</i>	restaurant	<i>el restaurante</i>
church	<i>la iglesia</i>	road	<i>el camino</i>
clothing store	<i>la tienda de ropa</i>	school	<i>la escuela</i>
courthouse	<i>el palacio de justicia</i>	sidewalk	<i>la acera</i>
department store	<i>el almacén</i>	skyscraper	<i>el rascacielos</i>
downtown	<i>el centro</i>	souvenir shop	<i>la tienda de recuerdos</i>
drugstore	<i>la farmacia</i>	square	<i>la plaza</i>
dry cleaner's	<i>la tintorería</i>	stadium	<i>el estadio</i>
factory	<i>la fábrica</i>	station	<i>la estación</i>
florist	<i>la florería</i>	statue	<i>la estatua</i>
gas station	<i>la gasolinera</i>	store	<i>la tienda</i>
grocery store	<i>la bodega</i>	street	<i>la calle</i>
gym	<i>el gimnasio</i>	suburb	<i>el suburbio</i>
highway	<i>la carretera</i>	supermarket	<i>el supermercado</i>
hospital	<i>el hospital</i>	swimming pool	<i>la piscina</i>
hotel	<i>el hotel</i>	theater	<i>el teatro</i>
jewelry store	<i>la joyería</i>	tobacco store	<i>la tabaquería</i>
laundry	<i>la lavandería</i>	town	<i>el pueblo</i>
leather goods store	<i>la marroquinería</i>	town hall	<i>el ayuntamiento</i>
library	<i>la biblioteca</i>	toy store	<i>la juguetería</i>
mall	<i>el centro comercial</i>	university	<i>la universidad</i>
market	<i>el mercado</i>	youth center	<i>el centro juvenil</i>

## School and the Classroom

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
academy	<i>el colegio</i>	middle school	<i>la escuela intermedia entre la primaria y la secundaria</i>
answer	<i>la respuesta</i>	notebook	<i>el cuaderno</i>
backpack	<i>la mochila</i>	notes	<i>los apuntes</i>
ballpoint pen	<i>el bolígrafo</i>	page	<i>la página</i>
bell	<i>el timbre</i>	paper	<i>el papel</i>
bench	<i>el banco</i>	pen (ballpoint)	<i>la pluma (el bolígrafo)</i>
book	<i>el libro</i>	pencil	<i>el lápiz</i>
cafeteria	<i>la cantina</i>	poetry	<i>la poesía</i>
calculator	<i>la calculadora</i>	principal	<i>el director</i>
calendar	<i>el calendario</i>	professor	<i>el profesor, la profesora</i>
chalk	<i>la tiza</i>	pupil	<i>el alumno, el estudiante</i>
chalkboard	<i>la pizarra</i>	question	<i>la pregunta</i>
class	<i>la clase</i>	quiz	<i>la prueba</i>
classroom	<i>la sala de clase</i>	reading	<i>la lectura</i>
computer	<i>el ordenador, la computadora</i>	recess	<i>la hora de recreo</i>
counselor	<i>el consejero</i>	rule	<i>la regla</i>
crayon	<i>el creyón</i>	ruler	<i>la regla</i>
(student) desk	<i>el pupitre</i>	schedule	<i>el horario</i>
dictionary	<i>el diccionario</i>	school	<i>la escuela</i>
elementary school	<i>la escuela elemental, la primaria</i>	school supplies	<i>los útiles</i>
eraser	<i>la goma</i>	scissors	<i>las tijeras</i>
error	<i>la falta</i>	sentence	<i>la frase, la oración</i>
exercise	<i>el ejercicio</i>	student estudiante	<i>el (la) alumno(a), el (la)</i>
explanation	<i>la explicación</i>	subject	<i>la materia</i>

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
grade	<i>la nota</i>	summary	<i>el resumen</i>
grammar	<i>la gramática</i>	teacher	<i>el (la) profesor(a)</i>
gym	<i>el gimnasio</i>	test	<i>el examen</i>
high school	<i>la escuela de segunda enseñanza, la secundaria</i>	tutor	<i>el profesor, la profesora particular</i>
homework	<i>la tarea</i>	vocabulary	<i>el vocabulario</i>
laboratory	<i>el laboratorio</i>	word	<i>la palabra</i>
lesson	<i>la lección</i>	work	<i>el trabajo</i>
map	<i>el mapa</i>		

## School Subjects and Activities

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
algebra	<i>el álgebra</i>	geometry	<i>la geometría</i>
art	<i>el arte</i>	gym	<i>la educación física</i>
arts and crafts	<i>la artesanía</i>	historia	<i>la historia</i>
band	<i>la banda</i>	Latin	<i>el latín</i>
biology	<i>la biología</i>	math	<i>las matemáticas</i>
calculus	<i>el cálculo</i>	music	<i>la música</i>
chemistry	<i>la química</i>	orchestra	<i>la orquesta</i>
chorus	<i>el coro</i>	physics	<i>la física</i>
club	<i>el círculo</i>	science	<i>la ciencia</i>
computer science	<i>la informática</i>	shop	<i>las artes industriales</i>
drawing	<i>el diseño</i>	Spanish	<i>el español</i>
English	<i>el inglés</i>	team	<i>el equipo</i>
French	<i>el francés</i>	technology	<i>la tecnología</i>
geography	<i>la geografía</i>		

## Professions

<b>English</b>	<b>Male</b>	<b>Female</b>
accountant	<i>el contable (el contador)</i>	<i>la contable (la contadora)</i>
actor/actress	<i>el actor</i>	<i>la actriz</i>
artist	<i>el artista</i>	<i>la artista</i>
athlete	<i>el atleta</i>	<i>la atleta</i>
baker	<i>el panadero</i>	<i>la panadera</i>
barber	<i>el peluquero</i>	<i>la peluquera</i>
businessperson	<i>el hombre de negocios</i>	<i>la mujer de negocios</i>
butcher	<i>el carnicero</i>	<i>la carnicera</i>
cashier	<i>el cajero</i>	<i>la cajera</i>
cook	<i>el cocinero</i>	<i>la cocinera</i>
dentist	<i>el dentista</i>	<i>la dentista</i>
designer	<i>el diseñador</i>	<i>la diseñadora</i>
doctor	<i>el médico</i>	<i>la médica</i>
electrician	<i>el electricista</i>	<i>la electricista</i>
engineer	<i>el ingeniero</i>	<i>la ingeniera</i>
farmer	<i>el campesino</i>	<i>la campesina</i>
firefighter	<i>el bombero</i>	<i>la bombera</i>
flight attendant	<i>el aeromozo</i>	<i>la aeromoza, la azafata</i>
government employee	<i>el empleado del gobierno</i>	<i>la empleada del gobierno</i>
hairstylist	<i>el peluquero</i>	<i>la peluquera</i>
jeweler	<i>el joyero</i>	<i>la joyera</i>
judge	<i>el juez</i>	<i>la juez</i>
laborer	<i>el obrero</i>	<i>la obrera</i>
lawyer	<i>el abogado</i>	<i>la abogada</i>
mail carrier	<i>el cartero</i>	<i>la cartera</i>
manager	<i>el director, el gerente</i>	<i>la directora, la gerente</i>
mechanic	<i>el mecánico</i>	<i>la mecánica</i>
merchant	<i>el comerciante</i>	<i>la comerciante</i>

<b>English</b>	<b>Male</b>	<b>Female</b>
musician	<i>el músico</i>	<i>la música</i>
nurse	<i>el enfermero</i>	<i>la enfermera</i>
painter	<i>el pintor</i>	<i>la pintora</i>
pharmacist	<i>el farmacéutico</i>	<i>la farmacéutica</i>
pilot	<i>el piloto</i>	<i>la pilota</i>
poet	<i>el poeta</i>	<i>la poetisa</i>
police officer	<i>el policía</i>	<i>la policía</i>
president	<i>el presidente</i>	<i>la presidenta</i>
programmer	<i>el programador</i>	<i>la programadora</i>
researcher	<i>el investigador</i>	<i>la investigadora</i>
salesperson	<i>el dependiente</i>	<i>la dependiente</i>
scientist	<i>el científico</i>	<i>la científica</i>
secretary	<i>el secretario</i>	<i>la secretaria</i>
server	<i>el mozo, el mesero</i>	<i>la moza, la mesera</i>
soldier	<i>el soldado</i>	<i>la soldada</i>
teacher	<i>el profesor</i>	<i>la profesora</i>
waiter/waitress	<i>el camarero, el mesero, el mozo</i>	<i>la camarera, la mesera, la moza</i>
writer	<i>el escritor</i>	<i>la escritora</i>

## Leisure Time

### Hobbies and Other Leisure Activities

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
ballet	<i>el ballet</i>	movies	<i>el cine</i>
beach	<i>la playa</i>	opera	<i>la ópera</i>
cards	<i>los naipes</i>	parade	<i>el desfile</i>
concert	<i>el concierto</i>	picnic	<i>el picnic</i>
country	<i>el campo</i>	play	<i>la obra teatral</i>
dance	<i>el baile</i>	show	<i>la exposición</i>

(continues)



**Hobbies and Other Leisure Activities***(continued)*

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
fair	<i>la feria</i>	theater	<i>el teatro</i>
hike	<i>la caminata</i>	walk	<i>el paseo</i>
holiday	<i>la fiesta</i>	zoo	<i>el parque zoológico</i>
mountain	<i>la montaña</i>		

**Computer Terms**

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
to boot	<i>arrancar</i>	joystick	<i>el control</i>
byte	<i>el byte, el coteto</i>	key	<i>la tecla</i>
CD	<i>el CD</i>	keyboard	<i>el teclado</i>
to click	<i>chascar</i>	laptop	<i>la computadora portátil</i>
computer	<i>la computadora, el ordenador</i>	memory	<i>la memoria</i>
computer science	<i>la informática</i>	to merge	<i>fusionar</i>
CPU	<i>la unidad central</i>	modem	<i>el modem</i>
cursor	<i>el cursor</i>	monitor	<i>el monitor</i>
cyberspace	<i>el ciberespacio</i>	motherboard	<i>la carta-madre</i>
database	<i>la base de datos</i>	mouse	<i>el ratón</i>
disk drive	<i>la disquetera</i>	network	<i>la red</i>
to download	<i>bajar, descargar</i>	to press	<i>apretar</i>
DVD	<i>el DVD</i>	to scan	<i>barrer</i>
e-mail	<i>el correo electrónico</i>	scanner	<i>el scanner</i>
e-mail address	<i>la dirección de correo electrónico</i>	screen	<i>la pantalla</i>
hard disk	<i>el disco duro</i>	search engine	<i>el buscador</i>
hardware	<i>el hardware equipo, el soporte físico</i>	software	<i>el logicial</i>
home page	<i>la página inicial</i>	tape backup	<i>la cinta de seguridad</i>
icon	<i>el icono</i>	Web	<i>la teleraña</i>
instant message	<i>el recado instantáneo</i>	word processor	<i>el procesador de textos</i>
Internet	<i>el internet</i>		

**Musical Instruments**

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
accordion	<i>el acordeón</i>	horn	<i>el cuerno</i>
cello	<i>el violoncelo</i>	oboe	<i>el oboe</i>
clarinet	<i>el clarinete</i>	piano	<i>el piano</i>
drum	<i>el tambor</i>	piccolo	<i>el piccolo</i>
drum set	<i>la batería</i>	saxophone	<i>el saxofón</i>
flute	<i>la flauta</i>	trombone	<i>el trombón</i>
guitar	<i>la guitarra</i>	trumpet	<i>la trompeta</i>
harp	<i>la arpa</i>	violin	<i>el violín</i>

**Sports**

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
aerobics	<i>los aeróbicos</i>	jai alai	<i>el jai alai</i>
athletics	<i>el atletismo</i>	jogging	<i>el trotar (el footing)</i>
auto racing	<i>las carreras de coches</i>	mountain climbing	<i>el alpinismo</i>
baseball	<i>el béisbol</i>	Ping-Pong	<i>el ping-pong</i>
body-building	<i>el culturismo</i>	roller skating	<i>el patinaje sobre ruedas</i>
bowling	<i>los bolos</i>	sailing	<i>la navegación</i>
canoeing	<i>el piragüismo</i>	scuba diving	<i>el buceo</i>
cycling	<i>el ciclismo</i>	skateboarding	<i>el patinaje sobre plancha, el monopatín</i>
deep-sea fishing	<i>la pesca de altura</i>	skiing	<i>el esquí</i>
diving	<i>el buceo</i>	soccer	<i>el fútbol</i>
fishing	<i>la pesca</i>	surfing	<i>el surf</i>
football	<i>el fútbol americano</i>	swimming	<i>la natación</i>
golf	<i>el golf</i>	tennis	<i>el tenis</i>
hockey	<i>el hockey</i>	track	<i>la carrera</i>
hunting	<i>la caza</i>	volleyball	<i>el volibol</i>
horse racing	<i>las carreras de caballos</i>	waterskiing	<i>el esquí acuático</i>
horseback riding	<i>la equitación</i>	windsurfing	<i>el windsurf</i>
ice skating	<i>el patinaje sobre hielo</i>		

**Playing Fields**

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
beach	<i>la playa</i>	park	<i>el parque</i>
course (golf)	<i>el campo</i>	pool	<i>la piscina</i>
court	<i>la cancha</i>	rink	<i>la pista</i>
field	<i>el campo</i>	sea	<i>el mar</i>
gymnasium	<i>el gimnasio</i>	slope	<i>la pista</i>
mountain	<i>la montaña</i>	stadium	<i>el estadio</i>
ocean	<i>el océano</i>	track	<i>la pista</i>

**Equipment**

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
ball (football, soccer)	<i>la bola</i>	jogging shoes	<i>los tenis</i>
ball (baseball, jai alai, tennis)	<i>la pelota</i>	jogging suit	<i>el traje de trotar</i>
ball (basketball)	<i>el balón</i>	knee pads	<i>las rodilleras</i>
bat	<i>el bate</i>	mitt	<i>el guante</i>
bathing suit	<i>el traje de baño</i>	net	<i>la red</i>
bicycle	<i>la bicicleta</i>	poles (ski)	<i>los palos</i>
boat	<i>el barco</i>	puck	<i>el puck, el disco</i>
boots (ski)	<i>las botas</i>	racket	<i>la raqueta</i>
canoe	<i>la canoa</i>	rifle	<i>el fusil, el rifle</i>
diver's helmet	<i>el yelmo</i>	sailboard	<i>la plancha de vela</i>
diving suit	<i>la escafandra</i>	skateboard	<i>la plancha de ruedas, el monopatín</i>
fishing rod	<i>la caña de pesca</i>	skates	<i>los patines</i>
flippers	<i>las aletas</i>	ski bindings	<i>las ataduras</i>
goggles (ski)	<i>las gafas de esquí</i>	skis	<i>los esquís</i>
goggles (swimming)	<i>las gafas submarinas</i>	water-skis	<i>los esquís acuáticos</i>
golf clubs	<i>los palos de golf</i>	surfboard	<i>el acuaplano</i>
helmet	<i>el casco</i>	wet suit	<i>la escafandra</i>

**Nature**

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
bay	<i>la bahía, el golfo</i>	ocean	<i>el océano</i>
beach	<i>la playa</i>	ozone layer	<i>la capa de ozono</i>
cloud	<i>la nube</i>	planet	<i>el planeta</i>
coast	<i>la costa</i>	plant	<i>la planta</i>
country, field	<i>el campo</i>	pond	<i>la charca</i>
desert	<i>el desierto</i>	rain	<i>la lluvia</i>
earth	<i>la tierra</i>	river	<i>el río</i>
flower	<i>la flor</i>	sand	<i>la arena</i>
fog	<i>la niebla</i>	sea	<i>el/la mar</i>
forest	<i>la selva</i>	sky	<i>el cielo</i>
grass	<i>la hierba</i>	snow	<i>la nieve</i>
island	<i>la isla</i>	star	<i>la estrella</i>
hill	<i>la colina</i>	stream	<i>el arroyo</i>
lagoon	<i>la laguna</i>	sun	<i>el sol</i>
lake	<i>el lago</i>	tree	<i>el árbol</i>
landscape	<i>el paisaje</i>	waterfall	<i>la cascada</i>
leaf	<i>la hoja</i>	wind	<i>el viento</i>
moon	<i>la luna</i>	woods	<i>el bosque</i>
mountain	<i>la montaña</i>	world	<i>el mundo</i>

**Apparel****Articles of Clothing**

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
bathing suit	<i>el traje de baño</i>	pullover	<i>el jersey</i>
belt	<i>el cinturón</i>	raincoat	<i>el impermeable, la gabardina</i>
blouse	<i>la blusa</i>	robe	<i>la bata</i>
boots	<i>las botas</i>	sandals	<i>las sandalias</i>

*(continues)*

**Articles of Clothing***(continued)*

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
clothing	<i>la ropa</i>	scarf	<i>la bufanda</i>
coat	<i>el abrigo</i>	shirt	<i>la camisa</i>
dress	<i>el vestido</i>	shoe	<i>el zapato</i>
evening gown	<i>el traje de noche</i>	shorts	<i>los pantalones cortos</i>
gloves	<i>los guantes</i>	skirt	<i>la falda</i>
handkerchief	<i>el pañuelo</i>	slip (half) (full)	<i>el faldellín</i> <i>la combinación</i>
hat	<i>el sombrero</i>	sneakers	<i>los tenis</i>
jacket	<i>la chaqueta</i>	socks	<i>los calcetines</i>
jeans	<i>los vaqueros (los jeans)</i>	sports coat	<i>la chaqueta de sport</i>
lingerie	<i>la ropa interior femenina</i>	stockings	<i>las medias</i>
mittens	<i>los mitones</i>	suit	<i>el traje</i>
night shirt	<i>la camisa de dormir</i>	sweater	<i>el suéter</i>
overcoat	<i>el abrigo</i>	tie	<i>la corbata</i>
pajamas	<i>las pijamas/piyamas</i>	T-shirt	<i>la camiseta</i>
pants	<i>el pantalón</i>	umbrella	<i>el paraguas</i>
pantsuit	<i>el traje de pantalones</i>	underwear	<i>la ropa interior</i>
pantyhose	<i>las pantimedias</i>	vest	<i>el chaleco</i>
pocket	<i>el bolsillo</i>	wallet	<i>la cartera</i>
pocketbook	<i>la bolsa</i>	windbreaker	<i>el abrigo contra el viento</i>

**Materials**

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
alpaca	<i>lla alpaca</i>	leather	<i>el cuero</i>
angora	<i>la angora</i>	linen	<i>el lino</i>
cashmere	<i>la cachemira</i>	microfiber	<i>la microfibra</i>
corduroy	<i>la pana</i>	nylon	<i>el nilón</i>
cotton	<i>el algodón</i>	polyester	<i>el sintético</i>

English	Spanish	English	Spanish
denim	<i>la tela tejana</i>	rubber	<i>la goma, el caucho, el hule</i> (Latin America), <i>el jebe</i> (Colombia, Peru)
flannel	<i>la franela</i>	satin	<i>el raso</i>
fleece	<i>el forro polar</i>	silk	<i>la seda</i>
fur	<i>la piel</i>	suede	<i>la gamusa</i>
gabardine	<i>la gabardina</i>	taffeta	<i>el tafetán</i>
knit	<i>el tejido de punto</i>	velvet	<i>el terciopelo</i>
lace	<i>el encaje</i>	wool	<i>la lana</i>

### Parts of Clothing

English	Spanish	English	Spanish
back	<i>el atrás, la espalda</i>	lining	<i>el forro</i>
back pocket	<i>el bolsillo anterior</i>	pleat	<i>el pliegue, la pinza</i>
button	<i>el botón</i>	pocket	<i>el bolsillo</i>
collar	<i>el cuello</i>	shoelaces	<i>los cordones</i>
cuff (shirt) (pants)	<i>el puño</i> <i>la vuelta, el dobléz</i>	side pocket	<i>el bolsillo de lado</i>
fly	<i>la bragueta</i>	sleeve	<i>la manga</i>
front	<i>el frente</i>	snap	<i>el broche de presión</i>
heel	<i>el tacón</i>	waist	<i>la cintura</i>
hem	<i>el bajo, el ruedo</i>	zipper	<i>el cierre</i>

### Clothing Descriptions

English	Spanish	English	Spanish
baggy	<i>holgado(a)</i>	modest	<i>modesto(a)</i>
casual	<i>casual</i>	narrow	<i>estrecho(a)</i>
dressy	<i>elegante</i>	short	<i>corto(a)</i>
formal	<i>etiquetero(a)</i>	small	<i>pequeño(a)</i>

(continues)

**Clothing Descriptions***(continued)*

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
long	<i>largo(a)</i>	sporty	<i>deportivo(a)</i>
loose (shoes)	<i>hogado(a), suelto(a) apretado(a)</i>	tight (clothing)	<i>estrecho(a)</i>
loud	<i>chillón(ona)</i>	wide	<i>ancho(a)</i>
low-cut	<i>escotado(a)</i>		

**Colors**

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
beige	<i>beige</i>	olive green	<i>verde oliva</i>
black	<i>negro</i>	orange	<i>anaranjado(a)</i>
blue (navy blue)	<i>azul (azul marino)</i>	pink	<i>rosado</i>
brown	<i>café, marrón, pardo</i>	purple	<i>morado</i>
burgundy	<i>granate</i>	red	<i>rojo</i>
chestnut	<i>marrón</i>	salmon	<i>color salmón</i>
coffee	<i>color café</i>	tan	<i>marrón claro</i>
gray	<i>gris</i>	violet	<i>violeta</i>
green	<i>verde</i>	white	<i>blanco</i>
khaki	<i>caqui</i>	yellow	<i>amarillo</i>
maroon	<i>rojo oscuro</i>		

**Jewelry**

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
bracelet	<i>la pulsera</i>	pin	<i>el broche</i>
chain	<i>la cadena</i>	ring (jeweled)	<i>la sortija</i>
earring	<i>el arete</i>	ring (plain)	<i>el anillo</i>
gold	<i>el oro</i>	silver	<i>la plata</i>
necklace	<i>el collar</i>	watch	<i>el reloj</i>

**Jewels**

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
amethyst	<i>la amatista</i>	onyx	<i>el ónix</i>
aquamarine	<i>el aguamarina</i>	opal	<i>el ópalo</i>
diamond	<i>el diamante</i>	pearls	<i>las perlas</i>
emerald	<i>la esmeralda</i>	ruby	<i>el rubí</i>
garnet	<i>la granate</i>	sapphire	<i>el zafiro</i>
ivory	<i>el marfil</i>	topaz	<i>el topacio</i>
jade	<i>el jade</i>	turquoise	<i>la turquesa</i>

**Travel and Transportation**

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
airplane	<i>el avión</i>	rocket	<i>el cohete</i>
airport	<i>el aeropuerto</i>	route	<i>la ruta</i>
bicycle	<i>la bicicleta</i>	sedan	<i>el sedán</i>
boat	<i>el barco</i>	ship	<i>la nave, el buque, el barco</i>
bus	<i>el autobús</i>	space shuttle	<i>el transbordador espacial</i>
bus terminal	<i>el terminal de autobuses</i>	subway	<i>el metro</i>
car (sports)	<i>el automóvil, el coche, el carro (deportivo)</i>	taxi	<i>el taxi</i>
convertible	<i>el convertible, el descapotable</i>	ticket	<i>el boleto, el billete</i>
flight	<i>el vuelo</i>	ticket window	<i>la ventanilla</i>
freeway	<i>la autopista</i>	toll	<i>el peaje</i>
gate	<i>la puerta</i>	trailer truck	<i>un camión articulado</i>
highway	<i>la carretera</i>	train	<i>el tren</i>
minivan	<i>una minicamioneta</i>	train station	<i>la estación</i>
motorcycle	<i>la motocicleta, la moto</i>	traveler	<i>el viajero</i>
passenger	<i>el pasajero</i>	trip	<i>el viaje</i>
pickup truck	<i>la furgoneta</i>	truck	<i>el camión</i>
pier	<i>el muelle</i>	van	<i>la camioneta</i>
railroad	<i>el ferrocarril</i>	wheel	<i>la rueda</i>
road	<i>el camino</i>		



## Car Parts

English	Spanish	English	Spanish
accelerator	<i>el acelerador</i>	hood	<i>la capota</i>
air bag	<i>la bolsa de aire</i>	horn	<i>la bocina</i>
air conditioner	<i>el acondicionador de aire</i>	ignition	<i>el contacto</i>
anti-lock brakes	<i>los frenos anti-bloqueantes</i>	license plate	<i>la placa de matrícula</i>
battery	<i>la batería</i>	motor	<i>el motor</i>
brake light	<i>la luz de freno</i>	oil	<i>el aceite</i>
brakes	<i>los frenos</i>	radiator	<i>el radiador</i>
bumper	<i>el parachoques</i>	roof rack	<i>el portaequipajes</i>
carburetor	<i>el carburador</i>	steering wheel	<i>el volante</i>
clutch pedal	<i>el embrague</i>	stereo	<i>el estereo</i>
door handle	<i>el tirador de puerta</i>	sunroof	<i>el techo corredizo</i>
fan	<i>el ventilador</i>	taillight	<i>el faro trasero</i>
fender	<i>el guardafango</i>	tire	<i>la goma, la llanta</i>
gasoline	<i>la gasolina</i>	transmission	<i>la transmisión</i>
gas tank	<i>el tanque</i>	trunk	<i>el baúl</i>
gear shift	<i>el cambio de velocidades</i>	turn signal	<i>el direccional</i>
glove compartment	<i>la guantera</i>	wheel	<i>la rueda</i>
hand brake	<i>el freno de mano</i>	windshield wiper	<i>el limpia parabrisas</i>
headlight	<i>el faro delantero</i>		

## Countries

English	Spanish	English	Spanish
Algeria	<i>Argelia</i>	Ireland	<i>Irlanda</i>
Argentina	<i>la Argentina</i>	Israel	<i>Israel</i>
Austria	<i>Austria</i>	Italy	<i>Italia</i>
Belgium	<i>Bélgica</i>	Japan	<i>el Japón</i>
Belize	<i>Bélice</i>	Lebanon	<i>Líbano</i>

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
Bolivia	<i>Bolivia</i>	Mexico	<i>México (Méjico)</i>
Brazil	<i>el Brasil</i>	Morocco	<i>el Marruecos</i>
Canada	<i>el Canadá</i>	the Netherlands	<i>los Países Bajos</i>
Chile	<i>Chile</i>	Nicaragua	<i>Nicaragua</i>
China	<i>China</i>	Norway	<i>Noruega</i>
Colombia	<i>Colombia</i>	Panama	<i>Panamá</i>
Costa Rica	<i>Costa Rica</i>	Paraguay	<i>Paraguay</i>
Cuba	<i>Cuba</i>	Peru	<i>el Perú</i>
Denmark	<i>Dinamarca</i>	Poland	<i>Polonia</i>
Dominican Republic	<i>la República Dominicana</i>	Portugal	<i>Portugal</i>
Ecuador	<i>el Ecuador</i>	Puerto Rico	<i>Puerto Rico</i>
Egypt	<i>Egipto</i>	Romania	<i>Rumanía</i>
El Salvador	<i>El Salvador</i>	Russia	<i>Rusia</i>
England	<i>Inglaterra</i>	Scotland	<i>Escocia</i>
Finland	<i>Finlandia</i>	Spain	<i>España</i>
France	<i>Francia</i>	Sweden	<i>Suecia</i>
Germany	<i>Alemania</i>	Switzerland	<i>Suiza</i>
Greece	<i>Grecia</i>	Tunisia	<i>Túnez</i>
Guatemala	<i>Guatemala</i>	Turkey	<i>Turquía</i>
Haiti	<i>Haití</i>	United States	<i>los Estados Unidos</i>
Honduras	<i>Honduras</i>	Uruguay	<i>el Uruguay</i>
Hungary	<i>Hungría</i>	Venezuela	<i>Venezuela</i>
India	<i>India</i>		

## The Continents

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
Africa	<i>África</i>	Europe	<i>Europa</i>
Antarctica	<i>la Antártica</i>	North America	<i>Norte América, La América del Norte</i>
Asia	<i>Asia</i>	South America	<i>Sud América, la América del Sur</i>
Australia	<i>Australia</i>		

## The Weather

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
It's bad weather.	<i>Hace mal tiempo.</i>	It's overcast.	<i>Está cubierto.</i>
It's beautiful weather	<i>Hace buen tiempo.</i>	It's pouring.	<i>Hay lluvias torrenciales.</i>
It's cloudy.	<i>Está cubierto. or Está nubloso.</i>	It's raining.	<i>Llueve. Está lloviendo.</i>
It's cold.	<i>Hace frío.</i>	It's showery.	<i>Está lluvioso.</i>
It's cool.	<i>Hace fresco.</i>	It's snowing.	<i>Nieva. Está nevando.</i>
It's hailing.	<i>Hay granizo.</i>	It's sunny.	<i>Hace sol.</i>
It's hot.	<i>Hace calor.</i>	It's thundering.	<i>Truena.</i>
It's humid.	<i>Hay humedad.</i>	It's windy.	<i>Hace viento.</i>
It's lightning.	<i>Hay relámpagos.</i>		

# Index

---

- ˆ (accent) character, cardinal number rules, 6
- ! and ! (exclamation point), emphasis, 191–192
- ! (inverted exclamation point) character, command emphasis, 136
- . (period) character, numeral punctuation, 5
  
- abbreviations, ordinal number rules, 8
- able, infinitive derivations, 164
- absolute superlatives, expressions, 240
- accent (˘) character, cardinal number rules, 6
- accents, 85, 118–119, 152
- active voice versus passive voice, 243
- activities (leisure time), vocabulary, 353–357
- activities (schools), vocabulary, 351
- adjectives
  - absolute superlatives, 240
  - demonstrative, 28–29
  - equality comparisons, 238
  - gender issues, 219–225
  - indefinite, 198–199
  - inequality comparisons, 238
  - infinitive derivations, 164
  - infinitive uses, 160
  - interrogatives, 185
  - invariable, 224–225
  - irregular comparatives, 241
  - letter change requirements, 219–222
  - meaning changes, 229
  - nationality, 222
  - no letter change requirements, 223–224
  - plurals, 225–226, 228
  - positioning rules, 227–228
  - possessive, 38–40
  - present subjunctive mood uses, 100–101
  - relative, 206
  - shortened forms, 229–230
  - superlative irregularities, 240
  - versus adverbs, 236–237
- adverbial expressions, 176
- adverbial phrases, formations, 232
- adverbs
  - absolute superlatives, 240
  - demonstrative adjective rules, 29
  - equality comparisons, 238
  - formations, 231–232
  - indefinite, 199–200
  - inequality comparisons, 238
  - interrogatives, 185–186
  - irregular comparatives, 242
  - multiple modifiers, 232
  - non-adjective formations, 232–236
  - phrases, 232
  - positioning rules, 237
  - versus adjectives, 236–237
- affirmative commands, 213
- animals, 35, 342–343
- apparel, 25, 357–360
- appliances, vocabulary, 341
- ar verbs
  - past participles, 118
  - regular verb conditional mood, 86
  - regular verb conjugations, 51–52
  - regular verb future tense, 82
  - regular verb imperfect tense, 76
  - regular verb present subjunctive mood, 89
  - regular verb preterit tense, 67–68
  - regular verbs, 258
  - stem-changing verbs, 57–58
- ar with *e*→*ie* stem-changing verbs, 57, 287–288
- ar with *o*→*ue* stem-changing verbs, 58, 289–290
- ar with *e*→*ie* stem-changing verbs, 57
- ar with *o*→*ue* stem-changing verbs, 58
- arithmetic functions, cardinal number rules, 7
- articles, definite, 21–26
- articles, indefinite, 27–28
  
- beverages, vocabulary, 346
- body parts, 25, 348
- bread, vocabulary, 346
  
- calendar, 11
- car parts, vocabulary, 362
- car spelling-change verbs
  - imperatives, 137
  - list, 261–262
  - present subjunctive mood, 90
  - preterit tense, 68–69
- car with *o*→*ue* stem-changing verbs, 291

- cardinal numbers, 3, 5–10, 22
- cer* verbs
  - infinitive derivations, 162
  - spelling-change verbs, 54–55, 90–91
- cir* spelling-change verbs, 54–55, 90–91
- classrooms (schools), vocabulary, 350–351
- clothing, vocabulary, 357–360
- colors, vocabulary, 360
- command forms, gerunds, 115
- commands, 136, 139–150
- comparatives, negative uses, 195
- comparisons, 238–239
- compass points, masculine noun rules, 31
- compound moods
  - conditional perfect, 127–128
  - conditional sentences, 132–134
  - passive voice, 245
  - pluperfect subjunctive, 130–131
  - present perfect subjunctive, 128–129
  - reflexive pronoun positioning, 213
  - subjunctive tense sequence, 131–132
- compound nouns, 32, 37
- compound tenses
  - future perfect, 124–126
  - passive voice, 245
  - past participles, 118–120
  - pluperfect participle, 123–124
  - preterit perfect, 121–123
  - versus simple tenses, 117
- compounds, present subjunctive mood, 102–103
- computer terms, vocabulary, 354
- condiments, vocabulary, 345
- conditional mood, 86–88
- conditional perfect, expressions, 127–128
- conditional progressive tense, 114–115
- conditional sentences, 132–133
- conjugations
  - irregular verbs, 63–64
  - reflexive verbs, 52–53
  - regular verbs, 51–52
  - spelling/stem-changing verbs in present tense, 62
- conjunctions
  - coordinating, 178–179
  - negative, 200–201
  - present subjunctive mood uses, 101–102
  - subordinating, 179–182
- consonant + *-cer* spelling-change verbs, 274–275
- consonant + *-cer/-cir* spelling-change verbs, 55, 90–91
- consonant + *-cir*, spelling-change verbs, 280
- continents, vocabulary, 363
- contractions, 26, 169
- contrary-to-fact conditions, conditional sentences, 133
- conventions, used in book, 1–2
- coordinating conjunctions, 178–179
- countries, vocabulary, 362–363
- ¿cuál(es)?* versus *¿qué?*, 188
- dairy products, vocabulary, 345
- dates, 9, 11–14, 22
- days of the week, 11, 22, 31
- definite articles, 21–26
- demonstrative adjectives, expressions, 28–29
- demonstrative pronouns, expressions, 29–30
- desserts, vocabulary, 346
- diphthongs, accent placement rules, 152
- direct object pronouns, 45–46
- double object pronouns, 50
- eer* spelling-change verbs, 286
- eggs, vocabulary, 346
- electronics, vocabulary, 341
- equality comparisons, expressions, 238
- equipment (sports), vocabulary, 356
- er* verbs
  - past participles, 118
  - regular verb conditional mood, 86
  - regular verb conjugations, 51–52
  - regular verb future tense, 82
  - regular verb imperfect tense, 76
  - regular verb present subjunctive mood, 89
  - regular verb preterit tense, 67–68
  - regular verbs, 259
  - spelling-change verb imperatives, 136
  - stem-changing verbs, 58–59
- er* with *e→ie* stem-changing verbs, 58–59, 302–303
- er* with *e→ue* stem-changing verbs, 304–305
- estar* (“to be”), 66, 100–101, 112–115
- exclamation point (! and ¡), emphasis, 191–192

- exclamations, 25, 191–192  
 expressions, present subjunctive mood uses, 95–98  
 family, vocabulary, 339  
 feminine nouns  
   distinct forms, 33  
   expressions, 32–33  
   gender markers, 33  
   masculine noun equivalents, 33  
   meaning changed by gender, 33  
   possessive adjective modifiers, 39–40  
   possessive pronoun modifiers, 40–41  
 fish, vocabulary, 343–344  
 foods, vocabulary, 343–347  
 formal commands, 135–139  
 fractions, rules, 9–10  
 fruits, vocabulary, 344–345  
 furnishings, vocabulary, 340–341  
 future perfect participle, expressions, 124–126  
 future progressive tense, expressions, 114  
 future tense, 81–83  
 -*gar* spelling-change verbs  
   imperatives, 137  
   list, 263–264  
   present subjunctive mood, 90  
   preterit tense, 68, 70  
 -*gar* with *i*→*ie* stem-changing verbs, 292–293  
 -*gar* with *o*→*ue* stem-changing verbs, 294–295  
 -*gar* with *u*→*ue* stem-changing verbs, 296  
 gender  
   adjectives, 219–225  
   animal kingdom references, 35  
   common noun markers, 33  
   indefinite article rules, 28  
   masculine/feminine nouns, 30–35  
   possessive adjectives, 38–40  
 geographical locations, definite article rules, 23–24  
 -*ger* spelling-change verbs  
   list, 55, 276–277  
   present subjunctive mood, 91  
 gerunds  
   command forms, 115  
   irregular verbs, 110–112  
   progressive tenses, 112–116  
   pronoun rules, 115–116  
   reflexive pronoun positioning, 213  
   regular verbs, 109–110  
   stem-changing verbs, 110–112  
 -*gir* spelling-change verbs  
   list, 55, 281–282  
   present subjunctive mood, 91  
 -*gir* with *e*→*i* stem-changing verbs, 312–313  
 -*guar* spelling-change verbs, 265  
 -*guir* spelling-change verbs  
   list, 285  
   present subjunctive mood, 91  
 -*guir* with *i*→*ie* stem-changing verbs, 314–315  
 hobbies, vocabulary, 353–354  
 house, vocabulary, 340–342  
 household chores, vocabulary, 341–342  
 how expressions, definite articles, 26  
 -*iar* verbs  
   present subjunctive mood, 93  
   spelling-change verbs, 268–269  
   stem-changing verbs, 60–61  
 idiomatic expressions, reflexive verbs, 217–218  
 imperative  
   formal commands, 135–139  
   indirect commands, 150–152  
   informal commands, 139–150  
   stem-changing verbs, 137–138  
 imperfect subjunctive mood, 105–107  
 imperfect tense, 75–81  
 impersonal expressions, present subjunctive mood uses, 95–98  
 indefinite adjectives, expressions, 198–199  
 indefinite adverbs, expressions, 199–200  
 indefinite articles, 27–28  
 indefinite pronouns, negatives, 197–198  
 indefinites, present subjunctive mood, 102–103  
 indirect commands, object pronouns, 150–152  
 indirect object pronouns, 46  
 inequality comparisons, expressions, 238

- infinitives
  - adjective uses, 160
  - definite article rules, 25
  - derivations, 160–164
  - imperfect subjunctive mood uses, 105–106
  - negating, 153
  - noun uses, 153–159
  - object of a preposition, 155–159
  - object of a verb, 154–155
  - perfect, 134, 165
  - predicate nouns, 155
  - reflexive pronoun positioning, 213
  - subject of a sentence, 153
  - subjunctive rules, 159
  - verb accents, 85
- informal commands, 139–150
- information questions, 184–190
- insects, vocabulary, 342–343
- interrogatives, 183–190
- invariable adjectives, expressions, 224–225
- inversions, yes/no questions, 184
- inverted exclamation point (*¡*) character, 136
- ir* verbs
  - irregular gerunds, 112
  - irregular verb imperfect tense, 76
  - past participles, 118
  - regular verb conditional mood, 86
  - regular verb conjugations, 51–52
  - regular verb future tense, 82
  - regular verb imperfect tense, 76
  - regular verb present subjunctive mood, 89
  - regular verb preterit tense, 67–68
  - regular verbs, 260
  - spelling-change verb imperatives, 136
  - stem-changing verb preterit tense, 72
  - stem-changing verbs, 59–60
- ir* with *e*→*i* stem-changing verbs, 60, 310–311
- ir* with *i*→*ie* stem-changing verbs, 306–308
- ir* with *o*→*ue* stem-changing verbs, 309
- irregular verbs
  - affirmative *tú* commands, 141–142
  - affirmative *vosotros* commands, 146–147
  - conditional mood, 86–87
  - expressions, 316–338
  - formal command imperatives, 138–139
  - future tense, 82–83
  - gerunds, 110–112
  - imperfect tense, 76
  - negative *tú* commands, 144
  - negative *vosotros* commands, 149
  - past participles, 119–120
  - present subjunctive mood, 93–94
  - present tense, 63–64
  - preterit tense, 73–74
- i*→*y* spelling-change verbs, preterit, 71
- jewelry, vocabulary, 360
- jewels, vocabulary, 361
- lakes, masculine noun rules, 31
- language names, definite article rules, 23
- last names, definite article rules, 25
- leisure time, vocabulary, 353–357
- lo*, neuter pronoun
  - abstract subject creation, 230
  - demonstrative pronoun rules, 30
  - neuter indefinite article, 26
  - when to use, 49
- markers
  - animal kingdom, 35
  - definite articles, 21–26
  - demonstrative adjectives, 28–29
  - demonstrative pronouns, 29–30
  - indefinite articles, 27–28
  - masculine/feminine nouns, 33
- masculine nouns, 30–33, 39–41
- materials (clothing), vocabulary, 358–359
- meals, vocabulary, 347
- measures, definite article rules, 23
- meats, vocabulary, 343
- mixed plurals, rules, 37
- months, 11, 31
- moods
  - passive voice, 244–245
  - reflexive pronoun positioning, 212–213
  - versus compound tenses, 117
- mountains, masculine noun rules, 31
- multiples, rules, 10
- musical instruments, vocabulary, 355
- musical notes, masculine noun rules, 31
- names, definite article rules, 25
- nationality, adjectives, 222
- nature, vocabulary, 357

- negative commands, reflexive pronoun
  - positioning, 213
- negatives
  - common expressions, 195–196
  - common words, 193
  - comparative uses, 195
  - conjunctions, 200–201
  - double/triple, 194
  - indefinite adjectives, 198–199
  - indefinite adverbs, 199–200
  - indefinite pronouns, 197–198
  - negating infinitives, 195
  - prefixes, 196–197
  - prepositions, 194
  - rules, 194–195
- neuter (*lo*) pronoun,
  - article, 27
  - pronoun, 30, 49, 230
- no* (“no”, “not”)
  - negating the infinitive, 153
  - negative word, 193, 194–195
  - yes/no question answer, 189
- no/yes questions, interrogatives, 183–184
- non-reflexive verbs versus reflexive
  - verbs, 207
- nosotros* (*nosotras*), subject pronoun
  - rules, 43
- nouns
  - adjective plurals, 225–226
  - animal kingdom, 35
  - definite article rules, 22
  - demonstrative adjective rules, 28
  - equality comparisons, 238
  - feminine, 32–33
  - following adjective positioning, 226
  - gender markers, 33
  - gender rules, 22, 30–35
  - indefinite article rules, 27
  - inequality comparisons, 238
  - infinitive derivations, 160–164
  - infinitive uses, 153–159
  - masculine, 30–32
  - meaning changed by gender, 33
  - mixed plurals, 37
  - multiple adjective modifier positioning, 228
  - number exceptions, 36–37
  - numbers, 35–37
  - plurals, 35–37
  - possessive adjective modifiers, 39–40
  - possessive pronoun modifiers, 40–41
  - preceding adjective positioning, 227
- nouns in apposition, 25, 27
- numbers
  - cardinal, 3–7
  - fractions, 9–10
  - masculine noun rules, 31
  - multiples, 10
  - noun rules, 35–37
  - ordinal, 7–9
  - plural nouns, 35–37
  - possessive adjectives, 38–40
  - writing conventions, 3
- numerals
  - period (.) character for punctuation, 5
  - rulers’ titles, 26
- nuts, vocabulary, 344–345
- object of a preposition, infinitive uses, 155–159
- object of a verb, infinitive uses, 154–155
- object pronouns
  - direct object, 45–46
  - doubles, 50
  - indirect commands, 150–152
  - indirect object, 46–49
  - positioning, 49–50
  - when to use, 44
- ordinal numbers, rules, 7–9
- ¿para qué?* versus *¿por qué?*, 186
- passive voice
  - active constructions, 247
  - compound tenses/moods, 245
  - de* (“by”) before an agent, 245
  - prepositional pronouns, 244
  - simple tenses/moods, 244–245
  - substitute constructions, 246–247
  - versus active voice, 243
  - with *ser*, 243–245
- past participles
  - irregular verbs, 119–120
  - reflexive verbs, 120
  - regular verbs, 118–119
  - when to use, 120
- past progressive tense, expressions, 113
- pejoratives, demonstrative adjective
  - rules, 28
- perfect infinitive, expressions, 165



- period (.) character, numeral punctuation, 5  
*pero* (“but,” “however”) versus *sino* (“but”),  
 179, 201
- personal *a*, preposition expressions, 170–171
- personal pronouns  
 direct object pronouns, 45–46  
 double object pronouns, 50  
 indirect object pronouns, 46–49  
*lo* (neuter), 49  
 object pronouns, 44–50  
 prepositional pronouns, 43–44  
 subject pronouns, 42–43
- places (the house), vocabulary, 340
- places (in town), vocabulary, 348–349
- playing fields, vocabulary, 356
- pluperfect participle, expressions, 123–124
- pluperfect subjunctive, expressions, 130–131
- plural nouns  
 number rules, 35–37  
 -*s/es* ending, 22
- plurals, adjectives, 225–226, 228  
*¿por qué?* versus *¿para qué?*, 186
- possession  
 possessive adjectives, 38–40  
 possessive pronouns, 40–41  
 preposition *de* (“of”), 37–38  
 reflexive pronoun expression, 212  
 repetition avoidance, 38
- possessive adjectives, short/long forms,  
 39–40
- possessive pronouns, when to use, 40–41
- poultry, vocabulary, 343
- predicate nouns, infinitives, 155
- prefixes, negatives, 196–197
- prepositional pronouns  
 passive voice uses, 244  
 when to use, 43–44
- prepositions  
 common expressions, 176–177  
 common prepositions, 167–169  
 contractions, 169  
 interrogative pronouns, 187  
 links, 167  
 negative uses, 194  
 perfect infinitive, 134  
 prepositional pronouns, 43–44, 177  
 question answers, 191
- present perfect participle, 120–121
- present perfect subjunctive, 128–129
- present progressive tense, 112–113
- present subjunctive mood  
 adjectives, 100–101  
 compounds, 102–103  
 conjunctions, 101–102  
 impersonal expressions, 95–97  
 indefinites, 102–103  
 irregular verbs, 93–94  
 regular verbs, 89  
 relative clauses, 103  
 spelling-change, verbs, 90–91  
 stem-changing verbs, 92–93  
 third person commands, 103  
 when to avoid, 103–104  
 when to use, 94–103
- present tense  
 conjugation, 51–52  
 irregular verbs, 63–64  
 reflexive verbs, 52–53  
 regular verbs, 51–52  
 spelling-change verbs, 53–56  
 stem-changing verbs, 56–62  
 when to use, 64–65
- preterit perfect participle, expressions,  
 121–123
- preterit tense  
 imperfect tense comparisons, 77–81  
 irregular verbs, 73–74  
 regular verbs, 67–68  
 spelling-change verbs, 68–71  
 stem-changing verbs, 71–72  
 when to use, 75
- primero/primer*, ordinal number rules, 8, 9
- primero*, date rules, 13
- professions, vocabulary, 352–353
- progressive tenses  
 conditional progressive, 114–115  
 future progressive, 114  
 past progressive, 113  
 present progressive, 112–113
- pronouns  
 demonstrative, 29–30  
 direct object, 45–46  
 double object, 50  
 gerund rules, 115–116  
 indefinite, 197–198  
 indirect object, 46–49  
 interrogatives, 187–188  
*lo* (neuter), 49  
 object, 44–50  
 possessive, 40–41  
 prepositional, 43–44, 177  
 reflexive, 211–213  
 relative, 201–206  
 subject, 42–43
- punctuation, command rules, 136

- quantities, vocabulary, 347
- questions
  - hay* (“is (are) there?”), 189
  - information, 184–189
  - interrogative pronouns, 187–188
  - prepositional uses, 191
  - yes/no answers, 189
  - yes/no interrogatives, 183–184
- real conditions, conditional sentences, 132–133
- reflexive pronouns, 211–213
- reflexive verbs
  - common verbs, 208–211
  - conjugation, 52–53
  - idiomatic expressions, 217–218
  - non-reflexive in English, 215–216
  - object pronouns, 151
  - passive actions, 217
  - past participles, 120
  - present tense, 52–53
  - reciprocal actions, 217
  - reflexive and non-reflexive meanings, 214–215
  - reflexive pronouns, 211–212
  - versus non-reflexive verbs, 207
- regular verbs
  - affirmative *tú* commands, 140
  - affirmative *vosotros* commands, 145
  - conditional mood, 86
  - conjugation, 51–52
  - formal command imperatives, 135–136
  - future tense, 81–82
  - gerunds, 109–110
  - imperfect tense, 75–76
  - negative *tú* commands, 142–143
  - negative *vosotros* commands, 147
  - past participles, 118–119
  - present subjunctive mood, 89
  - present tense, 51–52
  - preterit tense, 67–68
- relative adjectives, 206
- relative clauses, present subjunctive mood uses, 103
- relative pronouns, 201–206
- relative superlatives, expressions, 239–240
- rivers, masculine noun rules, 31
- rulers’ titles, definite article rules, 26
- schools (classrooms), vocabulary, 350–351
- schools (subjects/activities), vocabulary, 351
- se*, reflexive verb conjugations, 52–53
- seafood, vocabulary, 343–344
- seas, masculine noun rules, 31
- seasons, 16, 22
- ser* (“to be”)
  - irregular verb imperfect tense, 76
  - passive voice construction, 243–245
  - when to use, 66
- simple moods
  - conditional, 86–88
  - imperfect subjunctive, 104–107
  - passive voice, 244–245
  - present subjunctive, 89–104
  - reflexive pronoun positioning, 212
- simple tenses
  - conjugation, 51–52
  - future tense, 81–83
  - imperfect tense, 75–81
  - passive voice, 244
  - present tense, 51–67
  - preterit tense, 67–75
  - reflexive pronoun positioning, 212
  - versus compound tenses, 117
- sino* (“but”) versus *pero* (“but,” “however”), 179, 201
- spelling-change verbs
  - affirmative *tú* commands, 140
  - affirmative *vosotros* commands, 145–146
  - formal command imperatives, 136–137
  - negative *tú* commands, 143
  - negative *vosotros* commands, 148
  - present subjunctive mood, 90–91
  - present tense, 53–56
  - preterit tense, 68–71
- sports, vocabulary, 355, 356
- stem-changing verbs
  - affirmative *tú* commands, 141
  - affirmative *vosotros* commands, 146
  - formal command imperatives, 137–138
  - gerunds, 110–112
  - infinitive derivations, 160
  - negative *tú* commands, 143–144
  - negative *vosotros* commands, 148–149
  - present subjunctive mood, 92–93
  - present tense, 56–62
  - preterit tense, 71–72
- subject of a sentence, infinitives, 153
- subject pronouns, 42–43, 213
- subjects (school), vocabulary, 351
- subordinating conjunctions, 179–182

- substitute constructions, passive voice, 246–247
- superlatives, 239–242
- table setting, vocabulary, 347
- temperature, 15–16
- tenses, passive voice, 245
- third person commands, present subjunctive mood, 103
- time, definite article rules, 22
- time of day, 16–19
- titles, definite article rules, 25
- transportation, vocabulary, 361
- travel, vocabulary, 361
- trees, masculine noun rules, 31
- triple, multiple rules, 10
- uar* verbs
  - present subjunctive mood, 93
  - spelling-change verbs, 270–271
  - stem-changing verbs, 61
- uir* verbs
  - present subjunctive mood, 93
  - spelling-change verbs, 283–284
  - stem-changing verbs, 62
- unmodified nouns, indefinite article rules, 27
- vegetables, vocabulary, 344
- ver* irregular verbs imperfect tense, 76
- verbs. *See also* infinitives
  - accents infinitives, 85
  - affirmative *vosotros* commands, 145–147
  - affirmative *tú* commands, 139–142
  - conditional perfect, 127–128
  - connotation differences, 65–67
  - direct object pronouns, 45
  - equality comparisons, 238
  - formal commands, 135–139
  - future perfect participle, 124–126
  - future tense, 81–83
  - gerunds, 109–112
  - imperfect subjunctive mood, 104–107
  - imperfect tense, 75–81
  - indirect object pronouns, 47–48
  - infinitive derivations, 160–164
  - infinitive objects, 154–155
  - informal commands, 139–150
  - irregular, 316–338
  - negative *tú* commands, 142–144
  - negative *vosotros* commands, 147–149
  - object pronoun positioning, 49–50
  - past participles, 118–120
  - perfect infinitive, 134, 165
  - pluperfect participle, 123–124
  - pluperfect subjunctive, 130–131
  - present perfect participle, 120–121
  - present perfect subjunctive, 128–129
  - present subjunctive mood, 89–104
  - present, 51–67
  - present subjunctive mood uses, 98–100
  - preterit, 67–75
  - preterit perfect participle, 121–123
  - progressive tenses, 112–116,
  - reflexive, 120, 151, 214–217
  - reflexive versus non-reflexive, 53, 207
  - regular, 258–260
  - spelling-change, 261–286
  - spelling/stem-changing in present tense, 62
  - stem-changing, 287–315
  - subjunctive tense sequence, 131–132
  - vowel + *-cer* spelling-change verbs, 54–55, 91, 272–273
  - vowel + *-cir* spelling-change verbs, 54–55, 91, 278–279
  - vowels, adjective plurals, 225–226
- weather, 14–16, 364
- weights, definite article rules, 23
- yes/no questions, 183–184, 189
- zar* spelling-change verbs
  - imperatives, 137
  - list, 266–267
  - present subjunctive mood, 90
  - preterit, 68, 70
- zar* with *i→ie* stem-changing verbs, 297–298
- zar* with *o→ue* stem-changing verbs, 299–300
- zar* with *o→üe* stem-changing verbs, 301